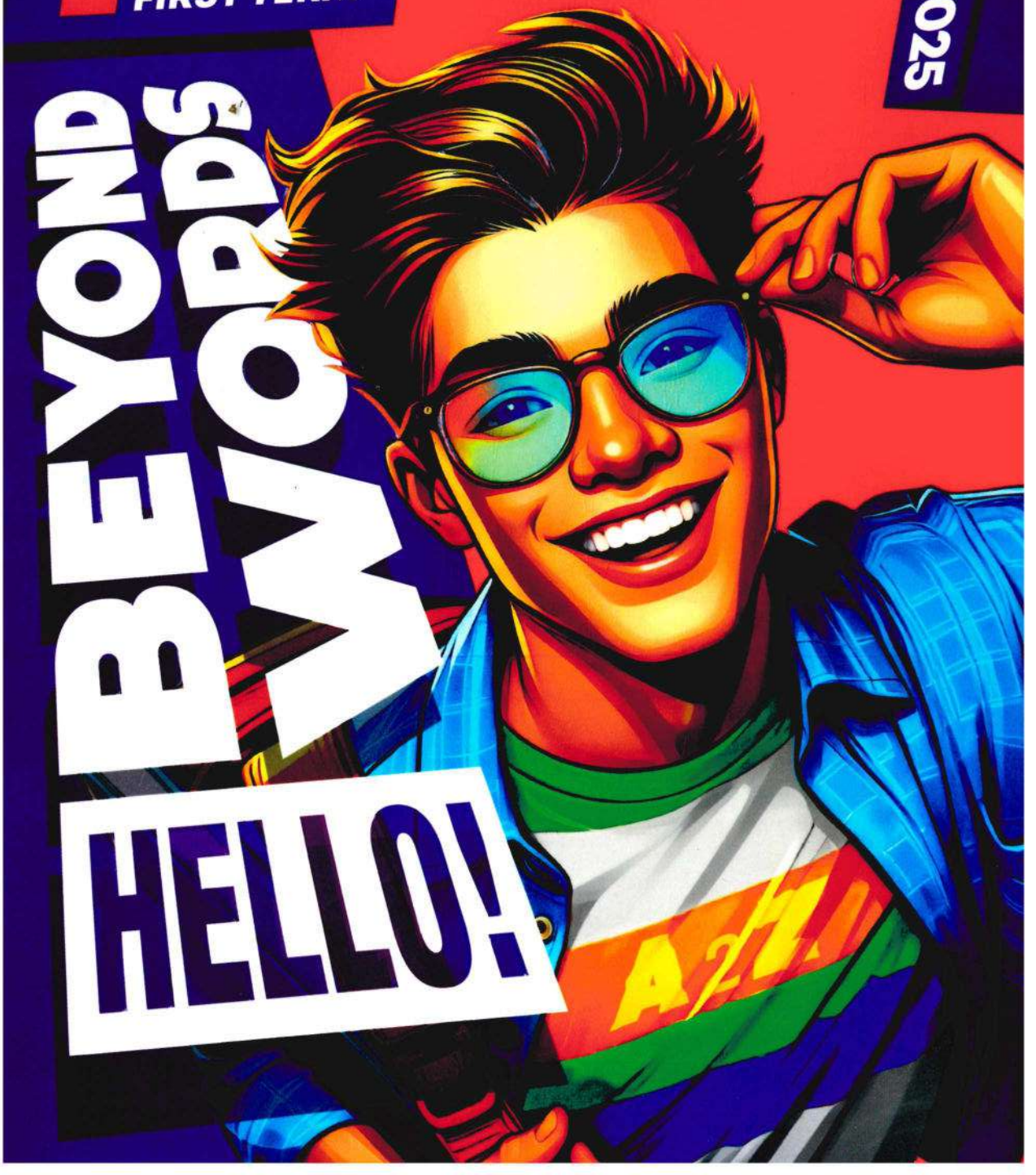
1st PREP
FIRST TERM

AL ADWAA
Gem

2025

BEYOND WORDS



Contents

Module 1
Unit 1 — A great summer 6
General Exercises on Unit 1 49
Unit 2 — My network 53
General Exercises on Unit 2 93
Module 1 Question Bank 97

Module 2
Unit 3 — My time 100
General Exercises on Unit 3 138
Review — Review A 142
Unit 4 — Digital life 145
General Exercises on Unit 4 184
Module 2 Question Bank 188

Module 3
Unit 5 — In nature 191
General Exercises on Unit 5 230
Unit 6 — Food for thought 234
General Exercises on Unit 6 271
Module 3 Question Bank 275
Review — Review B 277

Answers
Listening Texts 283
Challenging Questions Answers 284
Irregular Verbs 285

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادى للعام الدراسى 2024-2025

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Month	Hello! Beyond Words English for preparatory schools Year One (SB)		
September & October	Units 1 + 2	December	Units 5 + 6
November	Units 3 + 4	January (2025)	General Revision

MODULE 1

مقرر الشهور
سبتمبر وأكتوبر

Unit 1 A great summer

Unit 2 My network

Module 1 Question Bank

Unit 1
A GREAT SUMMER

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	A blog post about summer vacation activities; Forum posts about summer vacation activities; A quiz about how you spend your summer: *Hana Goda*: a biography
Writing	An informal email to a friend
Listening	Understand conversations about summer activities
Speaking	Play a guessing game about summer vacation activities. Ask and answer questions about how often you did something
Language	The past simple tense; Adverbs of frequency with the past simple tense

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 4 - 7

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adult (n/adj)	بالغ	partner (n)	شريك/زميل
AI (Artificial Intelligence)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	recycling center (n)	مركز إعادة التدوير
chocolate bar wrapper (n)	غلاف قطعة الشوكولاتة	software (n)	البرمجيات
community (n)	مجتمع	strange (adj)	غريب
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	talented (adj)	موهوب
leader (n)	قائد/زعيم	tiring (adj)	متعب/ مرهق
member (n)	فرد/عضو	tournament (n)	بطولة/دورة مباريات
mention (ed) (v)	يذكر	vacation (n)	إجازة
neighbor (n)	جار	volunteer (ed) (v/n)	يتطوع/متطوع
notice (d) (v)	يلاحظ	workshop (n)	ورشة عمل

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

alphabet (n)	الحروف الأبجدية	kick (ed) (v)	يركل
amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش	local group	مجموعة محلية
area (n)	منطقة	meeting (n)	اجتماع
blog post (n)	منشور فى مدونة	mistake (n)	خطأ
can (n)	علبة (صفيح)	player (n)	لاعب
check (ed) (v)	يفحص/يراجع	project (n)	مشروع
community garden (n)	حديقة مجتمعية	post (ed) (v)	ينشر
coach (n)	مدرب	repeat (ed) (v)	يكرر/يعيد
especially (adv)	خصوصًا	sound (n)	صوت
excited (adj)	متحمس	sports club (n)	نادٍ رياضى
forum post (n)	منشور فى منتدى	team (n)	فريق
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Check Point

Choose and complete: notice – member – imagine – coach

1. The ..... always gives me some advice during the game.
2. My dad didn't ..... that I got my hair cut.
3. Every ..... of the group has a role to do.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

collect/pick up	litter	يجمع/يلتقط القمامة	make	a poster	يصنع ملصقًا
do	activities	يؤدى أنشطة		changes	يُحدث تغيرات
	homework	يعمل واجبًا منزليًا		sure	يتأكد
	well	يؤدى جيدًا	score	a goal	يحرز/يسجل هدفًا
try	my best	أبذل أقصى جهدى	solve	a problem	يحل مشكلة
take	part (in)	يشارك (فى)	give	a helping hand	يمد يد العون
have	fun	يتسلى			
	a better life	لديه حياة أفضل			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at the start/end of	فى بداية/نهاية	join in	يشارك
clean up	ينظف	nervous about	متوتر/عصبى بشأن
decide to	يقرر أن	surprised by	مندهش بواسطة
for a while	لمدة قصيرة	help out	يساعد على إنجاز عمل
instead of	بدلاً من	wait for	ينتظر (شيئًا/شخصًا)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
feel يشعر	felt	felt	set تغرب	set	set
give up يقلع عن/ييئس	gave up	given up	take يأخذ	took	taken
grow ينمو	grew	grown	teach يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught
learn يتعلم	learnt	learnt	win يفوز/يكسب	won	won
leave يترك/يغادر	left	left	write يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
empty فارغ	full ممتلئ	possible ممكن	impossible مستحيل
positive إيجابى	negative سلبى	safe آمن	dangerous خطير
quiet هادئ	noisy صاخب	young صغير السن	old كبير السن

Check Point

Choose and complete: safe – dangerous – make – sets – for

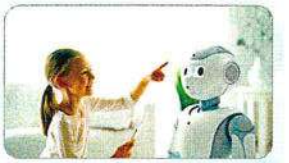
1. We need to ..... changes to the plan.
2. He waited ..... his friend at the park, but he didn't come.
3. You should wear a helmet while biking to be ..... .
4. It gets cooler when the sun ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Important Notes

(1) What's AI?

ما هو الذكاء الاصطناعى؟



AI stands for Artificial Intelligence. It means making computers and robots smart so they can do things that usually need human intelligence.

الذكاء الاصطناعى يعنى جعل أجهزة الكمبيوتر والروبوتات ذكية بحيث يمكنها القيام بأشياء عادةً ما تحتاج إلى ذكاء بشرى.

For example:

Imagine you have a super smart robot friend. This friend can understand what you say, answer your questions, and even help you do things like homework or play games. This smart robot is what we call Artificial Intelligence, or AI.

تخيل أن لديك صديقًا (روبوت) ذكيًا جدًا. يمكن لهذا الصديق أن يفهم ما تقوله، ويجيب عن أسئلتك، بل ويساعدك فى القيام بأشياء مثل الواجبات المنزلية أو لعب الألعاب. هذا الروبوت الذكى هو ما نسميه الذكاء الاصطناعى، أو AI.

(2) Types of words: أنواع الكلمات

- **a noun (n)** الاسم: It refers to a person or thing. Before a noun, we usually find a/an/the. (a coach/a garden/an area)

الاسم: يشير إلى كلمة/شىء. ونضع عادة قبل الاسم (a/an/the).

- **a verb (v)** الفعل: It describes an action. (help/imagine/join)

الفعل: هى كلمة تصف حدثًا.

- **an adjective (adj)** الصفة: It describes a noun. (amazing/nervous/tiring)

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف اسمًا.

Check Point

Write the correct category (noun, verb, or adjective) for the underlined words in the following sentences:

اكتب التصنيف الصحيح للكلمات التى تحتها خط فى الجمل التالية: (اسم/فعل/صفة):

1. We live in a **house**. (.....)
2. My brother **runs** fast. (.....)
3. Hala's dress is **beautiful**. (.....)
4. We have a **community** meeting. (.....)
5. Mr El Mogy is an **amazing** teacher. (.....)
6. I **joined** the football team. (.....)

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **teach + (how) to + inf.** يُعلم/يُدرس

- We should teach people how to use technology.

2 **using = by using** باستخدام

- You can write stories using AI.

3 **would ('d) like to + inf.** يود أن

- I'd like to play in a tournament.

4 **There + "be" + اسم + inf. + ing** يوجد

- There were lots of boys playing in two teams.

5 **try + inf. + ing** يجرب

- Do you want to try playing with the team?

6 **watch + مفعول + inf.** يشاهد (الحدث كله)

- The coach watched me kick the ball.

7 **start + inf. + ing/to + inf.** يبدأ

- I started helping/to help out at a project in my city.

8 **stop + inf. + ing** يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- I advised my brother to stop watching too much TV.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My mom cooks food ..... fresh vegetables.
a) use **b)** uses **c)** using **d)** used

2 I'll try ..... Chinese food.
a) eats **b)** to eating **c)** eating **d)** ate

3 There are children ..... in the park.
a) play **b)** playing **c)** to play **d)** to playing

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

coach	مدرب	someone who trains(1) a person or team in a sport
imagine	يتخيل	think about something and form(2) an idea of it
talented	موهوب	someone who has a natural ability(3) to do something well
tiring	متعب/ مرهق	something makes you tired so that you want to rest or sleep
tournament	بطولة	a competition(4) in which many players compete(5) in many games

(1) يدرب
(2) يكوّن
(3) قدرة طبيعية
(4) منافسة
(5) ينافس

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
quiet (adj)	هادئ	calm	هادئ
vacation (n)	إجازة	holiday	إجازة

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
amaze (v)	يُذهِل	-ing		تحول الفعل لصفة		amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش
excite (v)	يُثير	-ed				excited (adj)	متحمس
lead (v)	يقود	-er		تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل		leader (n)	قائد/زعيم

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-		تعطى عكس المعنى		possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
un-				known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To get the noun from the verb "lead", we add the suffix "……".
   a) -ist b) -ful c) -ir d) -er
2. To get the antonym of "known", we add the prefix "……".
   a) un- b) im- c) dis- d) inter-
3. I go to Alexandria in the summer vacation. "Vacation" means …… .
   a) weekend b) holiday c) celebration d) workshop

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 1: Vacation activities

- What activities do you do during the summer vacation?

Read and listen to Omar's blog post. *SB page 5*

HOME I ABOUT I DOWNLOAD

Hi, I'm Omar! This summer was great. I played football every day! At first, I played with some of my neighbors (1) in the street. Our street is quiet and very safe. We had a lot of fun and we liked to imagine (2) that we were famous football players! Then, a new boy joined in. He told me about a football club in our area.

One afternoon, I decided to go to the club. There were lots of boys playing in two teams and I watched them for a while. Then, the coach (3) saw me and asked if I played football, too. "Do you want to try playing with the team?" he asked. Of course, I did! The coach watched me kick the ball and said I was a talented (4) football player. He asked me to join the team.

For the next six weeks, I played with my neighbors in the morning and then with the team at the football club in the afternoon. It was very tiring, but really fun! At the end of the summer, we took part in a tournament (5).

I was nervous (6) about it, but excited. I tried my best and scored three goals. Our team won the tournament. It was an amazing end to the summer!

(1) جيران
(2) يتخيل
(3) مدرب
(4) موهوب
(5) بطولة
(6) عصبي/متوتر

Post-reading question: - Where did Omar play football at the start of the summer?

Comprehension Skills

How to guess the meaning of a word: كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. حاول أن تفهم نوع الكلمة:

2. Read the passage well. اقرأ القطعة جيدًا.

3. Look for Clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.

ابحث عن دليل يساعدك على فَهم الكلمة - اقرأ الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المألوفة لتحاول فهم المعنى فمن الممكن أن تجد كلمات مشابهة لهذا المعنى.

4. Make a Guess: حاول تخمين معنى الكلمة فى النص.

For example:

I tried my best and scored three goals. Our team won the **tournament**.

- The underlined word "**tournament**" means ..... .

a) race **b)** marathon **c)** competition **d)** vacation

Lesson 2: A helping hand

Pre-reading question:
- Where did you spend your summer vacation?

Read and listen to forum posts about summer vacation activities. *SB page 6*

Tell us about your summer vacation and post your photos!

(a)

I noticed (1) that there were too many empty (2) cans and chocolate bar wrappers (3) on the streets in our city. Last summer, I decided to do something about it. I didn't want to wait for the adults to clean up our streets. I made some posters to ask young people to join my group. Four people came to our first meeting. We picked up litter from one part of the city, put it in bags and took it to the recycling center (4). The week after that, eight people came and then after that there were twelve of us. The group grew and grew over the vacation and now it has twenty-four members.

Elsa, Salzburg, Austria

(1) يلاحظ
(2) فارغ
(3) أغلفة قطعة الشوكولاتة
(4) مركز إعادة تدوير

(b)

Last summer, I did something really fun. I took part in (5) a project where young people write stories using AI (6). Because computers write them, we had to check to make sure that there were no mistakes in them. Before I started, I didn't know that AI can write really good stories. You imagine (7) that only people can write stories, but AI can give a helping hand. I was surprised. Most of the stories I read were fine, but sometimes I found something strange (8) in them. For example, there was one story where the sun never sets. Of course, that's not possible, so I changed that part of the story.

Leon, Manchester, UK

(5) يشترك فى
(6) الذكاء الاصطناعى
(7) يتخيل
(8) غريب

(c)

Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city. In this project, young people like me help adults who can't read and write Arabic. My partner (9) was Mrs Azza and she was very nice. First, we looked at the alphabet (10) together. I said the sound of each letter and Mrs Azza repeated it. Sometimes, she nearly gave up (11), but then I said things like: "You're doing really well. Don't stop now." It was fun to be a teacher instead of (12) a student, especially when I asked her: "Did you do your homework this week?" or "What did you learn yesterday?" It was great to help Mrs Azza learn something new.

Gameela, Luxor, Egypt

(9) شريك
(10) الحروف الهجائية
(11) يستسلم
(12) بدلًا من

Post-reading question: - What was the problem in Elsa's city?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The view from the top of the mountain was ..... . I loved it.
   a) horrible b) amazing c) talented d) ugly
2. Can you help ..... with setting the table for dinner?
   a) out b) at c) about d) on
3. I always wear gloves when I ..... litter from the street.
   a) solve b) repeat c) mention d) collect
4. Kareem ..... many prizes for his great work.
   a) grew b) felt c) designed d) won
5. Kady ..... at the local recycling center during the summer.
   a) repeated b) changed c) checked d) volunteered
6. Roaa ..... her room before her friends came over.
   a) waited for b) picked up c) cleaned up d) helped out
7. My brother became a ..... of our school football team. He's a good player.
   a) member b) number c) vacation d) neighbor
8. During ....., we traveled to Luxor and Aswan.
   a) vacation b) community c) activity d) software
9. Mazin waited ..... a while before leaving the house.
   a) for b) at c) on d) in
10. Amira thinks it's ..... to finish the project on Friday.
    a) possible b) empty c) nervous d) famous
11. If you are a/an ....., you can drive a car, travel and explore new places alone.
    a) kid b) adult c) baby d) child
12. Did Celia ..... where she was going?
    a) plant b) join c) mention d) repeat
13. To get the opposite of "possible", we add the prefix "....." .
    a) in- b) un- c) im- d) dis-

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My brother likes to ..... part in games with other teams.
   a) check b) pick c) take d) join
2. The children picked up the chocolate bar ..... on the streets in their city.
   a) vacations b) communities c) partners d) wrappers
3. Our team will play in the next ..... .
   a) poster b) tournament c) project d) blog
4. My sister joined a group to ..... adults to read and write Arabic.
   a) teach b) learn c) check d) mention
5. Omar and Tarek write stories using computer ..... .
   a) team b) screen c) software d) toy
6. Our ..... are very friendly.
   a) wrappers b) neighbors c) activities d) mistakes
7. Working day and night is really ..... .
   a) tiring b) excited c) empty d) rich
8. The coach watched me kick the ball and said I was ..... . He was happy.
   a) noisy b) empty c) talented d) boring
9. Did you ..... the changes in my room?
   a) say b) collect c) solve d) notice
10. We should always learn from our ..... .
    a) tournaments b) mistakes c) vacations d) wrappers
11. Mrs Azza always teaches us the sound of letters and we ..... after her.
    a) repeat b) score c) feel d) win
12. It's safe to play in front of your house. It's not ..... .
    a) nervous b) dangerous c) nice d) fine

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

e.g. Three months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city.

- **We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.**
- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.

1 Regular & Irregular verbs:

Form التكوين

راجع جداول تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة داخل الدروس.

Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g.
- I helped out at my family's workshop yesterday. (فعل منتظم)
- Last Monday, Mazin wrote stories using AI. (فعل غير منتظم)

Negative: النفى

Subject الفاعل + didn't + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ... .

e.g.
- She didn't **travel** to Marsa Matrouh last night.
- My father didn't **feel** happy at the party yesterday.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Last year, I ..... (visit) my cousins in London.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (visited) لوجود Last الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط.

2 We ..... (not/use) the computer yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't use) لوجود yesterday الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط وهى هنا فى صيغة النفى.

Question السؤال

A) Yes/No question: السؤال بمعنى هل

Did + subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. **A:** Did you **see** the last match? **B:** Yes, I did. / **B:** No, I didn't.

B) Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word (أداة استفهام) + did + subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. **A:** Where did Ali **go** yesterday? **B:** He went to the zoo yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى - ... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010))

e.g.
- I **watched** a nice film yesterday.
- We **went** to Alex last month.
- Two weeks **ago**, I volunteered in a children's hospital.
- My father **bought** this car in 2010.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 When did you ..... (bought) this dress, Lamia?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (buy) لوجود did التى يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

2 ..... (Next) year, I visited Paris and Rome.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Last) لوجود الفعل visited الذى يدل على زمن الماضى البسيط.

2 Verb "to be":

الفعل «يكون» من الأفعال غير المنتظمة ولكنه لا يتبع نفس القاعدة وله تكوين خاص به.

I	was	**busy.**
He		**worried.**
She	wasn't	**a worker.**
It		**noisy.**
اسم مفرد		

You	were	**early.**
We		**at school.**
They	weren't	**quiet.**
اسم جمع		

Yes/No question السؤال بمعنى هل

Affirmative:	They were **worried.**	He was **at the cinema.**
Question:	Were they worried?	Was he at the cinema?

لاحظ: يأتى بعد "V. to be"
- اسم - صفة
- جار و مجرور

تذكر أنه يتم تحويل I was إلى Were you فى حالة السؤال.

e.g. A: Were you at school yesterday? **B:** Yes, I was.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Adel ..... (be) at the club yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود yesterday الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط والفاعل Adel.

2 The streets ..... (didn't) busy yesterday. It was Friday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't) لوجود صفة والجملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط والفاعل جمع.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lamia ..... to school yesterday.
   a) walks b) walking c) walk d) walked
2. Amany ..... study for her exams last night.
   a) didn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) hasn't
3. Amir visited his friends and ..... football with them.
   a) play b) played c) will play d) playing
4. The children ..... with their grandparents last weekend.
   a) do b) did c) were d) are
5. Did Taha ..... dinner for his family yesterday?
   a) cooked b) cooking c) cooks d) cook
6. Celia ..... at the last party. She was busy.
   a) didn't b) wasn't c) doesn't d) isn't
7. I ..... my friends in front of the cinema yesterday.
   a) meet b) met c) meeting d) meets
8. My sons ..... the piano at the party. They were fantastic.
   a) play b) playing c) played d) plays
9. Where ..... Sara yesterday?
   a) was b) is c) does d) did
10. Hana ..... a lot of stories using AI. They were great.
    a) write b) is writing c) wrote d) writing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Our neighbors ..... (buy) new furniture for the house a week ago.
2. Salma visited her grandmother ..... (next) weekend.
3. Last year, I ..... (not/travel to) Alexandria. I went to Hurghada.
4. ..... (Were) they swim in the lake last weekend?
5. The boys ..... (not/clean) their room this morning. It was dirty.
6. Columbus ..... (be) in America in 1492.

Time to Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We ..... a lot of fun last weekend.
   a) has b) having c) have d) had
2. How many goals ..... Omar score in the last tournament?
   a) does b) is c) did d) was
3. This summer was great. I ..... at a community garden.
   a) volunteered b) volunteer c) volunteering d) volunteers
4. Last week, I ..... something really interesting. I read three books.
   a) do b) did c) does d) doing
5. What did you ..... from yesterday's lesson?
   a) learns b) learn c) learned d) learning
6. ..... your father at work last week?
   a) Was b) Did c) Is d) Has
7. My grandpa ..... me how to play the guitar. It was three years ago.
   a) teach b) teaches c) teaching d) taught
8. Hatem noticed problems and ..... changes to solve them.
   a) making b) makes c) made d) make
9. Most of the stories Ahmed read ..... fine.
   a) was b) is c) are d) were

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (be) surprised by the story he wrote last summer.
2. Why did the coach ..... (asked) Omar to join the team?
3. No, I ..... (had) fun at all. I was ill.
4. Ali and Jana ..... (not) at school last week.
5. Nihal ..... (decide) to clean up her room yesterday.
6. Hadeer said positive things to Adel, so he ..... (not/stop) trying.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Ask and answer about summer vacation activities

السؤال والإجابة عن أنشطة الإجازة الصيفية

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

Which activities do you do on the summer vacation?

ما الأنشطة التى تقوم بها فى الإجازة الصيفية؟

I help out at my family's workshop.

أساعد فى إنجاز الأعمال فى ورشة عائلتى.

Which activities would you like to do? - ما الأنشطة التى تود القيام بها؟

I'd like to play in tournaments. أود اللعب فى مسابقات رياضية.

What did you do last summer? ماذا فعلت الصيف الماضى؟

I took part in a project where young people wrote stories using AI.

اشتركت فى مشروع حيث قام الشباب بكتابة قصص باستخدام الذكاء الاصطناعى.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Download

للتعرف على كيفية حل سؤال المحادثة، امسح الكود وحمل ملحق المهارات.

Master Your Skills

Complete the following dialog:

Omar is asking Amr about his summer vacation.

Omar : Hi, Amr! How was your summer vacation?

Amr : Hi, Omar! (1)..... .

Omar : (2).....?

Amr : I went to the beach with my family. It was very fun.

Omar : That sounds awesome! What did you do there?

Amr : (3)..... . The water was warm and nice.

Omar : Did you play any games there?

Amr : (4)..... . I played many games.

Omar : (5).....?

Amr : I played with my brothers.

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write a paragraph about activities of summer vacation

كيفية كتابة فقرة عن أنشطة الإجازة الصيفية

Example

"My last summer vacation"

Last summer vacation was great, as I did many activities. I traveled to Hurghada with my family and cousins. We swam in the sea. We rode bikes and played many games together. We enjoyed our time there. I also volunteered to help clean the streets in our city. Every weekend, we collected trash from the streets and sent it to the recycling center. I joined the football team at the club, and we won a tournament. We were really happy. I read many books and watched many movies. It was one of the greatest vacations that I had.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about the activities you did in the summer vacation.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Writing tips

Start with a clear topic sentence that states the main idea of the paragraph.

ابدأ بجملة رئيسية واضحة تحدد بها الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 1 Lessons (1 & 2)

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. How was Omar's summer vacation?
   a) Great. b) Tiring. c) Nervous. d) Famous.
2. What sport did he play every day?
   a) Chess. b) Tennis. c) Football. d) Volleyball.
3. Who did he play with?
   a) Teachers. b) Friends. c) Sisters. d) Neighbors.
4. How is Omar's street?
   a) Dangerous. b) Quiet. c) Safe. d) Both b & c.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Basmala and Kady are talking about their summer vacation.

Basmala : Where did you spend your summer vacation?
Kady : (1)..... .
Basmala : How was the weather in Alexandria?
Kady : (2)..... .
Basmala : That sounds exciting! Did you swim in the sea?
Kady : (3)..... .
Basmala : (4).....?
Kady : Because I can't swim well.
Basmala : (5).....?
Kady : Yes, we did. We had a lot of fun.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sports – take – have – amazing – terrible – had

Last vacation was (1).....! I decided to help my neighbor. He asked me to volunteer at a local (2)..... tournament. I was excited to (3)..... ..... part in it. The tournament was big, with many people playing different sports. It was fun working with them. We (4)..... a great time together.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The group picked up litter and took it to the recycling ..... .
   a) community b) club c) garden d) center
2. Younis and Essam are active members in their ..... .
   a) community b) coach c) neighbor d) software

3. My teacher asked us to ..... a world with no internet.
   a) mention b) imagine c) repeat d) volunteer
4. Said ..... the ball into the net and scored a goal.
   a) mentioned b) noticed c) picked d) kicked
5. Ola plans to take a ..... in Europe next summer.
   a) tower b) vacation c) technology d) leader
6. Mayada ..... her homework after school every day.
   a) gets b) makes c) takes d) does
7. Fatma always tidies up her room ..... the end of the day.
   a) at b) on c) of d) for
8. We ..... the house last Saturday.
   a) cleaned b) cleans c) cleaning d) are cleaned
9. Mary ..... watch the film on TV last night.
   a) wasn't b) didn't c) hadn't d) won't
10. ..... Hana at the cinema last evening?
   a) Will b) Does c) Is d) Was

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My dad ..... (drive) me to school this morning.
2. Jack ..... (not) help his neighbor last week as he was busy.
3. Where ..... (do) you like to read when you were younger?
4. The cat ..... (didn't) quiet last night.

6 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"A fantastic vacation you had"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hamza ..... (gets) up late this morning. We are nearly afternoon.
2. ..... (you/do) your homework last night?
3. Sameer didn't clean his room or ..... (helped) out at the family's workshop.

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 8 - 11

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	obelisk (n)	مسلة
bank (n)	ضفة النهر	religion (n)	دين (ديانة)
bury (~~y~~ied) (v)	يدفن	repair (ed) (n/v)	إصلاح/يصلح
care (n)	رعاية/عناية	solution (n)	حل
catacomb (n)	سرداب الموتى	smart (adj)	ذكى/أنيق
dead (adj)	ميت	statue (n)	تمثال
effect (n)	تأثير	structure (n)	بناء
friendly (adj)	ودود	temple (n)	معبد
helpful (adj)	متعاون/مساعد/مفيد	tunnel (n)	نفق

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

building (n)	مبنى	special (adj)	مميز/خاص
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	stone (n)	حجر
How often ...?	كم مرة ...؟	the Temple of Edfu	معبد إدفو
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات	tourist (n)	سائح
identify (v)	يحدد	underground (adv)	تحت الأرض
idea (n)	فكرة	understanding (n)	فهم
model (n)	نموذج	weather (n)	الطقس
pray (ed) (v)	يصلى	wind (n)	رياح
present (ed) (v)	يقدم	pity (n)	شفقة/ أسف

Check Point

Choose and complete: prayed – tunnel – repair – helpful

1. The mechanic will ..... my car engine.
2. In Ancient Egypt, people ..... in temples.
3. These websites were very ..... for getting information about the project.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

edit	>	the videos	يعدل الفيديوهات	go	>	online	يتصل بالإنترنت
do/play	>	sports	يمارس رياضة	give	>	an opinion	يقدم رأى
protect	>	the building	يحمى المبنى			reasons	يعطى أسباب

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at the top/bottom	فى الأعلى/الأسفل	think of/about	يفكر فى
cut away	يزيل/يتآكل	walk around	يتجول
look after	يعتنى بـ	What type of ...?	ما نوع ...؟
important for	هام لـ	work on buildings/structures	يعمل فى المبانى
on the West Bank of	على الضفة الغربية لـ	made of	مصنوع من
problem with	مشكلة فى		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
buy	يشترى	bought	bought	get up	ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up
find	يجد	found	found	spend	يقضى/ينفق	spent	spent

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
active	نشيط	lazy	كسول	interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
ancient	أثرى/قديم	modern	حديث	useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة
bad for	ضار بـ	good for	مفيد لـ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل				

Check Point

Choose and complete: (at – in – ancient – go)

1. Every morning, I ..... online to read the news.
2. Salah al-Din Citadel is very ..... . It isn't modern.
3. We took a picture ..... the top of the mountain.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

help + inf./to + inf. يساعد

- My sister always helps mom **clean/to clean** the house.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

catacombs سراديب الموتى	underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead(1)	(1) الموتى
obelisk مسلة	a tall stone pillar(2) built to remind people of an event of someone who dies	(2) عامود
statue تمثال	a model of a person, animal or object, sometimes made of stone	
temple معبد	a place where(3) people come together to pray	(3) حيث (للمكان)

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
ancient (adj) أثرى/قديم	very old قديم جدًا
repair (v) يصلح	mend/fix يصلح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
Egypt (n) مصر	-ian	تحويل الاسم لصفة	Egyptian (adj) مصرى
help (v) يساعد	-ful	تحويل الفعل لصفة	helpful (adj) مساعد

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The opposite of "useful" is "……".
   a) wonderful b) helpful c) useless d) careless
2. I like visiting ancient places. These places are very …… .
   a) new b) recent c) modern d) old
3. To get the adjective from the verb "help", we add the suffix "……".
   a) -ive b) -ful c) -ment d) -ly

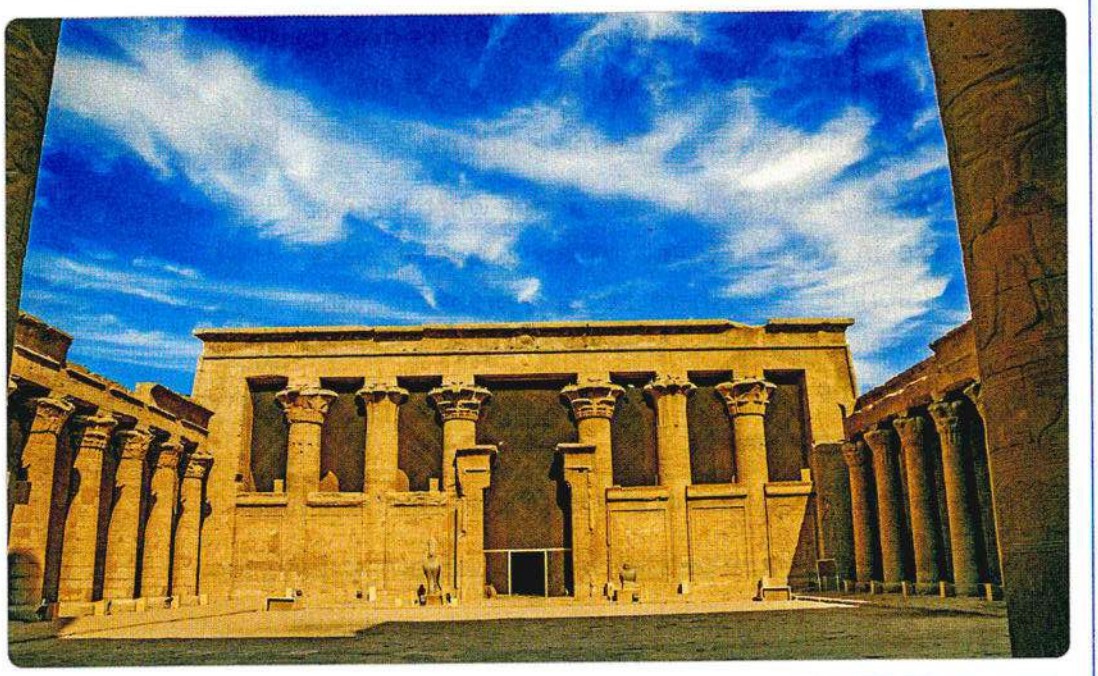
B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3: Ancient buildings

Pre-reading question:

- How often did you visit ancient places?

Read the information about an ancient building in Egypt. *SB page 8*



The Temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple in the town of Edfu. The town is on the West Bank[1] of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The temple is about 2,250 years old. It is important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on its walls gives us very interesting and useful information about language[2] and religion[3] over 2,000 years ago.

(1) الضفة الغربية (2) اللغة

(3) الديانة

Post-reading questions:

1 Where's Edfu?

.....

2 How old is the Temple of Edfu?

.....

Lesson 3: Ancient Buildings

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- What ancient places would you like to visit?

Listen to the dialog. Mariam visited the Temple of Edfu in the summer vacation. Check the problems at the temple that she mentions.

SB page 8

Hadaya What did you do in the summer holiday, Mariam?

Mariam I visited my aunt and uncle in Edfu. It's near to Aswan and there's a beautiful temple[1] there.

Hadaya Oh, yeah. It's an ancient temple, isn't it?

Mariam Yes, and it tells us a lot about what life was like in Ancient Egypt, so it's a special place. Unfortunately[2], there are some problems at the Temple of Edfu. The weather in Egypt is bad for the stone walls. The wind and sand very slowly cut the stone away.

(1) معبد
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) علماء الآثار
(4) رعاية
(5) إصلاحات

Hadaya That's too bad. Do lots of tourists come to the temple?

Mariam Yes, and all those people's feet are bad for the stone, too.

Hadaya Is anyone doing anything to protect the building?

Mariam Yes. Volunteers work with archaeologists[3] on the buildings. Some of them are students like us who help in their summer holidays. They can stop these bad effects on some buildings, but there isn't enough time or people to help all the buildings at the same time.

Hadaya That's a pity. And the buildings are so old, aren't they?

Mariam Yes, because they're very old, they need lots of care[4] and repairs[5].

Post-listening questions:

1 Where's the Temple of Edfu?

.....

2 Mention اذكر a problem at the Temple of Edfu.

.....

Listening Text

Lesson 4: Summer Well Spent

Pre-listening question:

- Did you learn anything interesting online this summer?

Listen and choose two words to describe Younis. *SB page 10*

(1) مطعم (2) نشيط
(3) يتطوع (4) يعدل

Basel So, Younis, what's your answer to the first question: did you help other people in the summer vacation?

Younis Yes, of course I did. I helped out at my parents' restaurant(1). I cleaned the dishes and cleaned the floor in the restaurant at the end of the day. I often went to other shops to buy things that my parents needed, too. I would say I often helped my family and friends in the summer vacation.

Basel Great, so you helped your family and you learned how to work in a restaurant.

Younis Yes, that's right.

Basel How about sports? How often did you do sports?

Younis Every day, I think. I always played sport in the summer vacation. I love playing football with my friends near my building.

Basel So, you were active(2) in the holidays?

Younis Yes, definitely.

Basel The next question is: How often did you do something to help your community?

Younis I often volunteered(3) to help at a project in my community. People walk around the streets, collect litter and recycle it. Then our streets are cleaner and we can use the paper and plastic again.

Basel Sounds great. Can I join in too? I never did anything in my community in the holidays, but I want to start helping out.

Younis Of course, Basel.

Basel The last question is: did you learn anything interesting online this summer? How often did you go online?

Younis I sometimes went online at home in the evening. I was usually tired in the evening. But sometimes I watched some videos about how to make videos with a phone and how to edit(4) the videos so they look good.

Basel That sounds useful.

Younis Yes, I want to give it a try myself now.

Post-listening questions:

1. Where did Younis help out in the summer vacation?.....
2. What did Younis do at home in the evening?.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Today is a ..... day because it's my mother's birthday.
   a) special b) smart c) useless d) bad
2. The train traveled through a long ..... in the mountains.
   a) panel b) tunnel c) canal d) battle
3. Tourists like to take photographs next to the ..... .
   a) star b) planet c) obelisk d) earth
4. We need a ..... to this problem. Who can help?
   a) structure b) stone c) solution d) wind
5. I like sitting by the ..... of the river to enjoy watching the sunset.
   a) temple b) statue c) bank d) park
6. A ..... is a model of a person, animal or object, sometimes made of stone.
   a) statue b) tunnel c) tomb d) temple
7. I like to ..... sports like football and basketball.
   a) take b) make c) do d) go
8. My father's advice was very ..... in solving the problem.
   a) weak b) ugly c) ancient d) helpful
9. ..... are lots of underground tunnels where people put dead bodies.
   a) Repairs b) Catacombs c) Structures d) Stones
10. It's important to ..... our ancient buildings.
    a) protect b) leave c) forget d) bring
11. Mariam stays ..... by taking exercises regularly.
    a) active b) weak c) lazy d) ugly
12. The Pyramids in Egypt are ancient. They aren't ..... .
    a) closed b) useful c) beautiful d) modern
13. Al Karnak is a famous ..... in Luxor.
    a) star b) temple c) planet d) tunnel
14. This problem has very bad ..... on my sister's behavior سلوك.
    a) solutions b) effects c) buildings d) tunnels

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I like to ..... my photos to make them look better.
   a) paint b) edit c) discuss d) present
2. The writing on the walls gives us useful information about language and ..... of Ancient Egyptians.
   a) technology b) space c) stars d) religion
3. ..... from other countries love the buildings of Ancient Egypt.
   a) Tunnels b) Tourists c) Articles d) Stones
4. My uncle is a/an ..... . He studies ancient buildings.
   a) pilot b) archaeologist c) cook d) farmer
5. Watching too much TV is bad ..... your eyes.
   a) in b) on c) at d) for
6. Scientists studied how people ..... their dead in ancient times.
   a) buried b) hurried c) worried d) carried
7. Parents must give enough time to their children. They need love and ..... .
   a) car b) care c) quiz d) stone
8. The town of Edfu is ..... the West Bank of the River Nile.
   a) on b) about c) out d) for
9. The wind and sand very slowly ..... away the stones of old walls.
   a) cut b) put c) find d) think
10. Visiting ancient buildings is important for ..... life in Ancient Egypt.
    a) including b) painting c) forgetting d) understanding
11. We visited the museum and saw beautiful paintings that gave us ..... information.
    a) closed b) useful c) weak d) useless
12. The teacher asked me to give him the ..... why I didn't do my homework.
    a) type b) effect c) weather d) reason
13. It is a ..... that you can't come to my birthday party.
    a) useful b) happy c) pity d) careful

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Adverbs of frequency in the past ظروف التكرار فى الماضى

Usage الاستخدام

We can use adverbs of frequency to say how often people did things in the past.

• يمكننا استخدام ظروف التكرار لنقول عدد المرات التى فعل فيها الناس أشياء فى الماضى.

e.g. • I always **looked** after my little sister.
• Kareem **didn't** often **watch** television.

We use (How often) to ask about adverbs of frequency.

• نستخدم (كم مرة) للسؤال عن ظروف التكرار.

e.g. **A: How often** did you do sports?
B: I sometimes **did** sports on holidays.

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الأفعال وبعد (verb to be).

e.g. • I always **looked** after my little sister.
• I **was** usually tired in the evening.

• ويمكن استخدام بعض الظروف فى أول الجملة مثل: (usually/sometimes).

e.g. • Sometimes, she nearly **gave** up.

100%	always	- للتعبير عن فعل الشىء بشكل دائم نستخدم دائمًا (always). • Laila always **finished** her homework before dinner.
90%	usually	- للتعبير عن أننا كثيرًا ما نفعل الشىء نستخدم عادة (usually). • Adam usually **ate** breakfast at 7 a.m.
70%	often	- للتعبير عن فعل الشىء بشكل متوسط نستخدم غالبًا (often). • We often **visited** our grandparents at weekends.
50%	sometimes	- للتعبير عن قلة فعل الشىء نستخدم أحيانًا (sometimes). • The children sometimes **played** football after school
10%	hardly ever	- للتعبير عن ندرة الفعل نستخدم نادرًا ما (hardly ever). • Adel hardly ever **used** AI for his homework.
0%	never	- للتعبير على عدم فعل الشىء قطعًا نستخدم (never). • I never **went** to school by bus.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I often ..... (gets) up late in the last summer vacation.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (got) لأن الجملة تعبر عن عادة متكررة فى زمن الماضى.

2 My dad didn't usually ..... (takes) a taxi while going to work.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (take) لأن الجملة تحتوى على (didn't) التى يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Reham ..... stayed up late on school days. She always slept on time.
   a) never b) always c) usually d) often
2. Aya hardly ..... drank coffee.
   a) never b) ever c) always d) often
3. My children always ..... their rooms on Saturdays in the past.
   a) clean b) cleans c) cleaned d) cleaning
4. **A:** ..... did you go for a walk after having dinner? **B:** Always!
   a) How often b) How c) Where d) Who
5. Ramez ..... did his homework after school. He was a good student.
   a) hardly ever b) ever c) never d) usually
6. Zeina never ..... fast food. She liked to be healthy.
   a) ate b) eats c) eating d) eat
7. Mahmoud ..... cleaned his teeth before bed. His teeth were very healthy.
   a) never b) always c) hardly ever d) sometimes
8. I remember when we were young, we ..... together before exams.
   a) usually study b) study usually
   c) usually studied d) studied usually
9. My cousins often ..... their bikes in the park on their last vacation.
   a) ride b) riding c) rides d) rode

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You hardly ..... (never) played sports.
2. Aliaa ..... (always) used her phone in the classroom. She was a good girl.
3. Donia never ..... (play) the piano in the past.
4. How often ..... (do) your mother make cakes last summer?
5. I ..... (helped/always) my mom with the housework.
6. Alaa ..... (usually) played the guitar last vacation. He played it once.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about how often you did something

السؤال والإجابة عن عدد مرات القيام بفعل ما

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

How often did you do sports? — كم مرة قمت بممارسة الرياضة؟

I usually did sports in the summer vacation
كنت عادة أمارس الرياضة فى الإجازة الصيفية.

How often did you do something to help your community?
كم مرة قمت بفعل شىء لمساعدة مجتمعك؟

I often helped my community. قمت بمساعدة مجتمعى أغلب الأوقات.

How often did you leave your town? — كم مرة قمت بمغادرة مدينتك؟

Not often. I usually stayed in my town in the summer vacation.
ليس كثيرًا. عادة كنت أقيم فى مدينتى خلال الإجازة الصيفية.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Waleed visited his grandparents with his sister last summer.

Said : What did you do last summer?
Waleed : (1)..... .
Said : Who did you go with?
Waleed : (2)..... .
Said : (3).....?
Waleed : I usually visited them at weekends.
Said : (4).....?
Waleed : I played basketball. I played with my cousins.
Said : Did you spend a good time there?
Waleed : (5)..... . I was very happy.

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about an ancient or old building

كيفية الكتابة عن مبنى أثرى/قديم

e.g. **Write a blog post of about (80-90) words about "An ancient Egyptian temple you visited":**

اسم كاتب المدونة — تاريخ كتابة المدونة — موضوع المدونة

Islam's Blog | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINK | ARCHIVE

Monday, 23rd September

My visit to the Luxor Temple

Last week, I visited the Luxor Temple. It's a large ancient Egyptian temple. It's on the east bank of the Nile River in Luxor. The ancient Egyptians built it around 1400 BCE. It is important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on its walls gives us very interesting and useful information about language and religion over 3,000 years ago. You can see beautiful paintings on its walls, but the temple is so old, you cannot see all of the colors in the paintings on its walls. Some people are working to clean and repair the paintings. That's so cool! ☺

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

خاتمة المدونة

Check Point

Write a blog post about an ancient building you visited.

..... | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINK | ARCHIVE

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Download
للتعرف على كيفية حل سؤال القطعة، امسح الكود وحمل ملحق المهارات.
Master Your Skills

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tourists come to visit Egypt because it's a very beautiful country. The people in Egypt are very kind and **friendly**. Many tourists go to Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh to enjoy the sea. A lot of tourists enjoy the warm weather in Aswan in winter. Tourists can see the Pyramids and many museums in Cairo. Last Monday, my friend Sam came from London to visit Egypt. **He** went to Luxor by plane. He stayed at a nice hotel. He visited a lot of temples and beautiful places.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about? .....
2. Why do you think many tourists go to Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh? .....
3. How did Sam go to Luxor? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Tourists usually visit Aswan in ..... .
   a) summer b) winter c) spring d) autumn
5. The word "**friendly**" means ..... .
   a) useless b) careless c) helpful d) delicious
6. The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to ..... .
   a) tourists b) Sam c) a temple d) a museum

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The opposite of "interesting" is "..... ".
   a) boring b) healthy c) useful d) ugly
2. She was sad to find her plant ..... after the vacation.
   a) alive b) safe c) dead d) dangerous
3. The statue was made of ..... .
   a) wind b) stone c) sand d) water
4. I'm always able to ..... my mom's voice over the phone.
   a) present b) identify c) look after d) discuss
5. The tourists ..... around the city to see all the famous buildings.
   a) walked b) repaired c) cut d) discussed
6. Egypt is famous for its ancient ..... that stand tall.
   a) stones b) tunnels c) tombs d) obelisks

7. Iman is very .....; she always knows the answers to difficult questions.
   a) ugly b) smart c) boring d) weak
8. You ..... wore a watch. You liked to know the time.
   a) usually b) hardly ever c) never d) sometimes
9. I ..... ate seafood. I didn't like it.
   a) ever b) usually c) always d) never
10. Lobna ..... cleaned the house in the morning. She cleaned it in the afternoon once.
   a) hardly ever b) never c) often d) usually

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They often ..... (plant) flowers in their garden last vacation.
2. I ..... (never) made my bed in the morning. I liked it clean.
3. Ola ..... (ever) wore sunglasses. She didn't walk in the hot sun.
4. Ahmed usually wore a hat when it ..... (be) sunny.

4 Write a blog post of (80-90) words on your visit to the Pyramids:

..... | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINK | ARCHIVE

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (often/not) watch films on Friday nights in the past.
2. We ..... (never) met at the coffee shop on Fridays. We met most Fridays.
3. **A:** ..... (How long) did you go to school by car? **B:** Never.

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

A Vocabulary

SB pages 12 - 15

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (d) (v)	ينجز/يحقق	national (adj)	قومى
achievement (n)	إنجاز	opponent (n)	خصم
against (prep)	ضد	practice (d) (v)	يمارس/يتدرب
amaze (d) (v)	يدهش	qualities (n)	مميزات
award (n)	جائزة	ranking (n)	تصنيف
champion (n)	بطل	speed (n)	السرعة
clear (adj)	واضح	table tennis (n)	تنس الطاولة
focus (n)	التركيز	talent (n)	موهبة
improve (d) (v)	يطور	top (n)	القمة/الأول
moral (n)	مغزى/درس أخلاقى	victory (n)	انتصار

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

African (adj)	إفريقى	ITTF (International Table Tennis Federation)	الاتحاد الدولى لتنس الطاولة
age (n)	عمر/سن	journey (n)	رحلة (طويلة)
Arab (adj)	عربى	lower (adj)	أكثر انخفاضًا
attention (n)	اهتمام	let (v)	يسمح
competition (n)	مسابقة	person (n)	شخص
connect (ed) (v)	يوصل	rest (n)	الباقى
cup (n)	كأس	share (d) (v)	يشارك
difficulty (n)	صعوبة	the United Nations (UN)	الأمم المتحدة

Check Point

Choose and complete: talents – achieve – Cup – person

1. Hana won the African ..... . She's a top player.
2. Our grandpa told us that we could improve our ..... through practice.
3. I always work hard to ..... victories.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

achieve > victories	يحقق انتصارات	explain > clearly	يشرح بوضوح
come > true	يتحقق	work > hard	يعمل بجد

Prepositions — حروف الجر

in what ways	بأى الطرق	for long hours	لساعات طويلة
at the age of	فى عمر/فى سن	step by step	خطوة بخطوة
born on	ولد فى (تاريخ كامل)	the world of work	عالم العمل
stop ... from	يمنع ... من		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
become	يصبح	became	become	choose	يختار	chose	chosen
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen	speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
high	مرتفع	low	منخفض	good at	جيد فى	bad at	سيئ فى
national	قومى/محلى	international	دولى	important	هام	unimportant	غير هام

Check Point

Choose and complete: spoken – on – international – in

1. The opposite of "national" is ..... .
2. My father was born ..... 1st October, 1985.
3. Children have ..... many times about their future plans.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **was/were + born in** — ولد فى (مكان - سنة - شهر)

- I was born **in October, 1985.**
- My parents were born **in a village.**

was/were + born on — ولد فى (تاريخ كامل)

- Hana Goda was born on **12th December**, 2007.

2 **However** — ومع ذلك (للتعبير عن التناقض)

- Hana was young. However, she became top of women's world ranking.

Although — على الرغم من (للتعبير عن التناقض)

- Although he is poor, he's happy.

3 **What + a/an + اسم / (صفة + اسم)!** — ياله من ...! (صيغة تعجب)

- What **an** achievement!
- What **a** great achievement!

4 **as + adj. + as** — مثل

- Hana Goda works just as hard as any older player.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 ..... an interesting book!
a) Who b) Why
c) What d) How

2 ..... Mazin is short, he plays basketball.
a) But b) Although
c) If d) When

3 Aya was born ..... June 22nd, 2012.
a) in b) with
c) on d) at

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

achievement	إنجاز	a thing that someone has done very well
opponents	المنافسون	the people you play against in a competition
champion	بطل	the person who wins a competition
victories	انتصارات	successes(1) in competitions
focus	التركيز	giving special attention(2) to something you do

(1) نجاحات

(2) اهتمام

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
achieve (v)	يحقق	succeed in	ينجح فى
begin (v)	يبدأ	start	يبدأ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v)	ينجز/يحقق	-ment		تحويل الفعل لاسم		achievement (n)	إنجاز

Important abbreviations — اختصارات هامة

Abbreviation	الاختصار	Meaning	معناه
BTW		by the way	بالمناسبة (على فكرة)
v		very	جدًا
TTYL!		talk to you later	سأتحدث إليك لاحقًا
Thanx		thanks	شكرًا
CU		See you	أراك (لاحقًا)
LOL		laughing out loud	الضحك بصوت عالٍ

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The synonym of "begin" is "……".
   a) end b) finish c) conclude d) start
2. …… are the successes in competitions.
   a) Speed b) Victories c) Equipment d) Opponents
3. The abbreviation for "See you" is …… .
   a) CU b) imo c) LOL d) BTW

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5: Literature

Pre-reading question: - What's your favorite sport?

Read and listen to the story. *SB page 12*

A Rising Star!

When Hana Goda first started playing table tennis at the age of four; her talent for the sport quickly became clear(1).

However; there was a problem. The table was too high for her!

"What can we do?" her coaches asked, seeing how much she wanted to play.

In the end, they made the legs shorter so that the table was lower.

Since then, Hana has improved year after year, and she amazed the table tennis world by her speed(2) and focus(3).

(1) واضح (2) سرعة
(3) تركيز (4) بطل قومى
(5) ترتيب (6) خصوم
(7) انتصارات

Born on 12th December 2007, Hana became Egypt's youngest ever national champion(4) in 2019, at the age of 12. Just one year later; she came top of the ITTF (International Table Tennis Federation) under- 15 women's world rankings(5) – the first African and Arab player to do so. Then, in 2022, she won a top award at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos. What an achievement!

The United Nations chose Hana to take part in Shabab Balad, a project in Egypt to help young people learn and connect in the world of work.

Although Hana is still much younger than many of her opponents(6), she works just as hard as any older player. She has also spoken about how important it is for her to take things step by step, always learning and trying hard to achieve her victories(7).

Hana really enjoys practicing for long hours every day, even if it is hard work. She is showing young people in Egypt that not only is it possible to make your dreams come true, but you can also enjoy the journey even if the road is difficult.

Post-reading questions:

1 How old was Hana when she first started playing table tennis?

.....

2 What did Hana achieve in 2022?

.....

3 What qualities does Hana have that help her succeed?

.....

Lesson 6: Writing

Pre-reading question:

- What activities did you do last summer holiday?

Read Waleed's email and answer the questions. *SB page 14*

From : Waleed
To : Ashraf
Subject : My summer

Hi Ashraf,

Hope you and your family are OK. We're all fine.

I'm back at school this week after the summer vacation. The summer vacation was good, but I'm happy to be back at school now. I can see all of my friends and it's good to learn something new every day again.

BTW, I learned quite a lot in the summer vacation, but I didn't learn the things you usually study at school. Instead, I volunteered to teach adults to read and write in Arabic and I learned how to explain things clearly. I think that will be useful to me now we're back at school.

Of course, I also had some fun in the summer vacation. I often helped my dad in his workshop. We both enjoy playing ping-pong, so we decided to make a ping-pong table. It was hard work, but we were v happy with the table when it was finished. We were able to play ping-pong every day for the rest of the vacation.

How was your summer?

TTYL!

Waleed

Post-reading questions:

1 Who's Waleed sending the email to?

.....

2 What's Waleed talking about?

.....

3 What sport does Waleed like playing?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Baher bought a new racket to play ..... .
   a) handball b) football c) table tennis d) basketball
2. The winner of the competition will receive a special ..... .
   a) ward b) a ward c) award d) a word
3. The view from the top of the mountain can ..... anyone. It's wonderful.
   a) bore b) upset c) confuse d) amaze
4. Nagwa studied English ..... long hours, so she got high marks.
   a) at b) for c) by d) of
5. To get a good job, you must ..... your skills.
   a) improve b) focus c) connect d) become
6. Our teacher explained the lesson ..... . I understood it well.
   a) badly b) sadly c) clearly d) carelessly
7. We have a/an ..... holiday on October 6th. It's a local holiday.
   a) national b) modern c) international d) rising
8. Fatin was born ..... October 11th, 2012.
   a) on b) at c) for d) with
9. The internet is ..... to the computer. You can search now.
   a) surprised b) disconnected c) connected d) bored
10. My father wanted to change his old car because of its slow ..... .
    a) speed b) title c) victory d) quality
11. I lose my ..... when there is much noise.
    a) prize b) equipment c) victory d) focus
12. To change the verb "achieve" into a noun, we add the suffix "..... ".
    a) -ly b) -ful c) -ment d) - ist

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A ..... is the person who wins a competition.
   a) champion b) chef c) farmer d) star
2. **A:** What subjects are you ..... at, Ali? **B:** I do well in English and math.
   a) bad c) healthy c) boring d) good
3. You can't climb this tree. It's very .....!
   a) high b) low c) fast d) old
4. The water in the river is ....., so there might be a flood فيضان.
   a) boring b) ancient c) possible d) rising
5. Our group went on a long ..... by car.
   a) journey b) cup c) victory d) flight
6. It was a great ..... to win the tournament.
   a) court b) failure c) achievement d) opponent
7. The story has a good ..... . It teaches us how to work hard.
   a) player b) net c) moral d) statue
8. Habiba has a ..... for singing. She has a beautiful voice.
   a) state b) talent c) term d) number
9. Nabil lost the match because his ..... was stronger than him.
   a) champion b) opponent c) partner d) classmate
10. The team is going to have a party because of their ..... .
    a) opponent b) victory c) lose d) failure
11. Our team had good ..... last season. We had the highest score.
    a) opponent b) goals c) ranking d) clothes
12. I like my teacher because he/she has many good ..... .
    a) goals b) qualities c) opponents d) champions

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write an informal email

كيفية كتابة بريد إلكترونى غير رسمى (للأصدقاء المقربين/ الأقارب)

An informal email is a casual message you send to friends or family. You can use simple language, share fun news, or just say hello. It's not like a formal email for work or school; it's more relaxed and friendly.

البريد الإلكترونى غير الرسمى هو رسالة غير رسمية ترسلها للأصدقاء أو العائلة. يمكنك استخدام لغة بسيطة، ومشاركة الأخبار الممتعة، أو مجرد قول مرحبًا. إنه ليس مثل البريد الإلكترونى الرسمى للعمل أو المدرسة؛ إنه أكثر راحة وودية.

توضح النقاط التالية خطوات كتابة البريد:

From: ١- نكتب اسم المُرسِل.

To: ٢- نكتب اسم المرسل إليه.

Subject: ٣- الموضوع.

٤- التحية: (اسم المرسل إليه) + Hello/Hi

٥- نكتب حوالى (٨٠ - ٩٠) كلمة عن الموضوع.

See you soon/Best wishes/All the best ٦- الجملة الختامية:

Yours + اسم المُرسِل ٧- توقيع المُرسِل.

Example

Write an email to your friend Esraa to tell her about your summer holiday. Your name is Mona.

From : Mona
To : Esraa
Subject : My summer holiday
Hi Esraa,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you about my last summer vacation. The summer vacation was great. I worked hard to improve my writing skills in the summer vacation. BTW, I volunteered to teach old people to read and write in Arabic. I think I did v well. I also had some fun in the summer vacation. I often helped my dad in his shop. It was hard work, but we were happy when it was finished. When we finished work at the shop, we enjoyed playing chess together. It was fun, but my dad usually won. What about you?

How was your summer?

Yours,
Mona

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 1 Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Complete the following dialog:

Ghada went to her uncle's farm with her family last summer.

Hadeer : Hi Ghada! How was your summer holiday?

Ghada : Hi Hadeer! It was (1)..... ! I had so much fun.

Hadeer : That's nice. Where did you go?

Ghada : I (2)..... to my uncle's farm.

Hadeer : (3)..... did you go with?

Ghada : I went with my family.

Hadeer : (4)..... did you do there?

Ghada : We had picnics on farms.

Hadeer : Did you take any photos?

Ghada : (5)..... . I took many photos of the beautiful views.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The wall is too high to climb over. It isn't ..... .
   a) tall b) low c) international d) favorite
2. **A:** Where was your grandpa born? **B:** He was born ..... Tanta.
   a) in b) on c) of d) for
3. Eman is young. ....., she plays ping-pong very well.
   a) So b) And d) After c) However
4. Jack traveled to many ..... countries, so he speaks Arabic well.
   a) Arab b) African
   c) United d) International
5. His dream to become a doctor ..... true.
   a) achieved b) came c) won d) brought
6. The team worked hard to ..... victories.
   a) work b) lose c) come d) achieve
7. The new invention ..... the world. It was great.
   a) amazed b) came c) brought d) achieved
8. Ali ..... missed this TV show. He liked to watch it all the time.
   a) always b) never c) sometimes d) often

9. **A:** ..... did you practice the piano last vacation? **B:** Every day.
   a) When b) Where c) How often d) How many
10. They ..... the beach last Sunday.
   a) visited b) visit c) visits d) visiting

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mayar ..... (repair) the broken chair yesterday.
2. My brother and I ..... (not/swim) in the pool yesterday.
3. Khaled ..... (always) forgot to do his homework. He was active at school.
4. Where ..... (be) your father yesterday?

4 Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. player – **Hana** – a great – tennis – is – table.

.....

2. often – Hurghada – went – **They** – summer – to – in.

.....

3. Mazin – **How** – read – did – a story – often?

.....

5 Write an email of (80-90) words to tell your friend Amir about your summer school. Your name is Alaa.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Jana ..... (always) loved basbousa. She thinks it's unhealthy.
2. He read stories before sleeping and ..... (watch) the news.
3. The children ..... (not/be) able to cross the street alone, so I helped them.

General Exercises on Unit 1

A Listening

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What sport does Hana play?
   - a) Table tennis.
   - b) Tennis.
   - c) Basketball.
   - d) Handball.
2. When was Hana born?
   - a) In 2007.
   - b) In 2009.
   - c) In 2008.
   - d) In 2010.
3. How old was Hana when she began playing this sport?
   - a) 14.
   - b) 40.
   - c) 4.
   - d) 44.
4. Which team does she play for?
   - a) Ittihad.
   - b) Al Ahly.
   - c) Al Nasr.
   - d) Al Masry.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Hani and Ahmed are talking about their summer holiday.

Hani : Did you have a good summer holiday?

Ahmed : (1)..... .

Hani : (2).....?

Ahmed : I went to my uncle's farm. What about you?

Hani : (3)..... .

Ahmed : What did you do in Hurghada?

Hani : (4)..... .

Ahmed : (5).....?

Hani : Yes, I rode a bike with my brother.

Ahmed : That's great.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Maria went on a vacation to the beach with her family. They stayed in a small house near the sea. Every morning, Maria and her brother played in the sand and swam in the water. They built big sandcastles and collected colorful shells. In the afternoons, **they** enjoyed ice cream and fresh fruit. One day, they went on a boat trip and saw dolphins. Maria was very excited and took many pictures. In the evenings, they walked along the beach and watched the sunset. Maria loved her summer vacation because she had a lot of fun and spent time with her family. She hopes to go back to the beach next summer.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. Where would you like to go next summer holiday? Why? .....
3. Why did Maria love her summer vacation? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Maria and her family stayed in a/an ..... during their vacation.
   a) hotel b) tent c) small house d) apartment
5. Maria saw ..... on the boat trip.
   a) sharks b) dolphins c) whales d) turtles
6. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a) Maria's friends b) Maria's parents
   c) Maria and the dolphins d) Maria and her brother

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I always ..... out at my family's workshop.
   a) collect b) wait c) repeat d) help
2. We would like to ..... at a community garden to help them plant trees.
   a) score b) kick c) notice d) volunteer
3. Yara was ..... to have a birthday present from her friend.
   a) strange b) amazed c) talented d) helpful
4. It's important to take things step ..... step to achieve your goals.
   a) at b) in c) about d) by

5. Grandma made a ..... cake for my birthday.
   a) free b) weak c) special d) smart
6. The ..... helps countries all over the world which need help.
   a) United Nations b) champion c) opponent d) equipment
7. Can you tell me the ..... for coming late?
   a) statue b) reason c) religion d) present
8. The children ..... their bikes to the park last weekend.
   a) rode b) riding c) rides d) ride
9. Hala ..... fed the birds in the garden. She was very afraid of them.
   a) often b) usually c) always d) never
10. They ..... happy at the club yesterday because it was very crowded.
    a) didn't b) weren't c) don't d) aren't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Who) often did you play tennis?
2. They didn't ..... (traveled) to Marsa Matrouh last summer.
3. Jana ..... (hard) ever played in the street.
4. Sam sometimes ..... (reads) books when he was younger.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Your last vacation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Rana traveled to the USA in the summer vacation.

Salma : I didn't see you in the summer vacation.

Rana : (1)..... .

a) I didn't go anywhere **b)** I swam in the sea

c) I traveled last summer **d)** I stayed home last summer

Salma : Wow! (2).....?

a) Where did you travel **b)** When did you travel

c) How did you travel **d)** Why did you travel

Rana : I traveled to the USA.

Salma : Great! How long did you stay there?

Rana : We stayed for a month. (3).....?

a) What about you **b)** How often you **c)** Why not **d)** How much

Salma : I went to Alexandria.

Rana : (4).....?

a) Why did you swim there **b)** Who did you meet there

c) How did you swim there **d)** Which activities did you do there

Salma : I swam in the sea. I'm happy to see you again.

Rana : (5)..... . I'm happy, too.

a) Sorry **b)** Thank you **c)** Of course **d)** No, sorry

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. We ..... (usually) played video games during the day. We always played in the evening.

a) often **b)** ever **c)** never **d)** always

2. He didn't ..... (cleaned) his car on Saturday.

a) is cleaned **b)** cleaning **c)** cleans **d)** clean

3. How ..... (ever) did you watch videos last vacation?

a) usually **b)** often **c)** always **d)** never

4. When ..... (were) they finish their homework last night?

a) did **b)** do **c)** are **d)** will

5. They ..... (staying) at a hotel when they were in Marsa Matrouh.

a) are staying **b)** stays **c)** stayed **d)** stay

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Unit 2

MY NETWORK

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	Social media posts about a friend's wedding; An email to a friend about making arrangements; Friends online: a short story
Writing	Social media post about a birthday
Listening	Profiles about family life around the world; A dialog about selling things online
Speaking	Asking questions about family life in other countries
Language	Determiners and possessive 's/ s'; Can and will for requests

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 16–19

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bracelet (n)	أسورة/سوار	outfit (n)	زى/ملابس
bride (n)	عروس	photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافى
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	reception (n)	حفلة استقبال
contract (n)	عقد	relatives (n)	أقارب
groom (n)	عريس	service (n)	خدمة
guest (n)	ضيف	sign (ed) (v)	يوقع
hug (ged) (v)	يحضن	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
marriage (n)	زواج	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
network (n)	شبكة	wedding (n)	حفل زفاف

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

birthday party (n)	حفل عيد ميلاد	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
curly (adj)	مجعد	meal (n)	وجبة
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	message (n)	رسالة
description (n)	وصف	restaurant (n)	مطعم
event (n)	حدث	shopping mall (n)	مركز للتسوق
fur (n)	فرو	soup (n)	شوربة/ حساء
gift (n)	هدية/هبة	whole (adj)	كل
gold (n)	ذهب	window (n)	نافذة عرض (فاترينة)

Check Point

Choose and complete: outfit – relatives – curly – delicious

1. We are having a family party with all our ..... .
2. My sister usually takes a long time to choose her ..... before going out.
3. Salwa has ..... hair. It's not straight.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

ask	> her opinion about	يطلب رأيها عن	take	> a photo	يلتقط صورة
get	> married to	يتزوج من		> place	يحدث

Prepositions — حروف الجر

arrive for	يصل لحضور	on/ at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
a long way from	على مسافة بعيدة من	photo of	صورة لـ
ask for	يطلب	plan for	خطة لـ
meet up (with)	يتقابل/يجتمع (مع)	time for	وقت لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
buy	يشترى	bought	bought	send	يرسل	sent	sent
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	sit	يجلس	sat	sat
meet	يقابل	met	met	stand	يقف	stood	stood
sell	يبيع	sold	sold	wear	يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
amazing	مذهل	ordinary	عادى
large	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير

Check Point

Choose and complete: (of – sells – get – amazing – large)

1. Kenzy will ..... married next year.
2. This is a photo ..... my trip to the zoo.
3. My uncle has a shop where he ..... children's clothes.
4. The movie's end was ordinary. It wasn't ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Words used with the topic "wedding" — كلمات تخص الزفاف

wedding cake كعكة الزفاف/ wedding dress فستان الزفاف/ wedding guests ضيوف الزفاف

wedding reception حفل استقبال الزفاف/ wedding service مراسم الزفاف

2 **between** + ساعة + **and** + ساعة — ما بين الساعة ... والساعة ...

- The wedding guests arrive between **6 pm** and **6:30 pm**.

3 **in** + الملبس — الذى يرتدى /التى ترتدى

- They will take a photo of the bride in **her wedding dress**.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My brother does his homework ..... seven and nine in the evening.
a) in **b)** for **c)** between **d)** at

2 I saw a beautiful girl ..... an amazing dress.
a) by **b)** in **c)** at **d)** on

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

bride عروس	a woman who gets married
groom عريس	a man who gets married
guests ضيوف	people who come to the wedding
marriage contract عقد زواج/قران	the paper that the people who are getting married sign(1)
wedding cake كعكة الزفاف	something sweet that people at a wedding eat
wedding dress فستان الزفاف	a special(2) outfit that a woman wears at her wedding
wedding reception حفل استقبال الزفاف	the event where people eat and enjoy themselves

(1) يوقع
(2) مميز/خاص

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
take place (v) يحدث	happen يحدث
outfit (n) زى/ملابس	clothes ملابس

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
tradition (n) تقليد	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	traditional (adj) تقليدى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1: My cousin's wedding

Pre-reading question:

– Have you ever been to a wedding? Who was getting married?

Read the plan for a wedding and complete the definitions of the people and things in it.

SB page 16

- The bride (1), Shorouk and the groom (2), Sherif, arrive at 5 pm.
- The photographer (3) arrives at 5:30 pm to take photos of the bride in her wedding (4) dress and the groom.
- The wedding guests (5) arrive for the wedding service (6) between 6 pm and 6:30 pm.
- The signing (7) of the marriage contract (8) takes place between 7:30 pm and 8:30 pm.
- The wedding reception (9) starts at 9 pm. The guests have a meal, eat wedding cake, and take photos with the bride and groom.

(1) عروسة	(2) عريس
(3) مصور	(4) حفل زفاف
(5) ضيوف	(6) مراسم زفاف
(7) توقيع	(8) عقد الزواج
(9) حفل استقبال	

Post-reading questions:

1. Who are the bride and the groom?

.....

2. What does a photographer do?

.....

3. When do the wedding guests arrive?

.....

Comprehension Skills

"Giving the main idea"

- The main idea means what the text is about.

الفكرة الرئيسية تعنى ما يدور حوله النص.

To find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1. Look at the title. انتبه للعنوان.
2. Read the first sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأولى.
3. Read the last sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.
4. Look for repeated words or phrases. ابحث عن الكلمات والعبارات المكررة.

Example:

What's the main idea of the previous text?

- The main idea of the text is about a wedding party.

Pre-reading question: - What do you like most about weddings?

Read and listen to Manal's social media posts about a wedding. Choose the correct photo for each post. *SB page 17*

(1): Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira got married[1] to Ayman. It was a really fun day. I have a large family and more than half of the wedding guests[2] were members of my family! I loved seeing my whole family come together to celebrate with Amira and Ayman. I saw aunts and uncles who live a long way from us and who I don't see very often. This is a photo of me next to Amira and some of my cousins.

(2): The wedding service[3] was really beautiful. When Amira arrived, you could hear everyone say "Wow!". She looked so beautiful and her wedding dress was amazing. It was white and she was wearing a beautiful gold necklace[4] and bracelets[5] that were a **gift** from Ayman. Ayman's traditional[6] galabeya was white. The bride[7] and groom[8] looked very happy!

(1) يتزوج (2) ضيوف
(3) مراسم الزفاف (4) عقد
(5) أساور (6) تقليدى
(7) عروسة (8) عريس
(9) توقيع (10) عقد

(3): After the signing[9] of the contract[10], it was time for some food and some fun! That's my favorite part of a wedding – the wedding reception! I sat at a table with my two brothers, my parents, and my grandma. I wanted to talk to some other relatives after the meal, so I got up and went to talk to my cousins. My cousin Eman showed me all her photos of the wedding on her phone, then Ayman and Amira cut the wedding cake. It was delicious!

Post-reading questions:

1 When did Amira get married to Ayman? .....

2 How was the wedding service? .....

Lesson 2: An email to a friend

Pre-reading question:

- What do you usually do on your grandma's birthday?

Read and listen to the email. *SB page 18*

From : Malak **To :** Tamara

Subject : Some family photos

Hi Tamara,

How are you?

I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's birthday party last week. The party was at my grandparents' house and our whole family was there. We all had a lot of fun together!

The party showed me that sending messages to your friends and family is fine, but it's not as good as spending time with them. You can laugh with them, hug them and look in their eyes and really listen to them.

Do you have time to meet up with me one afternoon next week? Maybe on the weekend? We could go to the shopping mall. There's a shop there that has some beautiful clothes in its windows. I could ask my parents for some money for the cinema or to go to a restaurant. My dad's friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month and it looks great. What do you think?

Write soon and tell me about your family.

Love,

Malak

Post-reading question:

- What do they sell in the shop that Malak writes about?

Find a photo or draw a picture of your family all together. *SB page 19*

Write a description of it in your notebook.

In this picture, my family and I were having lunch at my grandparents' house. My aunt Salwa and her kids were there. The food was delicious! We had salad, fattah, and meat. My grandmother also cooked some delicious soup. After we ate, Mom made us all some tea and cake, which we all enjoyed. After that, I played outside with my cousins. It was great fun!

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The bride and the groom should ..... a marriage contract to marry.
   a) celebrate **b)** hug **c)** sign **d)** suggest
2. The ..... looked beautiful in her white dress.
   a) bride **b)** pride **c)** groom **d)** contract
3. Dad usually has fish and rice at this ..... .
   a) service **b)** window **c)** restaurant **d)** event
4. Fareeda's friends gave her lots of ..... for her birthday. She was amazed.
   a) relatives **b)** gifts **c)** contracts **d)** windows
5. The little boy asked his father ..... some money to buy sweets.
   a) at **b)** in **c)** with **d)** for
6. In my opinion, happiness means to have a strong ..... of family and friends.
   a) routine **b)** network **c)** schedule **d)** job
7. We invited all our ..... to my grandma's birthday party.
   a) services **b)** relatives **c)** messages **d)** windows
8. Our ..... enjoyed the dinner my mom made.
   a) gifts **b)** events **c)** meals **d)** guests
9. The wedding will ..... place on Thursday. I'm sure it will be amazing.
   a) have **b)** go **c)** take **d)** get
10. Bushra bought a beautiful ..... necklace. It was expensive.
    a) gold **b)** plastic **c)** cloth **d)** wood
11. The ..... included salad, fattah, and meat. It was delicious.
    a) paper **b)** meal **c)** service **d)** event
12. We saw many toys in the shop ..... .
    a) services **b)** photos **c)** gifts **d)** windows
13. Batool usually ..... with her friends at the club.
    a) comes to **b)** talks to **c)** meets up **d)** picks up
14. They wore ..... clothes for the wedding. Their clothes weren't modern.
    a) traditional **b)** delicious **c)** whole **d)** large
15. To get the adjective from the word "tradition", we add the suffix "..... ".
    a) -ly **b)** -ist **c)** -ment **d)** -al

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is the person who takes photos.
   a) bride **b)** photographer **c)** groom **d)** cook
2. My aunts and uncles live a long way ..... us. We see them once a year.
   a) with **b)** to **c)** at **d)** from
3. You should sign the ..... first to get the job.
   a) message **b)** reception **c)** contract **d)** media
4. The wedding cake is something ..... that people eat at the wedding.
   a) salty **b)** sweet **c)** long **d)** tiny
5. All people wanted to ..... photographs with the bride and the groom.
   a) take **b)** sign **c)** do **d)** make
6. The bride, Sally and the ....., Ahmed, arrived at 7 pm.
   a) service **b)** relative **c)** groom **d)** guest
7. The wedding ..... is a special outfit that a woman wears at her wedding.
   a) dress **b)** cake **c)** reception **d)** guest
8. My cousin Nawal got married ..... Nabil.
   a) from **b)** to **c)** by **d)** in
9. The whole family members came to ..... my birthday.
   a) laugh **b)** suggest **c)** celebrate **d)** hug
10. The wedding ..... was really beautiful. All the guests were happy.
    a) cinema **b)** media **c)** contract **d)** service
11. The bride wore a gold necklace and ..... . They were amazing.
    a) bracelets **b)** guests **c)** relatives **d)** messages
12. When the party started, it was time ..... some fun.
    a) on **b)** at **c)** for **d)** to
13. The bride and the groom cut the wedding ..... and all guests clapped for them.
    a) contract **b)** cake **c)** reception **d)** service
14. I was ..... next to the bride in the photo.
    a) meeting **b)** selling **c)** standing **d)** drawing

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 Determiners محددات الملكية

e.g. She is Marwa and this is her bag.

We use these determiners to say who is the owner of something, or who something belongs to:

نستخدم محددات الملكية لنقول من هو مالك شيء ما، أو من ينتمي إليه شيء ما (ويأتي بعدها الشيء المملوك):

e.g. I'm Tarek and this is my father.

ويختلف محدد الملكية بناء على الشخص/الشيء المالك كالتالي:

Determiner	Owner	Examples
my ملكي (متكلم مفرد)	الضمير (I)	I want these books. They are my books. Give **me** my books.
his ملكه (مفرد مذكر غائب)	اسم مفرد مذكر الضمير (He)	**Ali** wants his bag. **He** lost his watch at school.
her ملكها (مفرد مؤنث غائب)	اسم مفرد مؤنث الضمير (She)	**Heba** wants her bag. **She** likes her father.
your ملكك / ملككم (مخاطب مفرد أو جمع)	الضمير (You)	**Ali**, take your pen. **You** can take your pens now.
our ملكنا (متكلم جمع)	الضمير (We) (اسم + I)	**We** live in a nice house. Our house is big. Our father loves **us** so much.
their ملكهم (جمع عاقل أو غير عاقل غائب)	اسم جمع الضمير (They)	He is **Ali and Heba's** father. He is their father. **They** love their father.
its ملكه/ ملكها (لغير العاقل المفرد)	اسم مفرد غير عاقل الضمير (It)	I have a **car**, its color is red.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I can't find ..... (I) tablet. It's a gift from my father.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (my) لأن الفاعل (I) والشيء يخصه.

2 This book belongs to Hana. It's ..... (his) book.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (her) لأن الفاعل اسم مفرد مؤنث.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (1)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Leen goes to school with ..... brother.
   a) she **b)** her **c)** we **d)** I
2. I love ..... parents. They love me, too.
   a) my **b)** I **c)** me **d)** mine
3. Ali and Hana are very happy with ..... new toys.
   a) their **b)** them **c)** her **d)** his
4. Salem and I took ..... guitars and started to play on them. They belong to us.
   a) our **b)** his **c)** her **d)** my
5. **A:** What's your teacher's name? **B:** ..... name is Mr. Waleed.
   a) Her **b)** His **c)** Its **d)** Your
6. That's ..... watch. My grandpa gave it to me on my birthday.
   a) me **b)** him **c)** she **d)** my
7. I like my cat and ..... eyes.
   a) they **b)** their **c)** it **d)** its
8. This is Sara's hat. It's ..... hat.
   a) our **b)** my **c)** her **d)** his
9. ..... favorite sport is tennis. You like it so much.
   a) You **b)** Yours **c)** Your **d)** Its
10. Do you have ..... ticket with you?
    a) you **b)** your **c)** yours **d)** its

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We can't use ..... (us) mobile phones in class.
2. Maya and Sara like ..... (they) house.
3. I have a mobile phone, but I don't like ..... (it) color.
4. My sister and I do ..... (we) homework together.
5. **A:** What's ..... (you) name? **B:** It's Said.
6. **A:** Where's Nabil from? **B:** He's from Giza and ..... (her) bride is from Alex.

2 Possessive 's/s' 's/s' للملكية

e.g. • This is Ali's room. • That is the kids' room.

We can use possessive 's/s' after a name or a noun to show who owns something or to whom something belongs to.

يمكننا استخدامها بعد اسم لإظهار من يملك شيئًا ما أو من ينتمى إليه شىء ما.

- نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد غير المنتهى بـ (s)

's

• It's Adel's book.

• That's my friend's car.

- نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم الجمع الذى ليس آخره حرف (s) (جمع غير منتظم).

• That is not the children's room.

- نستخدم (') مع الاسم الجمع المنتظم المنتهى بحرف (s)

s'

• That's the teachers' room. • This is a girls' school.

- يمكن استخدام (') مع الاسم المفرد المنتهى بحرف (s).

• It's Lamees' dress.

لاحظ

١- لا تستخدم ('s) مع الجماد.

- I repaired my **car door**.

٢- عند امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشىء ما، نضع ('s) على الاسم الأخير فقط:

- I know whose ruler this is. It has **Dalia and Azza**'s names on it.

٣- عند إضافة ('s) لبعض الوظائف تتحول إلى أماكن:

baker's المخبز/chemist's الصيدلية/butcher's محل الجزارة

e.g. • We buy bread at the baker's.

٤- عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (ملك من/لمن Whose) كالتالى:

Whose + (object الشىء) + is/are ...?

A: Whose shoes are these? **B:** They are Ali's shoes.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My father repaired the ..... (laptop's battery).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (laptop battery) لأنه جماد فلا يتم إضافة ('s).

2 ..... (Who's) book is that?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Whose) لأنها تسأل عن الملكية.

3 This is ..... (Ayas') car.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Aya's) لأن Aya اسم مفرد غير منتهٍ بـ s.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (2)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This is my ..... bike. He likes it.
   a) brother **b)** brother's **c)** brothers' **d)** brothers
2. These are the ..... books. Give them their books.
   a) boys' **b)** boy's **c)** boys **d)** boy'
3. ..... hair is very long.
   a) Anas **b)** Anas has **c)** Anas is **d)** Anas'
4. Your sisters share a bedroom. Your ..... bedroom is quite big.
   a) sister **b)** sisters **c)** sister's **d)** sisters'
5. Mesbah has got a new phone. ..... new phone is very cheap.
   a) Mesbah **b)** Mesbah' **c)** Mesbah's **d)** Mesbahs'
6. Elephants have got ears. ..... ears are very big.
   a) Elephants' **b)** Elephants's **c)** Elephant **d)** Elephants
7. My ..... names are Fatma, Amira, and Hadeer.
   a) friend **b)** friends **c)** friends' **d)** friend's
8. You can find ..... clothes on the fourth floor of the shop.
   a) men **b)** men' **c)** men's **d)** mens'
9. I have a good book. The ..... pages are yellow.
   a) book **b)** books **c)** book's **d)** books'
10. This is the ..... room.
    a) children **b)** children of **c)** children' **d)** children's

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The ..... (guests) names were printed on cards.
2. The policeman wrote down the ..... (women) names.
3. The park is near my ..... (uncle) house.
4. Our ..... (daughter) name is Miriam.
5. His ..... (bride) family is from Luxor.
6. ..... (Susan and Zeinab) school is old. They're at the same school.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Making arrangements

عمل ترتيبات

Would you like to + inf. ...? — **هل تود أن ...؟**

- Would you like to meet up tomorrow? — - هل تود أن نلتقى غدًا؟

Sure! — - بالتأكيد!

We could + inf. ... — **يمكننا ...**

- We could go to the shopping mall. — - يمكننا الذهاب إلى مركز التسوق.

Great! — - عظيم!

Do you have time to + inf. ...? — **هل لديك الوقت أن ...؟**

- Do you have time to meet up at one pm tomorrow?

- هل لديك وقت لنلتقى غدًا فى الواحدة مساءً؟

Sorry, I can't. — - عذرًا، لا أستطيع.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Roaa and Basmala are planning to go to the cinema.

Roaa : Would you like to meet up tomorrow?

Basmala : Sure! (1)..... ?

Roaa : At 6 pm.

Basmala : (2)..... ?

Roaa : I'd like to go to the cinema.

Basmala : (3)..... ?

Roaa : Yes, I have time to go shopping after cinema.

Basmala : (4)..... !

Roaa : What snack could we have at the cinema?

Basmala : (5)..... .

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write an email about making arrangements. كيفية كتابة إيميل عن عمل ترتيبات.

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية، ومن خلال إجابتك ستتمكن من كتابة موضوع عن عمل الترتيبات:

(1) Where do you want to go?

(2) Why do you want to go there?

(3) When do you want to go there?

Making arrangements

(4) What are you going to do together?

(5) When are you going to go back?

(6) Ask him about his opinion.

Example

From: Sally **To:** Tara **Subject:** Making arrangements

Hi Tara,

How are you and your family? I hope you are in good health. I'm sending you a photo of me at my sister's wedding party last week. The party was at our house and our family was there. We all had a lot of fun together.

Do you have time to meet up with me next weekend? We could go to the shopping mall to buy new clothes. We could also go to the new restaurant. My brothers say that the food is delicious and it looks great. What do you think? Write soon and tell me about your family.

Love,
Sally

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Eman to ask her to go to Al Azhar Park. Your name is Amira.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 2 Lessons (1 & 2)

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When was the wedding?
   a) Last week. **b)** Last month. **c)** Last weekend. **d)** Last year.
2. How many guests were there?
   a) Many. **b)** Few. **c)** None. **d)** We don't know.
3. How many members of the family were there?
   a) None. **b)** Few. **c)** Some. **d)** All.
4. Who did they take photos with?
   a) The bride. **b)** The groom. **c)** The guests. **d)** a & b.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Safi is telling Ola about her sister's wedding last week.

Ola : Hi, Safi! How are you?
Safi : (1)..... . My sister got married last week!
Ola : That's great! How was the wedding?
Safi : (2).....?
Ola : (3).....?
Safi : Yes, I had a lot of fun.
Ola : (4).....?
Safi : She wore a beautiful dress. She wore a gold necklace and bracelets, too.
Ola : Did you take any photos?
Safi : (5)..... . I'll show you some later.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

her – bride – him – cake – guests

Last Thursday, I went to a wedding party. The (1)..... wore a beautiful white dress. Many (2)..... came to the wedding and liked (3)..... wedding dress very much. People danced and had fun. The best part was the wedding (4)..... . It was big and delicious. It was a wonderful wedding.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She wore a silver ..... on her hand.
   a) galabeya **b)** dress **c)** bracelet **d)** necklace
2. Aya chose a colorful ..... for the party.
   a) contract **b)** outfit **c)** photographer **d)** relative

3. The bride and the groom were excited to sign the ..... .
   a) contract **b)** reception **c)** wedding **d)** cinema
4. The restaurant ..... was very good. They prepared the food after 10 minutes.
   a) outfit **b)** network **c)** wedding **d)** service
5. He likes to post videos on social ..... .
   a) contract **b)** reception **c)** media **d)** wedding
6. We were bored, so my friends ..... that we read a book.
   a) celebrated **b)** suggested **c)** hugged **d)** signed
7. Mom usually ..... me before I went to school.
   a) hugged **b)** laughed **c)** enjoyed **d)** signed
8. These are Mai and Reda and that's ..... daughter, Sama.
   a) our **b)** her **c)** his **d)** their
9. ..... picture is this?
   a) Who **b)** Whose **c)** Where **d)** When
10. ..... new car is expensive.
    a) Leilas **b)** Leilas' **c)** Leila's **d)** Leila'

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Noha and Sami) wedding is next Sunday.
2. The computer belongs to Sara. It's ..... (Sara).
3. I have two children and ..... (her) names are Rose and Mary.
4. Salem's mother lives in the village. ..... (Hers) house is old and big.

6 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"A description of a day you spent with your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The ..... (car/window) is made of glass.
2. My sister and I have a game. ..... (Its) is nice.
3. ..... (Who's) bag is that?

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 20–23

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

address (n)	عنوان	furniture (n)	أثاث
alone (adv)	بمفرده	honest (adj)	أمين / صادق
apartment (n)	شقة	motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية
bank account (n)	حساب بنكى	online (adj) (adv)	عبر الإنترنت
condition (n)	حالة/ظرف	personal information	معلومات شخصية
country (n)	دولة	public (adj)	عام
environmentally friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	remember (ed) (v)	يتذكر
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح/يفسر	the countryside (n)	الريف
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
fetch (ed) (v)	يذهب ليحضر	safety rules (n)	قواعد الأمان

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

accommodation (n)	إقامة	island (n)	جزيرة
carry (~~y~~ied) (v)	يحمل	profile (n)	ملف شخصى
details (n)	تفاصيل	request (ed) (v/n)	يطلب/طلب
hall (n)	قاعة/صالة	coast (n)	ساحل
hometown (n)	مسقط الرأس	village (n)	قرية

Check Point

Choose and complete: hall – remember – apartment – fetch

1. I can't ..... where I put my keys.
2. Teachers usually have the meetings in the big ..... .
3. I live in a small ..... with my family.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

answer	the phone	يرد على التليفون	follow	rules	يتبع القواعد
as long as		طالما	get	money	يحصل عل المال
buzz	the intercom	يضغط على جهاز الاتصال الداخلى	go	skiing	يذهب للتزلج
do	the housework	يؤدى الأعمال المنزلية	share	personal information	يشارك معلومات شخصية
fly	kites	يُطير طائرات ورقية		ideas	يشارك أفكارًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

around the world	حول العالم	hang out	يتسكع (يقضى وقت)
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	in person	شخصيًا (بنفسك)
help with	يساعد فى	it's better to	من الأفضل أن
in good condition	بحالة جيدة	know about	يعرف عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
show	يعرض	showed	shown	fly	يطير	flew	flown
feed	يطعم	fed	fed				

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
downstairs	فى الطابق السفلى	upstairs	فى الطابق العلوى	sell	يبيع	buy	يشترى
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين	true	صحيح	wrong/ false	خطأ
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب	well-known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف

Check Point

Choose and complete: False – at – fed – buzz – about

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمة وعكسها.

1. Could you please ..... the intercom?
2. This movie is based on a true story. "....." is the opposite of "true".
3. My kids want to know more ..... the place we're traveling to.
4. I always ..... the chicken when I was on my grandpa's farm.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **Why don't you/we + inf.?** لم لا...؟ (لتقديم الاقتراحات)

- Why don't you **sell** some of this old furniture online?

How/ What about + noun/ verb + ing? ماذا عن ...؟ (لتقديم الاقتراحات)

- How about **having** fish/ **fish** for dinner?

2 **Countries and cities** دول ومدن

Australia	أستراليا	Italy	إيطاليا	Morocco	المغرب
Canada	كندا	Japan	اليابان	UK	المملكة المتحدة
Indonesia	إندونيسيا	Toronto	مدينة تورونتو (كندا)	Naples	نابولى (مدينة ايطالية)

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة		Synonym عكسها	
request (v)	يطلب/طلب	order	يطلب/طلب
well-known (adj)	معروف	famous	مشهور

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
environmental (adj) بيئى	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	environmentally (adv) بيئى
inform (v) يبلغ	-ation	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	information (n) معلومات

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
im-	تعطى عكس المعنى	polite (adj) مؤدب	impolite (adj) غير مؤدب
dis-		honest (adj) أمين	dishonest (adj) غير أمين
un-		known (adj) معروف	unknown (adj) غير معروف

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To get the antonym of "honest", we add the prefix "……".
   a) dis- **b)** in- **c)** un- **d)** im-
2. The synonym of "well-known" is "……".
   a) unknown **b)** famous **c)** special **d)** careful
3. To get the noun from the verb "inform", we add the …… "ation".
   a) synonym **b)** antonym **c)** prefix **d)** suffix

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

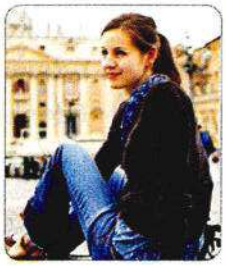
- Where do you live?

Listening Text

Lesson 3: Families around the world

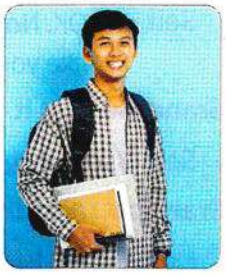
Listen and match the speakers to the countries. *SB page 20*

Isabella Hello, my name's Isabella. I'm from Naples, a big city in the south of Italy. I live with my mom, dad and brother in an apartment. My grandparents live just across the road! We have a car, but my brother usually gets around on his motorbike. On the weekends, we like to get out of the city to explore (1) the coast (2) and islands (3) near Naples.



Liam Hi, I'm Liam. I'm from Toronto in Canada. I live with my mom, brother, and two sisters. Oh, and our dog, Bobby! But our grandparents live on the other side of Canada, so we only see them in the school holidays. Our house is big and has a garden. We have a car, too. It's fun hanging out (4) with my family. In the summer, we ride our bikes. In the winter, we go skiing!

Komang Hi, my name's Komang. My family and I live on an island in Indonesia. It's a big family! There's my mom, dad, brother and grandma, my aunt and uncle, and my three cousins. We all live together in a traditional house. We don't have a car, but we have two motorbikes. Our favorite thing to do together is go to the beach to fly kites!



Alice Hello. My name is Alice and I live with my family in a village in the UK. In my family, there's me and my sister, and our mom. Our grandparents live nearby, and we often all go for walks in the countryside (5) together. Our house is very new and modern – I call it our 'green house' because it's made of recycled materials and has solar panels (6) on the roof.

Post-listening questions:

1. Whose family has a car and a motorbike? .....
2. Who doesn't live near their grandparents? .....

(1) يستكشف (2) ساحل
(3) جزر (4) يتسكع
(5) الريف (6) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية

Lesson 4: Selling things online

Pre-reading question:

- Do your family and friends ever sell things online? How do they do this?

Read and listen to the dialog. What is the first thing Grandpa wants to sell online? *SB page 22*

(1) قواعد (2) حالة/ظرف
(3) معلومات شخصية (4) عنوان
(5) حساب بنكى (6) عام

Seif Grandpa, why don't you sell some of this old furniture online? That way you can get some money for it.

Grandpa I don't know ... Is it safe?

Seif It's safe as long as you follow a few rules[1].

Grandpa Can you tell me what they are?

Seif I can, yes. First, always use a well-known website to buy or sell something. Here's a good one. OK, what do you want to sell?

Grandpa How about this table?

Seif Great. Can you give me your phone so I can take a photo of it? Thanks. OK, the next thing to remember is: always be honest. Make sure all the information you give about something you're selling is true.

Grandpa Well, this is a large table from the 1970s. It's in good condition[2].

Seif OK. Now, another very important rule is: don't share personal information[3] like your name, date of birth, address[4] or bank account[5] details.

Grandpa Got it. What happens next?

Seif Someone will send you a message if they want to buy the table.

Grandpa And then, will I meet the person to give it to them?

Seif It's better to send it to them. In fact, that's another important rule. If you have to meet someone, meet them in a public[6] place and don't go alone.

Grandpa Thanks, Seif. We never did this when I was your age!

Post-reading questions:

1 What does grandpa want to sell?

.....

2 How many rules did Seif tell grandpa?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Akram likes to ride his ..... to work.
   a) apartment **b)** motorbike **c)** laptop **d)** remote control
2. Ahmed buys online from a/an ..... website to be safe.
   a) bad **b)** dishonest **c)** well-known **d)** unknown
3. My ..... of birth is on October 11th, 2012.
   a) person **b)** date **c)** address **d)** website
4. My father has a bank ..... to save money.
   a) rule **b)** title **c)** account **d)** address
5. The art show is in the school ..... today.
   a) hall **b)** control **c)** hole **d)** intercom
6. My grandpa's car is very old, but it is still in good ..... .
   a) safety **b)** condition **c)** information **d)** furniture
7. Manal asked the waiter to ..... her a cup of coffee.
   a) feed **b)** fly **c)** fetch **d)** show
8. My mum bought new ..... for the living room last month.
   a) rules **b)** information **c)** profile **d)** furniture
9. The ..... rules for driving are wearing your seat belt and not using a phone.
   a) save **b)** address **c)** safety **d)** condition
10. My ..... is famous for its tall buildings.
    a) hometown **b)** website **c)** rule **d)** apartment
11. My sister updated her ..... on Facebook.
    a) personal **b)** profile **c)** site **d)** accommodation
12. We decided to ..... skiing next weekend.
    a) have **b)** do **c)** make **d)** go
13. You should be careful when you ..... your personal information.
    a) buzz **b)** carry **c)** share **d)** fetch
14. It's better ..... follow rules when you buy something online.
    a) at **b)** in **c)** to **d)** with
15. The ..... is full of green fields and trees.
    a) countryside **b)** apartment **c)** panel **d)** motorbike

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's fun to ..... with my family in the summer. We usually go to different parks.
   a) look out **b)** take out **c)** hang out **d)** watch out
2. To get electricity from sunlight, you would use ..... .
   a) solar panels **b)** fans **c)** toasters **d)** lamps
3. My brother ..... a book from the library because he needs it for his school project.
   a) asked **b)** requested **c)** showed **d)** remembered
4. We need a guide مرشد to help us ..... this beautiful city.
   a) explore **b)** organize **c)** paint **d)** share
5. Could you please give me all the ..... about the trip?
   a) details **b)** addresses **c)** apartments **d)** websites
6. My dad asked me to ..... the phone quickly.
   a) pay **b)** remind **c)** present **d)** answer
7. My sister always ..... the birds.
   a) reminds **b)** pays **c)** feeds **d)** answers
8. The teacher ..... the lesson very well and we all understood.
   a) explained **b)** followed **c)** achieved **d)** remembered
9. Our ..... is small, but nice. We moved to it in 2010.
   a) environment **b)** apartment **c)** control **d)** address
10. Essam ..... the intercom when he arrived.
    a) fed **b)** reminded **c)** paid **d)** buzzed
11. You should be ..... and tell people true things.
    a) honest **b)** dishonest **c)** well-known **d)** unknown
12. You should meet people you don't know in a ..... place and don't go alone.
    a) personal **b)** public **c)** private **d)** dishonest
13. Be careful if someone online asks you to give them your ..... information.
    a) honest **b)** official **c)** personal **d)** public
14. I gave my ..... to my best friend to visit me.
    a) password **b)** website **c)** date of birth **d)** address
15. My grandparents live ..... because they can't climb stairs.
    a) downstairs **b)** upstairs **c)** online **d)** offline

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language & Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Language & Speaking

Making and responding to requests (Will/Can)

تقديم الطلبات والرد عليها

Can you + inf. ... ? هل تستطيع ...؟

- Can you **help** me with my laptop?

Will you + inf. ... ? هل ...؟

- Will you **feed** the cat, please?

Accepting (Positive) القبول	Refusing (Negative) الرفض
	يفضل أن تقدم سببًا للرفض لتكون أكثر أدبًا - Sorry, I can't at the moment. - آسف، لا يمكننى الآن.
- Yes, of course. - نعم، بالطبع.	
- Sure, no problem. - بالتأكيد، لا مشكلة.	- No, sorry, I'm busy. - آسف، أنا مشغول.
- Yes, here it is. - نعم، ها هو.	- No. I'll do it later. - لا، سأفعلها لاحقًا.
- Yes, I will do it now. - حسنا، سأفعل ذلك الآن.	

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

A father asks for his son's help.

Father : Hey, son. Can you help me with something?

Son : (1)..... . What do you need?

Father : Will you fetch the newspaper from the living room?

Son : (2)..... . Here it is.

Father : Thank you. (3).....?

Son : Yes, Dad. Here is a glass of water.

Father : Great! And can you turn off the TV while you're there?

Son : (4)..... . Anything else?

Father : (5).....?

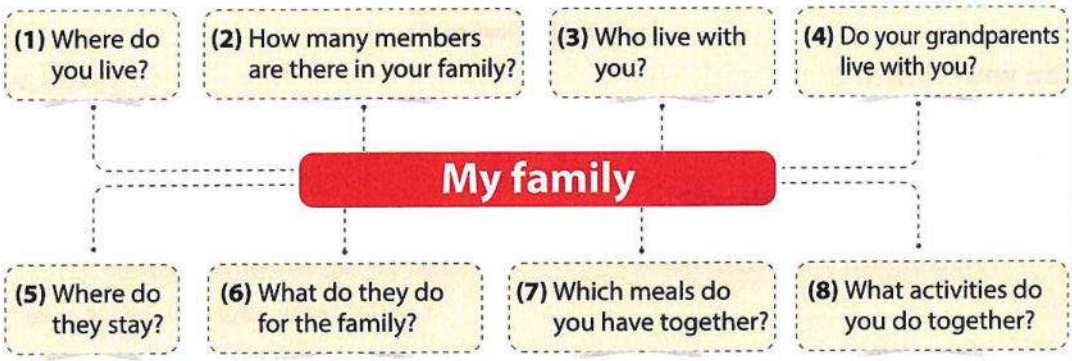
Son : Okay. Sara! Dad wants you to come downstairs!

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your family life.

كيفية الكتابة عن حياتك العائلية.



Example

My family

I live in a small apartment in a village. There are five members in my family: my mom, dad, two sisters, and me. My grandparents do not live with us; they stay in their own house nearby. They visit us often and bring delicious food. My mom cooks dinner every night, and we eat together as a family. During dinner, we talk about our day and share stories. At weekends, we like to play games and watch films together. We also enjoy going to the park for a picnic. I love spending time with my family.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about your family tree.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Writing tips

Share your writing with teachers, parents, or friends and ask for their suggestions to improve your writing.

شارك كتابتك مع المعلمين، أولياء الأمور أو الأصدقاء واطلب منهم مقترحات لتطوير كتابتك.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 2 Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Families around the world live in many different ways. In some countries, families live in big houses with gardens. In other places, they live in small apartments in tall buildings. Families can be big or small. Some have many children, while others have one or none. Many families eat meals together every day. They talk about their day and share stories. In some places, grandparents live with the family and **they** help look after the children. Family traditions are important. Some families celebrate birthdays with parties, while others have special holidays they celebrate together. Even though families may live differently, they all love and **care** for each other. Family is important in every culture and brings people together.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. Is it a good idea that grandparents live with the family in the same house? Why/ Why not? .....
3. Why are family traditions important according to the passage? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Many families ..... together every day.
   a) go to the park **b)** eat meals
   c) watch movies **d)** go shopping
5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a) grandparents **b)** families
   c) parties **d)** apartments
6. The word "**care**" in the passage means ..... .
   a) like to travel **b)** spend money
   c) show love **d)** work together

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A sofa and a chair are types of ..... .
   a) transport **b)** furniture **c)** tools **d)** vehicles
2. Students must ..... their school rules.
   a) follow **b)** get **c)** take **d)** do
3. My dad wants to open a new bank ..... .
   a) address **b)** date **c)** account **d)** profile
4. Our ..... has a nice view of the park.
   a) laptop **b)** apartment **c)** hall **d)** motorbike

5. My cousins took a boat to explore the nearby ..... .
   a) address **b)** information **c)** island **d)** countryside
6. Can you help ..... cleaning up after dinner?
   a) at **b)** with **c)** about **d)** on
7. Always be ..... and say "thank you" when someone helps you.
   a) busy **b)** careless **c)** polite **d)** impolite
8. ..... you carry this heavy bag for me, please?
   a) Do **b)** Are **c)** Have **d)** Can
9. Will you ..... me how to read English, Dad?
   a) teaching **b)** taught **c)** teach **d)** teaches
10. Talia sings so beautifully. ..... voice is strong and sweet.
    a) Her **b)** His **c)** Its **d)** My

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali and Leila won't be able to come. ..... (Our) car is in the garage.
2. Sorry, I ..... (can) help you right now.
3. ..... (Who) car is that?
4. Can you read or ..... (writing) English?

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Your family life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (I/can) help you?
2. I took someone's book. It's ..... (her) book.
3. My sister goes to a nearby ..... (girl) school.

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 24-27

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

celebration (n)	احتفال	handle (d) (v)	يتعامل مع
challenge (n)	تحدى	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى
chat (ted) (v)	يدردش	misunderstanding (n)	عدم التفاهم
comment (n)	تعليق	nature (n)	الطبيعة
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	pass (ed) (v)	ينقضى/يمر/ينجح/يمرر
communication (n)	تواصل	photography (n)	التصوير
congratulate (d) (v)	يهنئ	specific (adj)	محدد/معين
congratulations (n)	تهانينا/ مبروك	theme (n)	موضوع
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	website (n)	موقع إلكترونى
friendship (n)	صداقة	worried (adj)	قَلقِ

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

ability (n)	قدرة	online forum (n)	منتدى على الإنترنت
art (n)	فن	practice (n)	ممارسة
close friend (n)	صديق مقرب	present (n)	هدية
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	real (adj)	حقيقى
experiences (n)	تجارب/مواقف (حياتية)	schoolwork (n)	العمل المدرسى
fantastic (adj)	رائع	season (n)	موسم
hobby (n)	هواية	several (adj)	عديد
importance (n)	أهمية	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
joke (n/v)	مزحة/ يمزح	test (ed) (v)	يختبر
news (n)	أخبار	well done	أحسنت

Check Point

Choose and complete: Emojis – hobby – photography – nature

1. I always take photos of birds, trees and seas because I like ..... .
2. Maha's favorite ..... is painting.
3. ..... make messages fun.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	activities	يؤدى أنشطة	face-to-face		وجهًا لوجه
	a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	make	a friend	يكون صداقة
	challenge	يؤدى تحدى		plans	يعد خططًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

deal with	يتعامل مع	of her age	من نفس عمرها
find out	يكتشف	proud of	فخور بـ
focus on	يركز على	reply to	يرد على
hear from	يتلقى رسالة/أخبارًا من	season for	موسم لـ
in common	مشترك	share with	يشارك مع
interested in	مهتم بـ		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
deal	يتعامل	dealt	dealt	feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل	formal	رسمى	informal	غير رسمى

Check Point

Choose and complete: felt – with – make – informal – at

1. It is easy to ..... friends at school.
2. I can deal ..... this problem if you help me.
3. Laila ..... tired after the game.
4. We can use the abbreviations "CU" in ..... emails.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **in a/an + (ly صفه تنتهى بـ) + way** بطريقة ...

تستخدم لتحويل الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) إلى حال

- **friendly** (adj) ودود / in a **friendly** way (adv) بطريقة ودية
- **ugly** (adj) قبيح / in an **ugly** way (adv) بطريقة قبيحة

2 **love + inf. + ing/n./ to + inf.** يحب

- I love **taking** photos of nature.
- I love to **watch** the sunset every day.

3 **a + (اسم مفرد+رقم) + اسم مفرد يعد**

- We decided to do **a** 30-day photography **challenge** together.

الرقم والاسم المفرد (30-day) يعتبر صفة مركبة للاسم المفرد الأخير (challenge) لذا يتم وضع (a) لأنه مفرد يُعد.

4 **Have + صفة + اسم + ...** أتمنى لك قضاء ... .

- Have a great birthday.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 She sings ..... . All people like her voice.

a) lovely **b)** in a lovely

c) lovely way **d)** in a lovely way

2 We'll take a ..... break.

a) ten-minute **b)** ten-minutes

c) ten-minute's **d)** ten-minutes'

3 They love ..... chess.

a) play **b)** playing

c) to playing **d)** played

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

challenge تحدى	something that is difficult and tests your ability(1)
chatting دردشة	talking to someone in a friendly way, often online
communication التواصل	the act of talking or writing to share information(2) with others.
online forum منتدى على الإنترنت	website in which a group of people discuss(3) ideas online
photography التصوير	the art or practice(4) of taking pictures with a camera
website موقع إلكترونى	a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities

(1) القدرة
(2) معلومات
(3) يناقش
(4) ممارسة

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
difficult (adj) صعب	hard صعب
present (n) هدية	gift هدية

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
celebrate (v) يحتفل	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	celebration (n) احتفال
communicate (v) يتواصل			communication (n) تواصل

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
in-	تعطى عكس المعنى	formal (adj) رسمى	informal (adj) غير رسمى
mis-		understanding (n) التفاهم	misunderstanding (n) عدم التفاهم

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To get the noun from the verb "communicate", we add the suffix "……".
   a) -ation **b)** -tion **c)** -ion **d)** -cion
2. The antonym of "formal" is "……".
   a) public **b)** special **c)** impolite **d)** informal
3. My uncle bought me a nice present. The word "present" means "……".
   a) gift **b)** forum **c)** challenge **d)** activity

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 5: Literature

- Have you ever made a friend online? How?

Read and listen to the story and check your answer to Exercise 2. *SB page 24*

FRIENDS ONLINE

(1) تعليق (2) الطبيعة
(3) تحدى (4) محدد
(5) عديد (6) ذو معنى

Salma, a 15-year-old girl from Egypt, loved photography. She often shared her photos on a website for young photographers. One day, she got a comment[1] from Ashly, a girl of her age from Australia, who liked her photos.

They started chatting and found out they had a lot in common. They both loved taking pictures of nature[2].

Soon, they were talking every day, and decided to do a 30-day photography challenge[3] together. Each day, they had to take a photo on a specific[4] theme and share it. They enjoyed the challenge and became closer friends.

However, one day, " Ashly suddenly stopped answering Salma's messages. Salma felt worried. She sent several[5] messages, but there was no reply. Salma felt sad that their friendship might be over.

Salma couldn't focus on her schoolwork or her photography. After talking with her mother, Salma decided to send a message, letting Ashly know that she was there for her. She wrote, "Hi Ashly, I hope you're okay. If you need someone to talk to, I'm here for you".

A few more days passed, and finally, Ashly replied. She explained that she had been dealing with some difficult family news and needed some time offline. Salma was happy to hear from Ashly again. They talked about what had happened and made plans to continue their challenge.

Salma and Ashly now had a better understanding of the importance of communication and being there for each other. They knew that their friendship, though online, was real and meaningful[6].

Post-reading questions:

1 Where did the two girls meet online?

.....

2 What hobby do they share?

.....

Pre-reading question:

- What sport are you good at?

Read Mazen's post about Mido's birthday. *SB page 26*

Mazen
1 d •

Happy birthday to my fantastic (1) brother Mido! He's 15 today! He's a great brother because he's always there for me and our little sister when we need help. Thanks, bro! And of course, we all know he's a top student and also an amazing football player - 16 goals last season (2) for our school team! Well done Mido, I'm so proud (3) of you. Have a great birthday!

(1) رائع (2) موسم (3) فخور

18 comments

Like **Comment**

Post-reading questions:

1. Who is Mido?

.....

2. Why is Mazen writing the post?

.....

3. Why does Mazen think Mido is a great brother?

.....

4. What sport is Mido good at?

.....

5. How does Mazen feel about Mido?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rola likes to share stories ..... her friends.
   a) at **b)** with **c)** on **d)** for
2. We use ..... language with friends.
   a) careless **b)** impolite **c)** formal **d)** informal
3. Lobna likes to ..... activities with her friends.
   a) make **b)** do **c)** give **d)** get
4. I was excited to ..... my friend on his new job.
   a) chat **b)** test **c)** deal **d)** congratulate
5. I got a ..... for my birthday.
   a) present **b)** friendship **c)** website **d)** situation
6. Omar likes to have a new ..... . He likes working hard.
   a) nature **b)** challenge **c)** practice **d)** ability
7. Good ..... helps build strong friendships.
   a) situation **b)** forum **c)** website **d)** communication
8. Traveling gives you new ..... .
   a) tests **b)** events **c)** experiences **d)** experiments
9. ....., Maher. There are no mistakes in your homework.
   a) Good made **b)** Good done **c)** Well made **d)** Well done
10. Salwa felt ..... before her final exam. She couldn't sleep well.
    a) meaningful **b)** understanding **c)** amazed **d)** worried
11. Tamer had to ..... with a difficult problem.
    a) contact **b)** chat **c)** deal **d)** handle
12. Good ..... helps people understand each other better.
    a) art **b)** congratulation **c)** invitation **d)** communication
13. The school planned a ..... for the end of the year.
    a) situation **b)** communication **c)** celebration **d)** friendship
14. My ..... with Ali continued for many years.
    a) nature **b)** friendship **c)** practice **d)** experiences

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... is the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera.
   a) Pottery **b)** Photography **c)** Painting **d)** Chatting
2. Reading and listening to music are popular ..... . I like both of them.
   a) hobbies **b)** celebrations **c)** emojis **d)** tests
3. My teacher needs to ..... the students' abilities before starting the new term.
   a) deal **b)** test **c)** do **d)** make
4. One of my friends stopped ..... with me. I'm worried about him.
   a) feeling **b)** communicating
   c) replying **d)** understanding
5. My friend didn't reply ..... my messages.
   a) with **b)** from **c)** for **d)** to
6. My father is very good at ..... difficult situations.
   a) replying **b)** handling **c)** sharing **d)** feeling
7. I don't think online friendships can be as strong as ..... friendships.
   a) informal **b)** free **c)** face-to-face **d)** easy
8. The problem started because of a ..... .
   a) celebration **b)** misunderstanding
   c) success **d)** journey
9. We have a lot ..... common with each other. We have the same hobbies.
   a) in **b)** on **c)** at **d)** with
10. My little brother always tells me funny ..... .
    a) jokes **b)** abilities **c)** handles **d)** paintings
11. Their friendship was real and ..... . They always helped each other.
    a) anxious **b)** several **c)** worried **d)** meaningful
12. Summer is the season ..... travelling, swimming and having fun.
    a) in **b)** for **c)** at **d)** with
13. Please, give me a ..... time for the meeting.
    a) specific **b)** meaningful **c)** helpless **d)** relieved

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Congratulating someone

تهنئة شخص ما

- Congratulations!	تهانينا!
- Well done!	أحسنت!
- I'm so proud of you.	أنا فخور جدًا بك.
- What a great achievement!	يا له من إنجاز رائع!
- I'm so happy for you.	سعيد جدًا لأجلك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Mido is congratulating Omar on his birthday.

Mido : Hi, Omar. How are you?

Omar: (1)..... . Yesterday was a special day for me.

Mido : (2).....?

Omar: Because it was my birthday.

Mido : Wow! (3).....!

Omar: Thank you, Mido!

Mido : (4).....?

Omar: Yes, I had a great time with my family.

Mido : Did you get any presents?

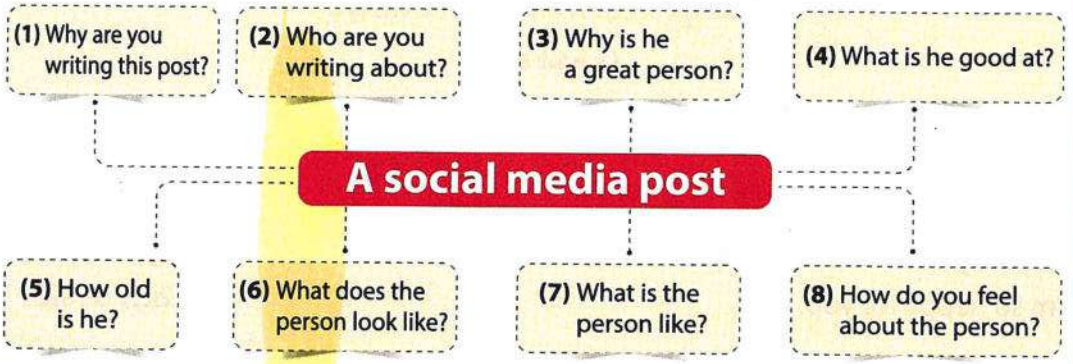
Omar: (5).....!

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing a social media post

كتابة منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى



Example

Today, I'm writing to wish you a very special happy birthday! 🎉 He is Mazen. He's an amazing friend who always makes everyone smile. Mazen is 13 years old today! He has curly brown hair and wears glasses. He's kind and funny, and he loves playing football. I feel proud to have a friend like Mazen. Happy birthday again, Mazen! 🎈🎉

0 comments

Like Comment

Check Point

Write a social media post to congratulate your friend, Ali on his wedding. Your name is Omar.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Writing tips

Always check your writing and make revisions if necessary.

دائمًا تحقق من كتابتك وقم بإجراء التعديلات إذا لزم الأمر.

1 Complete the following dialog:

Kady's birthday is today.

Mira : Happy birthday, Kady!

Kady : (1)..... you, Mira!

Mira : How do you (2)..... about it?

Kady : I feel very happy. It's a special day!

Mira : Did you have presents on your last birthday?

Kady : (3)....., I had a lot of presents.

Mira : (4)..... presents did you get?

Kady : I got a new book and some chocolates.

Mira : How old are you now?

Kady : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yara likes to ..... with her friends online.
   a) chat **b)** handle **c)** test **d)** celebrate
2. Most friends ..... through emails now.
   a) take **b)** make **c)** communicate **d)** reply
3. Tarek likes to draw pictures of ..... . He spends his time between trees.
   a) birthday **b)** nature **c)** internet **d)** situation
4. Celia enjoys ..... as a hobby. She likes taking pictures.
   a) celebration **b)** friendship **c)** invitation **d)** photography
5. I like to use funny ..... in my posts online.
   a) emojis **b)** challenges **c)** experiences **d)** forums
6. This ..... has lots of information. When you go online, use it.
   a) challenge **b)** situation **c)** website **d)** ability
7. Alaa needs more ..... to be good at music.
   a) communication **b)** practice **c)** photography **d)** friendship

8. The children are studying for ..... exams.
a) their **b)** its **c)** her **d)** his

9. ..... you carry this box for me, please?
a) Will **b)** Do **c)** Have **d)** Are

10. These toys are his. They are the ..... toys.
a) boy **b)** boys **c)** boys' **d)** boy's

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Can you ..... (coming) to my birthday party, Mazin?
2. These are my ..... (friends) cars.
3. My ..... (children) room is nice.
4. I must study for ..... (me) test.

4 Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. that – is – watch – **Whose**?

.....

2. jacket – father – to – **This** – belongs – my.

.....

3. did – messages – **Why** – Ashly – Salma's – answering – stop?

.....

5 Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Hady about your brother's birthday. Your name is Refaat.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali and Heba, when is ..... (his) tennis match?
2. Boys, listen and repeat after ..... (I).
3. **A:** Can Amr speak French? **B:** No, he ..... (can't) speak English.

General Exercises on Unit 2

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Whose birthday party is it?
   a) The writer's. **b)** Grandma's. **c)** Grandpa's. **d)** Father's.
2. When was it?
   a) Last month. **b)** Last Friday. **c)** Last week. **d)** Yesterday.
3. Where was it?
   a) At the club. **b)** At school. **c)** In the house. **d)** At home.
4. What did they do?
   a) Ate cakes. **b)** Had fun. **c)** Played chess. **d)** Watched TV.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Hady wants to go to the park.

Hady : Do you want to do something fun today?
Asmaa : (1)..... . What do you suggest?
Hady : (2).....?
Asmaa : That's a great idea. When should we go to the park?
Hady : (3)..... .
Asmaa : We could invite our friends, too.
Hady : (4).....?
Asmaa : We should invite Sarah and Ahmed.
Hady : Where should we meet them?
Asmaa : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

proud – sharing – my – meals – his

Spending time with my loved family is the best part of my day. We enjoy cooking (1)....., playing games, and watching movies. It's so much fun! We help each other and I'm (2)..... to have such a family. Our home is full of fun, hugs, and (3)..... stories. Family time is useful. I have fantastic moments with (4)..... amazing family!

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Samira,

I hope you're doing well! I wanted to **gather** and see if you're free this weekend. I thought it would be nice to make some plans together.

Would you like to have lunch on Saturday? We could try that new café downtown. Or, if you prefer, maybe we could go for a walk in the park on Sunday morning?

Let me know what works best for you, or if you have any other ideas! I'm free this week, so just let me know **your** ideas.

Looking forward to hearing from you soon!

Best,

Hany

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of Hany's email to Samira? .....
2. Name the two things Hany suggests for this weekend. .....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "**your**" refer to? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The verb "***gather***" means ..... .
   - **a)** have a phone call
   - **b)** meet up
   - **c)** send a message
   - **d)** share stories
5. Hany can go out ..... .
   - **a)** this morning
   - **b)** on Sunday
   - **c)** on Saturday
   - **d)** any day this week
6. Hany offered ..... plan(s).
   - **a)** one
   - **b)** two
   - **c)** three
   - **d)** no

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He finished his ..... early, so he could play outside.
   - **a)** hobby
   - **b)** present
   - **c)** ability
   - **d)** schoolwork
2. Don't ..... your personal information online.
   - **a)** get
   - **b)** share
   - **c)** take
   - **d)** make
3. I bought a blue shirt online, but it wasn't ..... good condition.
   - **a)** in
   - **b)** at
   - **c)** for
   - **d)** on
4. Ali needs to focus ..... his studies because he has exams next week.
   - **a)** for
   - **b)** in
   - **c)** at
   - **d)** on

5. People ..... their birthdays every year.
   a) celebrate **b)** sign **c)** fetch **d)** communicate
6. Dalia ..... some pictures of her wedding on her blog.
   a) typed **b)** fetched **c)** posted **d)** paid
7. We ..... skiing in the mountains every winter.
   a) fetch **b)** type **c)** go **d)** make
8. My brothers are very messy. They found ..... shoes in the kitchen.
   a) their **b)** his **c)** its **d)** her
9. This shop sells good-quality ..... clothes.
   a) children of **b)** children **c)** children's **d)** children'
10. What a beautiful bird! ..... colors are bright blue!
    a) Her **b)** Its **c)** Their **d)** His

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will you ..... (helping) me with my homework, Nada?
2. Susan is Mr. ..... (Kamal) daughter.
3. My sister is always tired. ..... (His) job is difficult.
4. Are those ..... (you) pens, Hani?

E Writing

7 Write an email of (80-90) words to congratulate your friend on passing his exams. Your name is Tarek and your friend's name is Omar.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Said's birthday is today.

Hatem : Happy birthday, Said!

Said : (1)..... , Hatem!

a) Wow **b)** No problem

c) Thank you so much **d)** Sorry, no.

Hatem : Did you have a good start to your birthday?

Said : (2)..... . My family surprised me with a nice cake!

a) Yes, I did **b)** No, I didn't **c)** No, I don't **d)** Yes, I do

Hatem : That sounds lovely! (3).....?

a) How were the presents **b)** Will you get any presents

c) Who gave you presents **d)** Did you get any presents

Said : Yes, I got many presents.

Hatem : (4).....?

a) Where are you **b)** How old are you today

c) When was it **d)** When are you

Said : I am 12 years old now.

Hatem : Can you help me carry all these bags?

Said : (5)..... .

a) Good idea **b)** Wow

c) Yes, of course **d)** Happy birthday

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. **A:** ..... (Who) computer is that? **B:** It's Taher's.

a) Who's **b)** Whose **c)** Which's **d)** How's

2. Do you know the new ..... (student) names?

a) students' **b)** student's **c)** students **d)** student'

3. The twins are using their ..... (father) computer.

a) fathers **b)** fathers' **c)** father's **d)** father'

4. Good morning, children. Please open ..... (they) books on page 24.

a) your **b)** their **c)** her **d)** his

5. When the children go swimming, they open ..... (you) eyes under water.

a) your **b)** their **c)** her **d)** his

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Module 1 Question Bank on Units 1&2

1 Complete the following dialog:

A) Hassan is asking Nancy about her last holiday.

Hassan : Where did you go for a holiday last year?
Nancy : (1)..... .
Hassan : Why did you choose New Alamein?
Nancy : (2)..... .
Hassan : How long did you stay there?
Nancy : (3)..... .
Hassan : (4).....?
Nancy : I went to New Alamein with my family.
Hassan : (5).....?
Nancy : We went there by bus.

B) Rana is asking Hadeer about her favorite sports star.

Rana : Who is your favorite sports star?
Hadeer : (1)..... .
Rana : What sport does Hana Goda play?
Hadeer : (2)..... .
Rana : (3).....?
Hadeer : She plays for Al Ahly.
Rana : (4).....?
Hadeer : Yes, she won a lot of prizes.
Rana : Do you want to be like her?
Hadeer : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The ..... helped the team improve their skills.
   a) member **b)** community **c)** coach **d)** adult
2. Did you ..... the new painting on the wall?
   a) mention **b)** notice **c)** kick **d)** join
3. Dad ..... the broken toy, so I could play with it again.
   a) presented **b)** found out **c)** explained **d)** repaired
4. The ..... was dark and full of dead bodies.
   a) catacomb **b)** statue **c)** obelisk **d)** religion
5. Rana has read ..... books this summer. She reads many books.
   a) little **b)** several **c)** few **d)** most

6. Amany wore a gold ..... round her neck.
   a) bracelet **b)** necklace **c)** network **d)** outfit
7. Ghada is going to ..... married to Mr Adam next month.
   a) give **b)** make **c)** do **d)** get
8. My mom asked me to ..... the sugar from the kitchen.
   a) buzz **b)** fetch **c)** answer **d)** do
9. The birds ..... in the trees yesterday.
   a) sing **b)** sang **c)** sings **d)** singing
10. ..... you finish your project last night?
   a) Will **b)** Do **c)** Did **d)** Were
11. He ..... went to the cinema on Mondays. He had lots of work.
   a) usually **b)** often **c)** always **d)** never
12. Will you ..... me to school, dad?
   a) drove **b)** drives **c)** driving **d)** drive
13. The ..... football team did well yesterday.
   a) school **b)** schools **c)** school's **d)** schools'
14. ..... clothes are usually more expensive than men's.
   a) Women' **b)** Women's **c)** Women **d)** Womens'
15. Maya goes to school with ..... brother.
   a) her **b)** his **c)** its **d)** she
16. We have a dog. ..... name is Pancho.
   a) It **b)** It is **c)** It's **d)** Its

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They visited their relatives ..... (next) weekend.
2. Mazin didn't ..... (played) basketball after school yesterday.
3. I ..... (always) went shopping. I don't like shopping.
4. She ..... (take/often) photographs of nature in the past.
5. Waleed's ..... (twins') name is Mazin.
6. Will you ..... (helping) me with cooking, Samar?
7. Jody lost ..... (she) book.
8. Was ..... (you) grammar book expensive?
9. ..... (Who) bag is this?
10. ..... (You/can) give me your book, Ayman?

MODULE 2

مقرر شهر
نوفمبر

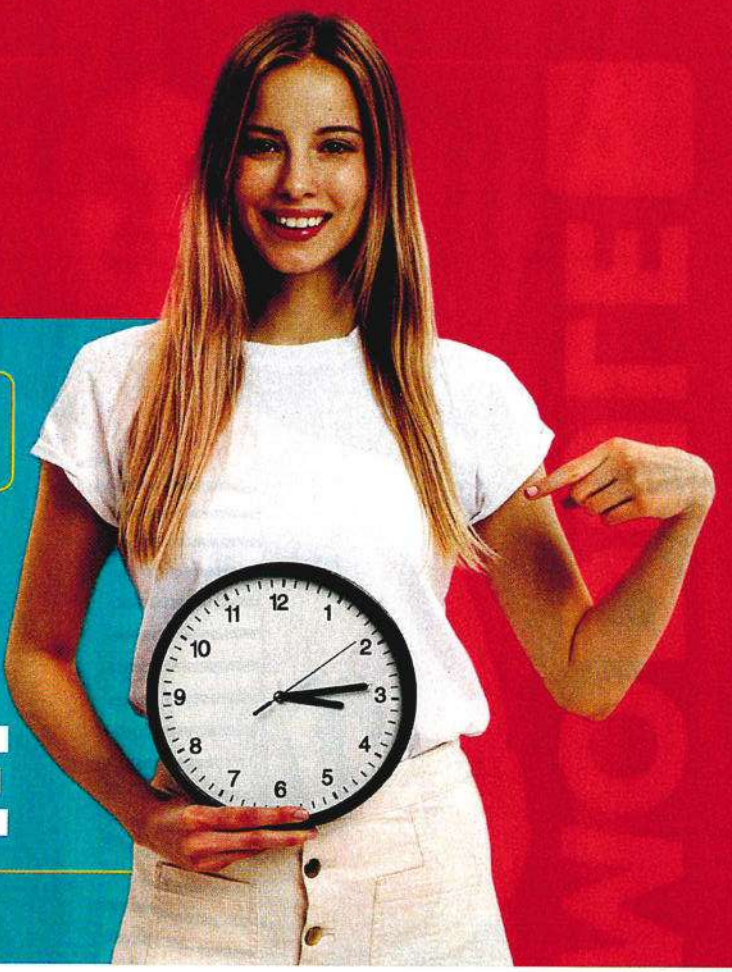
Unit 3 My time

Unit 4 Digital life

Module 2 Question Bank

Unit 3

MY TIME



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	An email about ways to spend your free time; A letter to a problem page; *An Unusual Hobby: a short story*
Listening	A dialog about free-time activities
Speaking	Talking about ways to spend your free time
Writing	A forum post about finding friends with similar interests
Language	The present continuous tense; Subject and object pronouns

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 28-31

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

"To do" list (n)	قائمة المهام	journal (n)	مجلة/ دفتر اليومية
captain (n)	قائد الفريق/قبطان	organize (d) (v)	ينظم
chef (n)	الشيف/رئيس الطهاة	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام
community (n)	مجتمع	skill (n)	مهارة
cook (n)	طاهٍ	sports field (n)	ملعب رياضى
describe (d) (v)	يصف	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
evening classes (n)	دروس مسائية	tennis court (n)	ملعب تنس
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	thoughts (n)	أفكار
free time (n)	وقت فراغ		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

call (ed) (v)	يتصل	restaurant (n)	مطعم
green spaces (n)	مساحات خضراء	table tennis (n)	تنس الطاولة
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	type (n)	نوع
lovely (adj)	جميل	wait (ed) (v)	ينتظر
minute (n)	دقيقة	training (n)	تدريب

Check Point

Choose and complete: imagine – cook – wait – organize

1. The ..... made tasty soup. I liked it very much.
2. It's hard to ..... the world without electricity.
3. They asked an expert خبير to ..... their wedding party.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	activities	يؤدى أنشطة	go/come	for a walk	يذهب/يأتى للمشى
	sports	يمارس رياضة	take	courses	يأخذ دورات
get	ready for	يستعد لـ		regular exercises	يمارس تمارين رياضية منتظمة
make	food	يعد طعام	tidy	the house	يرتب المنزل
learn	new skills	يتعلم مهارات جديدة	have	a lesson	يأخذ حصة

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at a sports day	فى يوم رياضى	on the tennis court	فى ملعب التنس
focus on	يركز على	on the weekend	فى العطلة الأسبوعية
in writing	كتابيًا	thanks for	شكرًا على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
sleep ينام	slept	slept	spend يقضى	spent	spent

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
different مختلف	same مشابه/ مثل	regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم
healthy صحى	unhealthy غير صحى	start/begin يبدأ	end/finish ينهى
hungry جوعان/جائع	full ممتلئ		

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – to – makes – healthy

1. It's ..... to eat fruits and vegetables.
2. Thanks ..... helping me with my homework.
3. My mother ..... the best food in the world.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **need to + inf.** يحتاج إلى أن

- I write a "To do" list of things I need to **do.**

2 **spend + وقت + (inf. + ing.)** يقضى

- I spend my free time **reading** books.

3 **It's time for + مفعول + to + inf.** حان الوقت لـ

- It's time for the game **to start.**

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة		Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها	
free time (n)	وقت فراغ	spare time	وقت فراغ

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة		The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
ir-	تعطى عكس المعنى	regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
un-		healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Children spend hours ..... games with their friends.
   a) play b) to play c) playing d) to playing
2. We need ..... a lot of things because we have a lot of things
   a) to buy b) to buying c) buy d) bought
3. It's time for our team ..... the game.
   a) to winning b) won c) win d) to win
4. To get the ..... of healthy, we add the prefix "un".
   a) synonym b) suffix c) meaning d) antonym

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1: How I spend my time

Pre-reading question: - What do you like doing at your free time?

Read and listen to the email. How does Mahmoud start and end his day? *SB page 29*

From : Mahmoud **To :** Asser **Subject :** RE: Hello new friend

Hi Asser,

Thanks for your email! You asked me about my free time(1).

This is an important year at school and I don't have much free time, so I like to use it well!

In the mornings before school, I write a "To do" list(2) of things I need to do. It really helps me to organize(3) my day. After school, I do different things. It's important to take regular(4) exercise, so on Tuesdays and Thursdays I play football with my friends. I like playing with them! They help me a lot. I also like to learn new skills(5), so I go to evening classes. At the moment, I am learning first aid(6)! I want to be able to help people.

(1) وقت الفراغ (2) قائمة المهام
(3) ينظم (4) منتظم
(5) مهارات (6) الإسعافات الأولية
(7) الطبيعة (8) المجتمع
(9) وصفات طعام (10) يومية

On the weekends, I spend time with my family. We like to go for walks in nature(7). We don't take our phones, so we can enjoy what is around us. There are some really lovely parks and gardens in this city. Sometimes, my brother and I help in the community(8). He is a chef, and we help to make food for hungry people at his restaurant. I love to learn recipes(9) from him. My mom is a good cook, too. I think my brother learned a lot from her!

Every night, before I go to bed, I write a journal(10). It helps me to think about what I have done and focus on good things. I think it helps me to sleep better, too.

Tell me how you spend your free time. Maybe I can get some good ideas!

Bye!

Mahmoud

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of Mahmoud and his brother?

.....

Lesson 2: What are you doing?

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Where would you and your best friend like to go?

Listen to the dialog. Which of the places in exercise 1 are they going?

SB page 30

(1) ملعب التنس

(2) تدريب

Maleeka Hi, Mazen.

Mazen Hi, Maleeka. What are you doing?

Maleeka I'm getting ready to go out. Do you still want to go to the park?

Mazen Actually, let's go to the tennis court(1).

Maleeka OK, good idea.

(Maleeka searching noisily for something)

Mazen What are you doing now?

Maleeka I'm looking for something. I must find my umbrella before I leave the house.

Mazen Why? It isn't raining at the moment.

Maleeka It isn't for the rain. It's for the sun!

Mazen Oh, OK. Well, see you soon. Bye!

(phone ringtone)

Samer Hi, Mazen.

Mazen Hi, Samer. Do you want to come to the tennis court with me and Maleeka?

Samer Thanks, but I can't. I'm doing my math project. Have fun!

Mazen Thanks! Bye! [pause]

Mazen & Maleeka Hi, Adam!

Adam Hi, Mazen. Hi, Maleeka. What are you doing?

Maleeka We're going to the tennis court. What are you doing?

Adam I've just finished training(2) with my football team. Now, I'm meeting a friend at the cinema.

Maleeka Nice! Who are you meeting?

Adam I'm meeting Samer.

Mazen & Maleeka What? He said he had to do his math project!

Adam Yes, but he finished early, and now he can come!

Post-listening questions:

1 What is Maleeka doing when Mazin calls?

.....

2 Why can't Samer join Mazin and Maleeka?

.....

3 What has Adam just finished doing?

.....

Complete the text with the present continuous form of the verb in brackets: *SB page 31*

Good afternoon! As you know, our students **aren't having** lessons this afternoon because it's the school sports day!

At the moment, some students **are running** and their parents **are watching** them. That's great!

Some students **are playing** tennis on the tennis court behind me. It looks like an interesting game. The football teams **are getting ready** for their match. Wait a minute! One student **is walking** onto the football field?. He's the captain of one of the teams! Now both of the teams are there. It's time for the game to start!

Comprehension Skills

"Giving a title to the passage" «إعطاء عنوان للفقرة»

1. Focus on the main idea — ركز على الفكرة الرئيسية (يجب أن يعطى العنوان تلميحًا عليها)
2. Use descriptive words — استخدام كلمات وصفية تصف الموضوع بشكل جيد.
3. Make it interesting — اجعله شيقًا ليجذب القارئ.
4. Keep it short and simple. — اجعله قصيرًا وبسيطًا.

Can you think of a title for the previous passage?

School Sports Day / A Fun Day

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I like to read stories in my ..... time.
   a) busy b) free c) full d) easy
2. Eyad is learning ..... at school to save lots of lives.
   a) first aid b) to do lists c) thoughts d) restaurants
3. We have practice on the ..... every day because we have a match next month.
   a) recipe b) evening class c) sports field d) pool
4. The ..... decides the game strategy and tells each player their role on the field.
   a) skill b) captain c) journal d) list
5. We had a meeting to solve our ..... problems. We should live in a better place.
   a) community b) journal c) court d) restaurant
6. Hana found a new ..... for pizza. It was delicious.
   a) list b) minute c) space d) recipe
7. Learning new ..... can help you get a good job.
   a) skills b) chefs c) chefs d) scales
8. Eman writes a ..... every night before she goes to bed.
   a) journal b) field c) pool d) menu
9. Ramy ..... courses in computer science to find a good job.
   a) makes b) takes c) goes d) writes
10. He plays tennis ..... the tennis court.
    a) with b) of c) on d) for
11. They take ..... breaks during work. They rest every three hours.
    a) regular b) healthy c) hungry d) free
12. Children felt ..... after playing outside for long hours.
    a) full b) hungry c) free d) easy
13. The ..... made a delicious meal.
    a) coach b) recipe c) captain d) cook
14. Yassin talked to us about his trip and ..... every minute.
    a) got b) waited c) described d) focused

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I like to ..... time with my family.
   a) learn b) write c) spend d) send
2. Old people like to walk in ..... to enjoy green views.
   a) space b) nature c) a court d) a journal
3. Nora usually describes her thoughts ..... writing.
   a) on b) for c) to d) in
4. Kareem doesn't have much ..... to do his hobbies.
   a) free time b) space c) food d) air
5. We write a "To do" ..... of things we need to do.
   a) court b) field c) list d) pool
6. Talia goes to evening ..... to learn new skills.
   a) fields b) pools c) courts d) classes
7. I like to ..... for walks in nature to spend time with my family.
   a) go b) do c) take d) get
8. My uncle is a ..... . He makes tasty food at his restaurant.
   a) farmer b) chemist c) chef d) captain
9. Dina likes to go to the tennis ..... to practice her favorite sport.
   a) recipe b) table c) pool d) court
10. My sister and I ..... eight lessons a day.
    a) have b) do c) make d) spend
11. The children do many activities ..... a sports day at school.
    a) by b) with c) at d) for
12. The football teams are trying to ..... ready for their next match.
    a) do b) get c) make d) have
13. I ..... for my friend for long, but he didn't come.
    a) went b) imagined c) described d) waited
14. Anas likes to ..... his desk before starting work.
    a) organize b) wait c) focus d) imagine

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

e.g. • I am reading a story **now**. • She is writing a letter **at the moment**.
• We are going to the tennis courts **now**.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous tense to talk about things that are happening or not happening now.

- نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث/لا تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

e.g. • I'm doing my math project. **e.g.** • I'm not watching TV now.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

I	am	
He / She / It	is	inf. مصدر الفعل + ing
اسم مفرد		
You / We / They	are	
اسم جمع		

e.g. • I am **cooking** dinner for my family.

e.g. • She is **reading** a book in her room.
• My friend is **watching** TV.

e.g. • We're **going** to the tennis court.
• The kids are **having** lunch.

Negative النفي

I	am not	
He / She / It	is not (isn't)	inf. مصدر الفعل + ing
اسم مفرد		
You / We / They	are not (aren't)	
اسم جمع		

e.g. • I'm not **eating** at the moment.

e.g. • Ali is not **studying** right now.
• The cat isn't **sleeping**.

e.g. • You aren't **traveling** abroad this summer.
• My brothers are not **going** to the cinema.

لاحظ

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing): (take - taking) - (come - coming)
- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، غالبًا ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing):
(put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming) - (get - getting)
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ونضيف (y) قبل إضافة الـ (ing): (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

Question السؤال

1 Yes/ No question:
السؤال بمعنى هل

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل ⟶ inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?

e.g.

A: Am I doing well? - B: Yes, you are. / No, you aren't.
A: Is Heba reading a book right now? - B: Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.
A: Are the boys playing football in the park? - B: Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

2 Wh- question:
السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q- Word أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل ⟶ inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?

e.g.

A: How am I doing in my project? - B: You are doing well.
A: Where is Sara going this weekend? - B: She is going to the tennis court.
A: What are you doing right now? - B: I am studying my lessons.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

ويمكن أن يأتى المضارع المستمر مع كلمات معينة وتعنى أن الشىء يحدث الآن لفترة مؤقتة من الوقت:
- احترس Watch/Look out! - استمع Listen! - انظر Look! - مازال still - الآن now/right now
- اليوم today - فى الحاضر at the present - فى هذه اللحظة at the moment
هذه الأيام nowadays/these days

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 What is Gamal ..... (do) at the moment?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (doing) لأن السؤال فى زمن المضارع المستمر لوجود (at the moment).

2 They ..... (don't) going to Alexandria today.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (aren't) لأن الفعل (go) مضاف إليه (ing).

3 I can't go out. I ..... (do) my homework now.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (am doing) لأنه لا يستطيع الخروج الآن، أى زمن فعل الواجب مضارع مستمر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My father ..... a book right now.
   a) is reading b) reading c) reads d) read
2. Look! She ..... in the living room!
   a) eat b) ate c) is eating d) eats
3. What ..... the boys doing outside?
   a) are b) is c) am d) was
4. **A:** Where is my cat? **B:** It's ..... under the tree.
   a) slept b) sleeping c) sleeps d) not sleep
5. My family and I ..... dinner at the moment. We are watching TV.
   a) didn't cook b) cooked c) are cooking d) aren't cooking
6. I can't watch TV with you. I ..... a letter to my friend.
   a) write b) was writing c) am writing d) wrote
7. Are the birds ..... in trees at present?
   a) singing b) sing c) sang d) sings
8. The students ..... a beautiful picture on the wall. I see them over there.
   a) painting b) are painting c) painted d) were painting
9. **A:** I can't see Ola. **B:** She ..... for her exams in the library.
   a) studies b) studied c) studying d) is studying
10. Why ..... the children laughing?
    a) did b) will c) are d) do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It ..... (rain) heavily outside right now.
2. The teacher is ..... (explain) a difficult math lesson to his students.
3. The farmers are watering the field now. They ..... (not/plant) it.
4. Look! Maya ..... (swim) in the pool with her sister.
5. My father ..... (are) still repairing the car in the garage.
6. Don't make noise. The baby ..... (sleeping).

Time to Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rola and Jana ..... a movie in the cinema. They are enjoying it.
   a) are watching b) watching c) watch d) watched
2. Are your brothers ..... in the pool?
   a) swim b) swims c) swam d) swimming
3. **A:** What ..... doing? **B:** I am listening to music on my headphones.
   a) you are b) are you c) were you d) you were
4. We ..... for walks in the park. We're very busy.
   a) going b) not going c) aren't going d) are going
5. Listen! Mahdy ..... on the phone with his mom.
   a) is talking b) talks c) talked d) was talking
6. Magda and Sameera ..... the house at the moment.
   a) clean b) is cleaning c) are cleaning d) cleaned
7. ..... waiting for the bus at the bus stop.
   a) Are we b) We are c) We will d) Will we
8. The chef ..... a special dish for us right now.
   a) makes b) made c) making d) is making
9. We ..... on the project these days.
   a) works b) worked c) are working d) working
10. Yasmeen isn't here. She ..... photographs of the sunset.
    a) is taking b) takes c) took d) taking

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The two teams ..... (playing) football on the field right now.
2. Is he ..... (practices) the guitar in his room?
3. **A:** Where is your mom? **B:** She ..... (shop) at the moment.
4. Ali and I ..... (is) riding our bikes. We are flying our kites.
5. Hassan ..... (was) studying hard for his exams now. He wants to get high marks.
6. We ..... (climb) up the mountain at present.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Talking about ways to spend your free time

التحدث عن طرق قضاء وقت الفراغ

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

How do you spend your free time? كيف تقضى وقت فراغك؟

I spend my free time with my friends playing table tennis.
أقضى وقت فراغى فى لعب تنس الطاولة مع أصدقائى.

What activities do you do at your free time?
ما الأنشطة التى تقوم بها فى وقت فراغك؟

I take regular exercise and learn new skills.
أقوم بأداء تدريبات منتظمة و أتعلم مهارات جديدة.

Do you think you use your free time well? Why or why not?
هل تعتقد بأنك تستخدم وقت فراغك بطريقة جيدة؟ لماذا/لم لا؟

Yes, I think so because I enjoy very much and do useful things. نعم، أعتقد ذلك لأنى أستمتع كثيرًا وأفعل أشياء مفيدة.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Doaa is asking Noha about her free time activities.

Doaa : Hello, Noha. How are you?
Noha : (1)..... .
Doaa : (2).....?
Noha : I spend my free time using AI to write stories.
Doaa : Great! (3).....?
Noha : Yes, I have other hobbies. I usually help at my community.
Doaa : What do you do to help your community?
Noha : (4)..... .
Doaa : Do you think you use your free time well?
Noha : (5)..... .

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about ways to spend your free time.

كيفية الكتابة عن طرق تقضي بها وقت فراغك.

Example

"My free time"

It is important to use your free time well. You can do many activities. Indoors, you can read books, watch TV, or draw pictures. Outdoors, you can go for a walk, ride a bike, or play sports. I enjoy drawing and playing football. I draw every evening after dinner. I play football with my friends on Saturday mornings. Spending time with family is also fun. We like to cook meals together and watch TV. Sometimes, we go to the park for a picnic. It is nice to relax and enjoy time with family and friends.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about your free time activities.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Writing tips

Use capital letters for the beginning of a sentence, names, cities, countries, and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 3 Lessons (1 & 2)

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which thing can organize the writer's day?
   a) An evening class. b) A "To do" list. c) A first aid. d) A skill.
2. Where does the writer go to learn new skills?
   a) Evening classes. b) A sports field.
   c) A tennis court. d) A new school.
3. What does the writer do after school?
   a) Sleeps. b) Writes a list.
   c) Takes exercise. d) Goes to the park.
4. Which sport does the writer do?
   a) Football. b) Tennis. c) Table tennis. d) Chess.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Salah and Reda are talking about how to spend their free time.

Salah : Hi Reda, do you have free time today?
Reda : (1)..... .
Salah : How do you spend your free time?
Reda : I like to read books. What about you?
Salah : (2)..... . Do you play video games?
Reda : Sometimes. (3).....?
Salah : I also like to ride my bike in the park.
Reda : (4).....?
Salah : I go to the park every weekend.
Reda : (5)..... .

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Spending – field – activities – farm – go

There are many ways to spend free time. Some people go to a sports (1)..... to do sports. Other people like to (2)..... for a walk in nature. (3)..... time with family and friends is important, too. Helping in the community is important. There are many (4)..... to enjoy in our free time!

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The hotel has a large swimming ..... to help guests enjoy their time.
   a) captain b) court c) field d) pool
2. Yousef wrote down his ..... in a notebook.
   a) thoughts b) spaces c) communities d) sites

3. Mostafa and his sister are having dinner at a nice ..... .
   a) community b) restaurant c) journal d) court
4. Basma gets ready ..... school in the morning.
   a) at b) on c) for d) to
5. Eating fruits and vegetables is ..... .
   a) impolite b) polite c) unhealthy d) healthy
6. Manar always ..... the house when she comes from school. She's a good girl.
   a) tidies b) shows c) paints d) damages
7. Samir ..... a lesson in science yesterday.
   a) focused b) made c) had d) went
8. My grandparents ..... watering the plants in the garden.
   a) am b) was c) is d) are
9. They are in the big hall, ... their son's birthday.
   a) celebrating b) celebrates c) celebrated d) celebrate
10. I'm ..... chess with my grandfather. I want to focus.
   a) playing b) played c) plays d) play

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Listen! The students ..... (present) their projects in class.
2. I ..... (is) helping my neighbor with his garden.
3. We ..... (not/ climb) the mountains. We are walking through the forest enjoying nature.
4. What are the children ..... (do) now?

6 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Your free time"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The children are playing outside and ..... (laugh) a lot.
2. He always played football, but now he ..... (play) tennis.
3. Adel asks Ahmed about where ..... (is/ he) going now.

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 32-35

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bazaar (n)	بازار/سوق	lemonade (n)	عصير الليمون
bead (n)	حبة خرز	letter (n)	خطاب
calm (adj)	هادئ	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
decorate (d) (v)	يزين/يزخرف	relaxed (adj)	مسترخ/مستريح
expert (n)	خبير	school principal (n)	مدير مدرسة
extra (adj)	إضافى	stall (n)	كشك
homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
ingredients (n)	مكونات/مقادير	string (n)	خيط
jewelry (n)	مجوهرات	surprised (adj)	مندهش

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

break (n)	استراحة/فاصل	discussion (n)	مناقشة
cupcakes (n)	كب كيك	text (n)	نص
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	vote (d) (v)	يصوت

Check Point

Choose and complete: vote – discuss – decorate – relax

1. After hard work, I'd like to ..... .
2. We will ..... on the new class leader next week.
3. They helped ..... the classroom with colorful drawings.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

after-school classes	حصص ما بعد المدرسة	present > an idea to	يقدم فكرة لـ
ask for > help/advice	يطلب مساعدة/نصيحة	take > turns	يتبادل الأدوار
do > well	يؤدى جيدًا	there you go	ها أنت ذا/تفضل
make > a plan for	يعد خطة لـ	work > hard	يعمل بجد

Prepositions — حروف الجر

agree/disagree with	يوافق/لا يوافق مع	on a stall	فى كشك
at breaktime	فى وقت الاستراحة	worried about	قلق على
exercises for	تدريبات لـ	go out	يخرج

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk	think	يعتقد	thought	thought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold	understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق
clear	واضح	unclear	غير واضح
cool	رائع	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدا

Check Point

Choose and complete: disagrees – at – for – sold – took

1. The children ..... turns riding the new bike.
2. Students love to play ..... breaktime.
3. Adel doesn't like my opinion, he ..... with me.
4. I ..... some of my old toys at the school bazaar.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

take + وقت + to + inf. — يستغرق

- They take a long time **to make** cupcakes.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
almost (adv)	تقريبًا	nearly	تقريبًا
extra (adj)	إضافى	more	أكثر

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
discuss (v)	يناقش	-ion		تحويل الفعل لاسم		discussion (n)	مناقشة
relax (v)	يسترخى	-ed		تحويل الفعل لصفة		relaxed (adj)	مسترخٍ/مستريح

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3: Our school bazaar

Pre-reading question:

- Do you like homemade drinks? Why/Why not?

Read and listen to the dialog. Check what Salma and Sahar decide to sell on their stall at the school bazaar. *SB page 32*

Salma Hi, Sahar!

Sahar Hi, Salma. What are you drinking?

Salma Homemade(1) lemonade. My friend Shorouk and her brother are selling it from their stall(2) at the bazaar.

Sahar That's a good idea, isn't it?

Salma Yes, I agree. The weather is so hot.

Sahar I'd love a glass of cool lemonade right now!

Salma Well, why don't you buy some?

Sahar I don't think so. Our break(3) is almost over.

Salma OK. What's that you're making?

Sahar It's jewelry(4). Look, I put these beads(5) onto some string(6) and there you go – a bracelet(7)!

Salma That's cool. You could sell them at the next school bazaar.

Sahar But they take a long time to make.

Salma That's true. Why don't we sell some of our old toys?

Sahar I'm not sure about that. It would be nice to make something. I know, how about cupcakes? Everyone loves cupcakes!

Salma Great, let's find the ingredients(8)... .

(1) صناعة منزلية
(2) كشك
(3) فسحة
(4) مجوهرات
(5) خرز
(6) خيط
(7) أسورة
(8) مكونات

Post-reading questions:

1. Who is selling lemonade at the school bazaar? .....
2. Why do Salma and Sahar think selling lemonade is a good idea? .....
3. What is Sahar using to make jewelry? .....

Pre-reading question:

- Who helps you with your problems?

Read and listen to the letter. Why is Rasha writing to Jana? *SB page 34*

"Ask Jana": Share your problems with Jana

Dear Jana,

I'm writing to you about my best friend Fareeda. She's a good friend and a kind(1) person. She works hard at school. My friends and I are really worried about her. She studies all the time and she is very stressed(2). Her parents work hard, and **they** want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy. She doesn't go out at breaktime(3) and she always asks our teacher for extra(4) homework.

Last week, she asked him to give her exercises for the weekend. He was surprised(5)! We want her to spend her free time with us to relax(6). Is it a good idea to ask her to play sports with us? It's fun! Or maybe we can all join a club to learn a new skill? She is good at it!
What do you think?

Rasha, 12

(1) عطوف
(2) مضغوط
(3) وقت الفسحة
(4) إضافى
(5) مندهش
(6) يسترخى

Post-reading question:

- Why is Fareeda very stressed?.....

Comprehension Skills

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

- Her parents work hard, and **they** want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy.
- What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to?

How to answer this question كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال

أولًا: عليك أن تعرف إلى ماذا تشير الضمائر:

Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

الضمائر عادة تشير لأقرب اسم يسبقها.

ثانيًا: عليك قراءة الجملة التى تسبق الضمير جيدًا وتحديد الاسم التى تشير إليه، وباتباع الخطوات نستنتج أن (they) فى الجملة السابقة تشير إلى: Her parents.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our school ..... is very friendly and helpful.
   a) discussion b) principal c) stall d) bazaar
2. Eman felt ..... when she took a shower.
   a) relaxed b) stressed c) worried d) sad
3. My mother always uses healthy ..... when she cooks our food.
   a) beads b) phrases c) ideas d) ingredients
4. The kite flew high in the sky, held by a long ..... .
   a) string b) book c) shoe d) rock
5. This recipe ..... sugar, flour, and eggs.
   a) includes b) decorates c) relaxes d) votes
6. They always ..... well in group projects.
   a) get b) make c) take d) do
7. Aliaa joined ..... classes to improve her math skills.
   a) homemade b) after-school c) stressed d) surprised
8. Everyone will ..... new ideas to the team at the next meeting.
   a) think b) do c) take d) present
9. I agree ..... you. It's a great idea.
   a) with b) for c) by d) to
10. The cook made ..... food because more guests arrived.
    a) warm b) clear c) surprised d) extra
11. We ..... the room with balloons for the party.
    a) decorated b) discussed c) included d) relaxed
12. Alaa bought beautiful homemade things at the nearby ..... .
    a) bead b) string c) bazaar d) principal
13. Soliman is a/an ..... in computer programming.
    a) idea b) expert c) person d) stall

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dad likes to drink ..... juice because it's healthy.
   a) surprised b) relaxed c) stressed d) homemade
2. I'd love a glass ..... water. I'm thirsty.
   a) at b) of c) on d) onto
3. Students eat and play during the ..... .
   a) brake b) bazaar c) break d) stall
4. To make a bracelet, put some ..... onto a long string.
   a) beads b) stalls c) ingredients d) ideas
5. Women like to wear expensive ..... .
   a) weather b) cupcakes c) lemonade d) jewelry
6. Read the ..... carefully and answer the questions.
   a) break b) bead c) text d) stall
7. My friends and I are worried ..... exams.
   a) for b) about c) at d) on
8. Students feel ..... when they study all the time.
   a) surprised b) relaxed c) stressed d) homemade
9. My brother doesn't ..... . He likes to stay at home.
   a) go for b) vote c) ask for d) go out
10. Our teacher helps us make a plan ..... the next weekend.
    a) for b) at c) to d) on
11. My friend was ..... when we organized a party for him. He didn't know about it at all.
    a) stressed b) surprised c) relaxed d) extra
12. We have a ..... about where to go next summer holiday.
    a) discussion b) break c) stall d) bead
13. I love drinking ..... on a hot summer day.
    a) lemonade b) beads c) cupcakes d) texts

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Subject & Object pronouns — ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول

A) Subject pronouns: (I - We - You - He - She - It - They) ضمائر الفاعل

ضمائر الفاعل: تعود على من قام بالفعل وتأتى قبل الفعل أى فى بداية الجملة.

e.g. Ali and Heba are good students. They always help the teacher at school.

B) Object pronouns: (me - us - you - him - her - it - them) ضمائر المفعول

ضمائر المفعول: تعود على من وقع عليه الفعل وتأتى بعد الفعل أو حرف جر أى فى وسط أو آخر الجملة.

e.g. This is Ali's ball. Please give it **to** him.

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (تأتى فى بداية الجملة)	
I	- I **love** my teachers.
You	- **Ali**, come here. You **make** noise.
He	- **Ali** is my friend. He **helps** me.
She	- **Heba** is kind. She helps me.
It	- I have **a cat**. It **is** very cute.
We	- **Ali** and **I** are friends. We **help** each other.
You	- You have a house.
They	- **Ola and Sara** are kind. They **like** me.

Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول (تأتى بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر فى وسط أو نهاية الجملة)	
me	- My teachers **love** me.
you	- I'm talking **to** you.
him	- **Ali** is my friend. I **like** him.
her	- **Heba** is kind. I **like** her.
it	- I have **a cat**. I like to **feed** it.
us	- The teachers at **our** school **help** us.
you	- This house belongs **to** you.
them	- I have **two cats**. I **like** them.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Kareem's father bought ..... (he) a pair of shoes.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (him) لأن بعد الفعل (bought) نضع ضمير مفعول يعود على الاسم (Kareem) وهو مفرد مذكر.

2 This is my friend Nelly. ..... (Him) lives next door.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (She) لأنها بداية جملة يتبعها الفعل فنضع ضمير فاعل للمفرد المؤنث حيث تمت الإشارة إليه فى الجملة السابقة.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My dad and I love chocolate. ..... love it very much.
   a) Them b) Their c) They d) We
2. I don't like this music. ..... is boring.
   a) It b) They c) He d) Its
3. Mothers love their children. ..... cook healthy meals for them.
   a) He b) I c) She d) They
4. What time can I visit .....?
   a) he b) she c) his d) him
5. Do ..... like my new glasses?
   a) you b) your c) his d) her
6. Tamer loves his dogs. He plays with ..... in the garden every day.
   a) it b) them c) him d) her
7. Please, call ..... soon. I am very worried.
   a) I b) my c) me d) it
8. I don't have my glasses. I lost ..... yesterday.
   a) it b) him c) you d) them
9. ..... need help. Can you help us?
   a) They b) He c) You d) We
10. Why are you looking at .....?
    a) she b) her c) I d) my

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We are going for a walk. Come with ..... (we).
2. I like your shoes. Where did you get ..... (they)?
3. Do you know me? ..... (Me) am your new neighbour.
4. How much is that dress? I like ..... (them) very much.
5. Is that present for ..... (I)?
6. ..... (Them) are your cousins.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Presenting and responding to an idea تقديم فكرة والرد عليها

A) Presenting an idea

- **Why don't we** go to the park? لما لا نذهب للحديقة؟
- **You could** read a story to help you sleep. يمكنك أن تقرأ قصة لتساعدك على النوم.
- **It would be nice to** learn a new skill in your free time.
سيكون من اللطيف أن تتعلم مهارة جديدة فى وقت فراغك.
- **Let's** go to the bazaar. هيا بنا نذهب للبازار.
- **Is it a good idea to** take a course in the summer vacation?
هل من الجيد أن تأخذ كورس فى الأجازة الصيفية؟
- **Maybe we can** watch the new movie.
ربما يمكننا مشاهدة الفيلم الجديد.
- **I think she could** join a club to learn a new skill.
أعتقد انه يمكنها الانضمام لنادي لتعلم مهارة جديدة.

B) Responding to an idea

Agreeing الاتفاق		Disagreeing عدم الاتفاق	
- Yes, I agree.	نعم، أتفق.	- I don't agree.	أنا لا أتفق.
- That's a good idea.	إنها فكرة جيدة.	- I disagree.	أنا غير موافق.
- OK.	حسنًا.	- I don't think so.	لا أعتقد ذلك.
- That's true.	هذا حقيقى.	- I'm not sure about that.	لست متأكدًا بخصوص ذلك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Amany suggests starting a book club and Renad agrees.

Amany : Hi Renad! I have an idea.
Renad : Hi Amany! (1).....?
Amany : I think we could start a book club.
Renad : (2)..... . How often can we meet?
Amany : We can meet once a week.
Renad : Great! (3).....?
Amany : We can read science books.
Renad : I like that. When can we start?
Amany : (4)..... . Are you free on Saturday?
Renad : (5)..... . Let's do it!

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing an email to ask for advice/help

كيفية كتابة إيميل لطلب نصيحة/مساعدة

Example

To : Hala **From :** Sanaa **Subject :** Need advice

Hi Hala,

How are you and your family? I hope you are in good health. I am writing to ask for your help and advice. My friend, Malak, does not go out at breaktime. She stays in the classroom and looks sad. I want to help her, but I don't know what to do.

Do you have any suggestions on how I can make her join us outside during breaktime? Should I talk to a teacher about it? I really want to make sure she is happy and feels relaxed.

Thank you for your help.

Love,

Sanaa

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Fatma to ask for her help with your problem at school. Your name is Eman.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 3 Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My friend, Ahmed, has a problem. He does not go out at breaktime. Instead, he stays in the classroom and looks sad. I asked him why he did not join us, but he did not answer. I feel worried about him and want to help, but I do not know what to do.

I decided to talk to **him** again. I asked him if he wanted to play a game or have a snack with us outside. He **shook** his head and said he did not feel like it. I told him that we miss him during breaktime and that it is more fun when he is with us.

I also thought about talking to our teacher. The teacher suggested that I keep inviting Ahmed to join us, but also give him some space.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the text. .....
2. How did the writer try to help Ahmed at first? .....
3. Why do you think the teacher suggested giving Ahmed some space? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Which sentence tells us that Ahmed is sad?
   a) He stays in the classroom and looks sad.
   b) We miss him during breaktime.
   c) He shook his head and said he did not feel like it.
   d) I asked him why he does not join us, but he did not answer.
5. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to ..... .
   a) the teacher b) the writer c) Ahmed d) no one
6. The word "**shook**" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a) moved b) agreed c) accepted d) played

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They ..... to meet at the park for a picnic. They will go next weekend.
   a) disagreed b) agreed c) decorated d) relaxed
2. Ayman felt ..... about his grandma's health.
   a) worried b) relaxed c) surprised d) extra
3. My parents need to ..... a plan for the weekend trip.
   a) relax b) take c) make d) do

4. My classmates had a ..... about the new project.
   a) principal b) class c) bazaar d) discussion
5. We made ..... for the birthday party.
   a) ideas b) cupcakes c) beads d) ingredients
6. We take a short ..... after every two lessons.
   a) break b) expert c) bazaar d) stall
7. Zeina was ..... to see her friends at the party. She didn't expect that.
   a) worried b) stressed c) surprised d) boring
8. ..... saw Jack in his office.
   a) We b) Us c) Our d) Ours
9. I love my little brother because ..... is very funny.
   a) her b) him c) he d) his
10. Do you want ..... to play with you?
   a) my b) me c) I d) mine

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My parents are at the cinema. ..... (Them) will come back soon.
2. Do you know ..... (she)?
3. What did ..... (me) do to make you so angry?
4. Do you think that we should wait for ..... (he)?

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Asking for advice for a friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cupcakes are for Linda and ..... (I).
2. Everybody knows that ..... (him) is the best.
3. ..... (She) problem is very difficult. I can't help.

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 36-39

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

app (n)	تطبيق	geocaching (n)	العثور على المخابئ
classmate (n)	زميل دراسة	hometown (n)	مسقط رأسه/ بلدة الأم
clue (n)	دليل/ مفتاح لحل اللغز	hunt (ed) (v)	يصطاد/يطارد/يلاحق
coordinates (n)	الإحداثيات	included (adj)	مُتضمَّن/مُدرَج/مشمول
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	logbook (n)	سجل الملاحظات
geeky (adj)	مهووس/غريب الأطوار	miss (ed) (v)	يفتقد/يفوت
geocache (n)	مخبأ	treasure (n)	كنز
geocacher (n)	باحث عن المخبأ		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

hidden (adj)	مخفى/مخبئ	record (n)	سجل
interest (n)	اهتمام	relaxing (adj)	مريح
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغداء	shell (n)	صَدفَة
location (n)	موقع (جغرافى)	sort/type (n)	نوع
message (d) (v)	يرسل رسالة	summary (n)	ملخص
mind (ed) (v)	يمانع	theme (n)	موضوع
normal (adj)	عادى	through (prep)	خلال
outdoor (adj)	خارجى	tip (n)	نصيحة/تلميح
painting (n)	التلوين	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
particular (adj)	محدد/معين		

Check Point

Choose and complete: miss – mind – improve – explore

1. Laila wants to ..... the zoo and see all the animals.
2. Do you ..... cleaning the house with me?
3. I ..... my friends when they are not at school.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

Count me in	أضفنى فى القائمة	get	> coordinates	يحصل على الإحداثيات
do > a drawing	يقوم بالرسم	make	> a geocache	يكَون كنزًا مخفيًا
do > geocaching	يمارس لعبة العثور على مخبأ	solve	> clues	يحل الألغاز

Prepositions — حروف الجر

add to	يضيف إلى/لـ	interested in	مهتم بـ
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم	move to	ينتقل إلى
a pair of	زوج من	put ... back	يُرجع/يعيد
challenge for	تحدى لـ	the rest of	باقى
decide on	يختار/يحدد	work out	يحل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
lead يقود	led	led	set up يؤسس/ينشئ	set up	set up

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – to – for – solve

1. We need to ..... clues to find the hidden treasure.
2. Let's decide ..... a movie to watch together.
3. Cooking a new recipe was a fun challenge ..... dad.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

clues أدلة	information that helps you solve a problem or find something
coordinates الإحداثيات	pairs of numbers used to find the location(1) of something
geeky مهووس/ غريب الأطوار	not cool, very interested in a particular(2) thing
geocache مخبأ	a hidden(3) box with small, interesting things in it for people to find
treasure hunt البحث عن الكنوز	a game which you play to find something that has been hidden
logbook دفتر السجلات	a written record of events

(1) موقع .....

(2) محدد/معين .....

(3) مخفى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Geocaching تعرف على (هواية العثور على المخابئ)

هو نشاط ترفيهى فى الهواء الطلق يستخدم فيه الأشخاص نظام تحديد المواقع العالمى (GPS) أو هاتفًا محمولًا للعثور على مخابئ مخفية. المخبأ النموذجى يكون عادة حاوية صغيرة مضادة للماء تحتوى على دفتر لتسجيل المعلومات، حيث يكتب الشخص تاريخ العثور على الحاوية واسمه. ثم يعيد الحاوية إلى مكانها. أحيانًا تكون الحاويات أكبر، مثل حاويات بلاستيكية أو صناديق، وتحتوى على أشياء ذات قيمة مالية منخفضة مثل الألعاب أو الحلى.

Pre-reading question: - What's your favorite hobby?

Lesson 5: Literature

Read the story. What is geocaching? Would you like to try it? Why?

SB page 36

An Unusual Hobby

When Nermine's family move to Oxford for her dad's job, she misses her hometown, Alexandria. She decides to use her favorite hobby, geocaching(1), to explore(2) the city.

Geocaching is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt(3) Just like a normal treasure hunt, you solve clues(4) to help you find something interesting - the treasure. But in geocaching, the clues come from an app on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get coordinates(5) which are pairs of numbers. These help you find the treasure - the geocache, a box with small, interesting things in it.

In Alexandria, Nermine loved geocaching with her friends. She's worried that her new classmates(6) might think geocaching is geeky(7), so she doesn't tell them about it.

Then, one lunchtime, Nermine is looking at a new challenge(8) on her phone when two girls from her class, Sarah and Ella, come over.

"What's that game?" asks Sarah.

Nermine explains. "There are millions of geocaches all over the world. When you find one, you don't take the treasure. You write your name in a logbook(9) to tell other geocachers that you found it, then you put it back. If you want, you can put something new in the geocache for other people to find."

(1) البحث عن المخابئ

(2) يستكشف

(3) صيد الكنوز

(4) تلميحات (مفاتيح حل لغز)

(5) إحداثيات

(6) زملاء الفصل

(7) غريب الأطوار

(8) تحدى

(9) سجل الملاحظات

"That sounds fun" says Ella. "Can we play, too?"

"Sure! But this is a really difficult one."

"That's okay. Three heads are better than one, so maybe we will find the treasure more quickly together!"

Their classmates notice that Nermine, Sarah, and Ella are spending all their lunchtimes together. They ask questions and soon, there are ten of them geocaching. When they find the geocache, they discuss what to add to it. They decide on a school chair and a shell from the beach in Alexandria.

One day, Nermine, Sarah, and Ella decide to make their own geocache. They tell their math teacher. She thinks their idea is good and says that the geocache could be a challenge for the rest of the class.

The clues lead the class all over the school. It's hard work and they have to work together. Nermine feels included and happy.

Finally, they work out the coordinates and find the geocache. They all have such a good time and they don't even mind that the treasure is extra math homework!

Post-reading question:

- How did geocaching help Nermine to make new friends?

Lesson 6: Writing

Read the forum post. Check the purpose of Nabila's post. *SB page 38*

Nab_paints

Hi everyone! I love coloring and painting, and I really enjoy going to art club after school. I also practice most days at home. It's so relaxing. My favorite thing to draw is animals. I think I can draw cats, dogs and rabbits quite well! Here's a drawing I did of my cat last week: Do you like art, too? I would like to meet other people who share my hobby so that we can set up a group to draw and paint together. We could share ideas, give each other tips to improve our work, and have fun! Message me!

Like Comment

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My ..... helped me understand the science lesson.
   a) theme b) cache c) classmate d) treasure
2. Can you give me a ..... to help me solve this puzzle?
   a) clue b) shell c) painting d) pin
3. Taha likes to ..... new places during the summer vacation.
   a) miss b) explore c) hunt d) improve
4. My ..... is small, and very quiet. It's the place where I was born.
   a) finder b) record c) treasure d) hometown
5. She is an expert ..... who has found many hidden treasures.
   a) geocacher b) theme c) challenge d) coordinate
6. I felt ..... when I joined the school team.
   a) hidden b) relaxing c) included d) recent
7. I use a language learning ..... to practice English every day.
   a) clue b) app c) box d) cache
8. The ..... led us to the top of the mountain where we saw a beautiful view.
   a) tips b) paintings c) shells d) coordinates
9. Dina and I went on a treasure hunt and found clues ..... around the park.
   a) hidden b) written c) outdoor d) geeky
10. He's a bit ..... because he loves strange video games.
    a) included b) geeky c) particular d) interested
11. Can you ..... a drawing of our house with all the flowers in the garden?
    a) take b) present c) do d) let
12. The ..... of the story is friendship and love.
    a) theme b) tip c) shell d) cache
13. Can you keep a ..... of all the activities you do?
    a) pin b) record c) box d) theme

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My family ..... to a new city last month.
   a) missed b) improved c) solved d) moved
2. When I traveled abroad, I ..... my family and friends so much.
   a) lost b) missed c) saved d) suggested
3. ..... is a sort of outdoor treasure hunt.
   a) Geocaching b) Coloring c) Drawing d) Painting
4. My whole family meet together at ..... . We like to eat together.
   a) classmate b) hometown c) lunchtime d) logbook
5. I like to share my ..... and hobbies with my classmates.
   a) clues b) interests c) shells d) treasures
6. You write your name in a ..... to tell other geocachers that you found it.
   a) logbook b) hometown c) treasure d) location
7. We will find the hidden ..... more quickly together.
   a) record b) geocacher c) treasure d) classmate
8. The clues ..... the class all over the school and make them think hard.
   a) mind b) hunt c) lead d) miss
9. Eventually, they ..... the coordinates and find the geocache.
   a) work out b) decide on c) go out d) move to
10. My father doesn't ..... going on the school trip. He agrees.
    a) mend b) agree c) mind d) hunt
11. Are you interested ..... joining the art club?
    a) with b) on c) at d) in
12. My dad ..... a new business in the downtown area.
    a) worked out b) moved to c) set up d) put back

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing

How to write about an unusual hobby.

كيفية الكتابة عن هواية غير عادية.

An unusual hobby

- **(1)** What is your unusual hobby?
- **(2)** How did you become interested in this hobby?
- **(3)** What do you enjoy most about your hobby?
- **(4)** How do you do this hobby?
- **(5)** Which challenges do you face with this hobby?
- **(6)** What have you learned from this hobby?
- **(7)** How does your unusual hobby affect your life?
- **(8)** Would you recommend this hobby to others? Why or why not?

Example

An unusual hobby

My unusual hobby is collecting sea glass on the beach. I first became interested when I found a smooth, colorful piece while walking along the shore with my family. What I enjoy most is the fun of discovering particular shapes washed up by the waves. To do this hobby, I visit beaches near my home, especially after storms to look for sea glass among the sand. Sometimes, it's challenging to find these pieces. From this hobby, I learned patience الصبر and respect for nature's beauty. I would recommend it to others who enjoy the beach and treasure hunting.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your favorite hobby"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 3 Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Complete the following dialog:

Maged went geocaching with his friends.

Maged : Guess what I did last weekend.

Gomaa : I don't know. (1)..... did you do?

Maged : I went (2)..... .

Gomaa : What (3)..... geocaching?

Maged : It's like a treasure hunt using GPS to find hidden treasures.

Gomaa : It's a lot of fun! (4).....
are these treasures hidden?

Maged : They're hidden in parks, forests, and sometimes even in cities.

Gomaa : Do you always find them?

Maged : (5)..... . Some are difficult to find.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We found a ..... hidden under a big rock in the park.
   a) theme b) geocache c) finder d) sort
2. My uncles like to ..... wild animals in the forest.
   a) improve b) hunt c) mind d) count
3. Please, put your toys ..... into the box when you finish playing.
   a) to b) on c) back d) under
4. I'm looking for a ..... book, but I can't remember the title.
   a) particular b) eventual c) recent d) sad
5. Practicing every day can ..... your English.
   a) improve b) message c) mind d) count
6. The ..... of the new library is near the train station.
   a) suggestion b) situation c) location d) discussion
7. My cousins enjoy ..... activities like hiking and camping.
   a) homemade b) outdoor c) written d) hidden
8. My father ..... now. He's asleep.
   a) isn't working b) doesn't work c) wasn't working d) didn't work
9. There's a new e-mail. Read ..... to me, please!
   a) her b) him c) it d) them
10. Did ..... give you the keys?
    a) I b) me c) my d) mine

3 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. My grandpa ..... (read) the newspaper right now.
2. Our teacher, Salma, is so nice! We'll love ..... (him).
3. Are ..... (them) coming with us?
4. Look! The kids ..... (swim) in the pond.

4 **Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:**

1. bike – **My** – a new – me – bought – uncle.

.....

2. unusual – is – **Nermine's** – hobby – geocaching – favorite.

.....

3. are - the – now – **What** – doing – children?

.....

5 **Write blog post of (80-90) words to your friend about your unusual hobby.**

..... | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINK | ARCHIVE

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dahlia ..... (want) to draw now.
2. Ali, come here. I want ..... (he) to come here.
3. I ..... ('m) reading a story now. I'm watching my favorite program.

General Exercises on Unit 3

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What is the speaker's hobby?
   a) Drawing. b) Painting. c) Relaxing. d) Both a & b.
2. Where does the speaker enjoy going?
   a) A park. b) Home. c) An art club. d) A school.
3. What is the speaker's favorite thing to draw?
   a) Animals. b) Nature. c) Plants. d) None.
4. How is the speaker's hobby?
   a) Relaxing. b) Worrying. c) Boring. d) Ugly.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Nahed and Riham are talking about hobbies.

Nahed : Hi Riham! What are your hobbies?
Riham : Hi Nahed! (1)..... . What about you?
Nahed : I enjoy reading books.
Riham : (2).....?
Nahed : I like science books. (3).....?
Riham : I like to paint plants and flowers.
Nahed : Do you take painting classes?
Riham : (4)..... . I take classes every Saturday.
Nahed : Where do you like to paint?
Riham : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

organize – I – take – me – On

One of my hobbies is hiking. I have a strong interest in exploring green spaces. Hiking is very relaxing for (1)..... . I like to (2)..... trips with my friends. We share the love of nature. (3)..... weekends, we explore different parks. Sometimes, we see animals and beautiful plants. Hiking gives me a chance to enjoy the fresh air. I also (4)..... photos of the places we visit.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sara has an unusual hobby. She loves to collect rocks. Every weekend, she goes to the park with her dad. They look for interesting rocks together. Sara likes rocks that are in different colors and shapes. She has a big box at home where she keeps her rocks. Some rocks are smooth, and some are rough. Sara even has a book about rocks. She reads it to learn more about **them**. Sometimes, Sara shows her rock collection to her friends. They think it is cool. One day, Sara found a shiny, red rock. It is her favorite. Sara loves her unusual hobby because it makes her happy. Collecting rocks is fun and exciting for her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. Why does Sara love her unusual hobby?

.....

3. What do you think of Sara's hobby?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Sara's ..... goes to the park with her every weekend.
   a) mom b) dad c) friend d) teacher
5. Sara uses a ..... to learn more about rocks.
   a) computer b) magazine c) television show d) book
6. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the ..... .
   a) friends b) parks c) rocks d) weekends

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The ..... made delicious soup.
   a) court b) first aid c) skill d) cook
2. Eman is ..... courses to improve her English.
   a) taking b) making c) writing d) spending
3. Finding the hidden ..... was like a dream that came true.
   a) location b) treasure c) shell d) measure
4. The ..... gave a talk at the school meeting.
   a) chef b) dentist c) principal d) theme

5. The teacher gave us ..... time to finish the test.
   a) surprised b) stressed c) homemade d) extra
6. Geocachers sign the ..... to show they found the hidden treasure.
   a) logbook b) cache c) theme d) message
7. They trained hard to focus ..... winning the game.
   a) at b) on c) for d) to
8. The baby ..... with her mother at the moment.
   a) sleeps b) slept c) was sleeping d) is sleeping
9. Baher and Tamara live in Oxford. We never see ..... .
   a) our b) us c) them d) they
10. ..... told me an interesting story.
   a) She b) Him c) Her d) His

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Does) your brother studying in his room?
2. I can't go out with you now. I ..... (work) on a project.
3. Hello, my name's Mr. Saleh and ..... (me) am your new teacher.
4. Here's my phone number. Phone ..... (I) if you need any help.

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"The hobby you like"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Mahmoud and Hatem are talking about hobbies.

Mahmoud : Hi Hatem, how are you?

Hatem : (1)..... . And you?

a) Thanks b) Of course c) I'm fine d) Sorry, no

Mahmoud : I'm fine, too. Do you have any hobbies?

Hatem : Yes, I do. I like to play football. (2).....?

a) What about you b) Why not

c) How that d) When this

Mahmoud : I like to paint pictures.

Hatem : (3).....?

a) Where do you paint b) How often do you paint

c) How do you paint d) Why do you paint

Mahmoud : I paint every weekend.

Hatem : That's nice. Can I see your paintings?

Mahmoud : (4)..... . Here they're.

a) Sorry, no b) Yes, of course c) Thanks d) I don't know

Hatem : (5)..... .

a) Thanks a lot b) You're welcome c) No, sorry d) Not at all

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. My son ..... (talk) on the phone right now.

a) talks b) was talking c) is talking d) talking

2. Is Tamer ..... (work) on his project nowadays?

a) working b) works c) worked d) was working

3. I'm Sally and this is Rami, my husband. ..... (They) live near Luxor.

a) I b) You c) He d) We

4. Where do you want these bags? Shall I put ..... (it) in the kitchen?

a) her b) them c) they d) she

5. Where's Jehan? Did anyone see ..... (him)?

a) she b) her c) he d) his

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What did you do last summer?

Read the forum posts. What is the topic of the forum? *SB page 40*

(A) Ellie, Sweden

I live next to a huge(1) forest(2) so I like to go on long walks in nature. I also volunteer some of my time at the local community garden: I help grow vegetables that later go into meals at the community kitchen. Last summer I also volunteered at the kitchen, but I'm not good at cooking!

(B) Josh, UK

I love being active(3), so I'm always doing something. I go to the sports center nearly every day. I run and swim there. They have a great indoor swimming pool. I also do karate three times a week, but I'm still learning. I'm not very good yet, but maybe one day I'll compete(4).

(C) Luca, Italy

When I'm not at school, I'm usually playing chess(5) (sometimes, at school too!). There's a tournament next month, so I'm training for that right now. In my last one, it was really close: I got second place! I play a lot of games, usually against the computer, but I also spend a lot of time learning about different positions(6).

(D) Nadia, Egypt

I feel great when I'm helping others. My mom's a teacher, and I help her teach adults to read and write. It's great to see them improving day by day. When I'm not doing that, I like writing about myself. I keep a journal about my life, and I also like to write stories. I often use AI to give me ideas about what to write.

Post-reading questions:

1. Where is Luca from?

.....

2. How often does Josh do karate?

.....

(1) ضخم (2) غابة
(3) نشيط (4) ينافس
(5) شطرنج (6) أوضاع

Pre-listening question:

Listening Text

- What do you usually do on your birthday?

Listen to a dialog between Sarah and Mariam about a birthday party. Match the people (1-6) to the actions (a-f). *SB page 41*

(1) يجهز (2) مفاجأة
(3) افراد (4) يدردش

Mariam Hi, Sarah. I saw some pictures of you on social media yesterday. You were at a party. It looked fun!

Sarah Thanks, Mariam. Yes, I had a great time! It was my grandmother's 70th birthday party, and we all wanted it to be special, so we spent weeks preparing(1) it. It was hard because there was a lot to do and we wanted it to be a surprise(2).

Mariam Oh, so she didn't know about the party.

Sarah No, she didn't. Mom organized everything, but we all helped. My sister Nadia got in touch with all the family members(3) on social media. I made the cake, and Dad took the pictures on the day.

Mariam And how was the big day?

Sarah Perfect! My uncle has a cafe in town, so we had the party there. My grandfather took my grandmother for a walk and said, 'Why don't we stop for a coffee at the cafe?'. When they went in, we were all there.

Mariam That's great! And did you know everyone there?

Sarah No, I met lots of new relatives. It was also good to see cousins that I usually just message online. It's much better to chat(4) face-to-face, isn't it?

Post-listening questions:

(1) Whose birthday was that?

.....

(2) Who communicated with the family members?

.....

Pre-reading question:

- What sports are you good at?

Read the email and write T (true) or F (false). *SB page 43*

From : Shahd
To : Yara
Subject : My summer vacation

Hi!

How's everything? Great to know you won the table tennis tournament. Well done! I'm so proud of you! I would like to play table tennis better. Maybe you can teach me one day.

BTW, did you have a good first week back at school? Mine was OK. It was good to see everyone again. There are a couple of new students who seem nice.

I do miss the summer vacation, though. I had a great time! Did I tell you that I volunteered at a summer camp for children who can't see? I learned so many skills and met fantastic people. I really enjoy helping other people, and I think I can do it quite well. I'm reading my summer journal again now to remember everything I did. What was your summer like?

TTYL!

Shahd

Post-reading questions:

Write T (true) or F (false):

1. Shahd won a sports competition. ( )
2. Shahd is studying at a new school this year. ( )
3. Shahd spent the summer working with children. ( )
4. Shahd thinks she's good at helping others. ( )
5. Shahd kept a record of her summer activities. ( )

Unit 4
DIGITAL LIFE

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	Information about inventions for a sustainable future; An article; Scammed!: a short story
Writing	A social media post about staying safe online; taking part in a technology competition
Listening	Understand a dialog about a new app
Speaking	Talk about staying safe online; Discuss which devices are important and why
Language	Imperatives for instructions; The zero conditional

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44-47

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

address book (n)	سجل العناوين	eraser (n)	الممحاة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	fitness (n)	اللياقة البدنية
airplane (n)	طائرة	fix (ed) (v)	يصلح
ATM (Automatic Teller Machine)	ماكينة الصراف الآلى	green technology (n)	التكنولوجيا الصديقة للبيئة
battery (n)	بطارية	icon (n)	أيقونة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	insert (ed) (v)	يُدرِج
click (ed) (v)	ينقر (على أيقونة كمبيوتر/لاب توب)	invention (n)	اختراع
color bar (n)	شريط الألوان	press (ed) (v)	يضغط
device (n)	جهاز	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
digital (adj)	رقمى	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
drag (ged) (v)	يسحب	search engine (n)	محرك بحث
eco-friendly (adj)	صديقة للبيئة	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
ecoATM (n)	آلة صرف صديقة للبيئة	sustainable (adj)	مستدام/مستمر
effects (n)	مؤثرات	tap (ped) (v)	ينقر (على أيقونة بالهاتف)
electronic (adj)	إلكترونى	video call (n)	مكالمة فيديو

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	fact (n)	حقيقة
colorful pictures (n)	صور ملونة	folder (n)	مجلد
develop (ed) (v)	يطور	guessing game (n)	لعبة التخمين
easy-to-read (adj)	سهل القراءة	greeting (n)	تحية
environment (n)	البيئة	health (n)	الصحة
face (d) (v)	يواجه	identify (y ied) (v)	يتعرف على

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

introduction (n)	مقدمة	power (n)	طاقة
infographic (n)	إنفوجراف (رسم توضيحى)	rubbish (n)	قمامة/مهملات
land (n)	أرض/اليابسة	scientist (n)	عالم
look like	يشبه	solar-powered (adj)	تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
material (n)	مادة خام	title (n)	عنوان
ocean (n)	المحيط	tree-planting (n)	زراعة الأشجار
planet (n)	كوكب	visual clues (n)	أدلة بصرية
plant-based (adj)	قائم على النبات	webcam (n)	كاميرا الويب

Check Point

Choose and complete: rubbish – produces – charity – power

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. Our farm ..... a lot of vegetables every year.
2. The volunteers are collecting ..... to clean up the beach.
3. She does voluntary work عمل تطوعى for the new ..... .

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

go	> online	يتصل بالإنترنت	save	> a photo	يحفظ صورة
make	> electricity	يولد كهرباء	run	> electric cars	يشغل سيارات كهربائية

Prepositions — حروف الجر

better for	أفضل لـ	take care of	يعتنى بـ
full of	ممتلئ بـ	take ... back	يسترد
put ... into	يضع فى داخل	take ... out	يُخرج
take away	يبعد		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
keep يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept	shine تسطع	shone	shone

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
exciting مثير	boring ممل	regular معتاد	irregular غير معتاد
switch on يشغل	switch off يغلق	right يمين	left يسار

Check Point

Choose and complete: off – shine – make – of

1. Solar panels ..... electricity from the sun.
2. This tree is full ..... apples.
3. According to the news, the sun will ..... brightly tomorrow.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
take care of (v)	يعتنى بـ	look after	يعتنى بـ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
advertise (v)	يعلن	-ment		تحويل الفعل لاسم		advertisement (n)	إعلان
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		traditional (adj)	تقليدى
fit (adj)	لائق بدنيا	-ness		تحويل الصفة لاسم		fitness (n)	اللياقة البدنية

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should take care of our community. That means, we should ..... it.
   a) lookup b) look like
   c) look for d) look after
2. To change the noun "tradition" into an ....., we add the suffix "al".
   a) verb b) adverb
   c) adjective c) preposition
3. We add the prefix "....." to the word "regular" to get the antonym.
   a) dis- b) ir-
   c) im- d) re-

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1: Green technology

Pre-reading question:

- How can we keep the environment clean?

Read and listen to the text. *SB page 45*

Inventions for a sustainable future

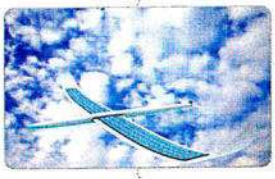
Our world has many problems. We need new ways to help us take care of our planet and fix(1) some of the problems it faces. Here are some exciting new inventions(2) which will help us.

EcoATMs

We use regular ATMs to take money out or put money into our banks. Eco-friendly(3) ATMs help us recycle old electronic devices(4). When you put your old device in it, the machine tells you how much money you can have for it. You can keep the money or give it to a charity(5)!

Tree-planting projects

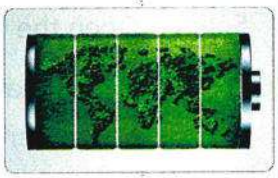
When we go online, we see online advertisements. Some search engines give the money they get from advertisements(6) to help tree-planting projects around the world.



Solar-powered airplanes

Most airplanes aren't good for our planet. Solar-powered airplanes fly using power that comes from solar panels(7). It is very clean power. The planes can fly around the world, day or night. It's an exciting new invention for the future!

Plant-based batteries



Scientists are developing batteries(8) that work using material from plants. The way these batteries are made is better for the environment than traditional batteries. In the future, they could even produce enough power to run electric cars!

Ocean clean-up projects

The world's oceans(9) are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Ocean clean-up projects collect rubbish in the water, then ships take it back to land for recycling.

(1) يصلح	(2) اختراعات	(3) صديق للبيئة
(4) أجهزة إلكترونية	(5) جمعية خيرية	(6) إعلانات
(7) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	(8) بطاريات	(9) محيطات

Pre-reading question: - What's your favorite app?

Lesson 2: A new app

Read and circle the correct words. Then listen and check? *SB page 46*

Amir Hi Selim. Thanks for telling me about AppErture! I'm really excited!

Selim No problem! I can show you how to use if you want. Have you got the app on your phone yet?

Amir Yes, I have! I want to try it now! Show me how to use it!

Selim OK. First, tap(1) the app to open it. Can you see the camera icon(2)?

Amir Here? Yes.

Selim Press(3) on the icon for one second and it will open your photos. • Don't stop pressing. Wait until they open. Then choose a photo you want to change.

Amir Right. Here's a photo of my cat, Fluffy!

Selim Sweet! You have a black cat... do you want to make it another color?

Amir OK!

Selim Open the color bar(4) and choose the color you want.

Amir Haha! I have a purple cat! What about these effects(5)? Look! Can use the eraser(6) to take away(7) your bed. You look like you're flying now! How can I save the photo?

Selim Keep your finger on the photo and drag(8) it to the "Save" folder(9). Now, share it with me, please! I love it!

Amir I will! Thanks, Selim.

(1) ينقر (على أيقونة)
(2) أيقونة
(3) يضغط
(4) شريط الألوان
(5) مؤثرات
(6) ممحاة
(7) يبعد
(8) يسحب
(9) مجلد (فولدر)

Post-reading questions:

1. What's the name of Amir's cat?.....
2. What can AppErture do? .....

Lesson 2: A new app

Pre-reading question:

- What kinds of apps do you have on your phone?

Read and circle the correct answers. *SB page 47*

Amira Can you tell me how to use the video call app?

Samia Sure, it's really easy. Switch on(1) your laptop!

Amira Done! What's next?

Samia Open the video call program(2). And don't forget to connect your headphones!

Amira OK.

Samia Then click the address book(3).

Amira Is it on right of my screen?

Samia It's on the left. Next, find the name you want.

Amira I found Nermine. What now?

Samia Finally, just click on(4) her name to call her! Remember to open your webcam(5), too.

Amira Thank you Samia!

(1) يشغل
(2) برنامج
(3) سجل العناوين
(4) يضغط على
(5) كاميرا الويب

Post-reading questions:

1. Do you think Samia is helpful?

.....

2. Who did Amira choose to make a video call with?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You should ..... paper and plastic to help the environment.
   a) develop b) produce c) recycle d) fix
2. I take money out of the ..... .
   a) ATM b) Am c) PM d) ITTF
3. ..... technology helps protect the environment.
   a) Real b) Green c) Famous d) Traditional
4. Asmaa wants to ..... her skills in writing short stories.
   a) connect b) produce c) develop d) insert
5. My dad ..... the broken chair yesterday.
   a) produced b) fixed c) collected d) planned
6. ..... always try hard to help people who are poor.
   a) Panels b) Airplanes c) Charities d) Oceans
7. My aunt designed an amazing ..... for the new restaurant.
   a) electricity b) airplane
   c) invention d) advertisement
8. My phone's ..... lasts for a long time because it's new.
   a) battery b) engine c) material d) rubbish
9. The laptop is a/an ..... device.
   a) busy b) electronic c) solar d) exact
10. I like traveling by ..... . I like watching the clouds closely.
    a) train b) bus c) ship d) airplane
11. They have a good factory, so they think of ..... more goods بضائع this year.
    a) producing b) fixing c) facing d) building
12. A lot of teachers use ..... to make the lessons easier.
    a) articles b) letters c) infographics d) greetings
13. Salwa ..... her younger sister when her mother is away.
    a) develops b) takes care of c) changes d) produces
14. Please, ... some photos to your presentation to be more exciting.
    a) drag b) improve c) develop d) connect
15. I need to update my ..... camera's software before our trip.
    a) friendly b) digital c) traditional d) boring

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When we ..... online, we see online advertisements.
   a) add b) make c) take d) go
2. Solar ..... make electricity using the sun.
   a) batteries b) panels c) charities d) materials
3. ..... ATMs help us recycle old electronic devices.
   a) Regular b) Eco-friendly c) Traditional d) Busy
4. Some people joined a ..... project to help the environment.
   a) planet b) building c) search d) tree-planting
5. The park is full ..... children playing different games.
   a) off b) of c) at d) on
6. We need new ways to help us solve some of the problems our world ..... .
   a) changes b) develops c) faces d) produces
7. The ..... of the novel is "*Journey to the center of the Earth*".
   a) plan b) review c) title d) ocean
8. We use ATMs to take some money ..... of our account.
   a) in b) out c) into d) for
9. Scientists are ..... batteries that work using material from plants.
   a) developing b) recycling c) fixing d) facing
10. ..... airplanes fly using the power that comes from the sun.
    a) Traditional b) Plant-based c) Solar-powered d) Electronic
11. Some batteries could produce enough power to ..... electric cars.
    a) run b) go c) make d) develop
12. Put the ..... in the bin, please.
    a) bank b) engine c) rubbish d) airplane
13. Before buying something online, I read a ..... of the shop I want to buy from.
    a) review b) device c) project d) season
14. First, ... the app to open it.
    a) tap b) tape c) top d) tip
15. The smartphone is a famous ..... that most people use these days.
    a) intention b) power c) ocean d) device

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ **Quiz** الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Imperatives صيغ الأمر

هى صيغة إعطاء تعليمات وجملتها ليس بها فاعل ويمكن أن يذكر المخاطب ويضع معه (,)

Affirmative الإثبـات

الفعل فى المصدر + **Always** / الفعل فى المصدر

e.g.
- Wash your hands before lunch, **Ali**.
- **Mona**, clean the room quickly.
- Always go to bed early.
- Remember to buy some bread.

Negative النفى

Don't + الفعل فى المصدر / **Never** + الفعل فى المصدر

e.g.
- Don't forget to water the plants.
- Never leave your account open for everyone.

ومع الصفة نستخدم:

Be + الصفة

e.g.
- Be **quiet**. The baby is sleeping.
- Be **careful** when you go online.

Don't be + الصفة

e.g.
- Don't be **rude** to your friends.
- Don't be lazy. Do your homework now.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Samy, ... (not) play in the street.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't) لأن الجملة أمر منفى.

2 Please, ... (making) me some tea, Donia.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (make) لأن الجملة أمر مثبت.

3 (Always) ..... accept friend requests from people you don't know.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Never) لأنه من الخطأ قبول طلبات صداقة من أناس لا نعرفهم.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... late for school, Adam.
   a) Be b) Not be c) Don't be d) Don't
2. Your dad is sleeping. Don't ..... him up.
   a) wake b) to wake c) waking d) woke
3. ..... off your mobiles. The lesson is going to begin.
   a) Turn b) Turning c) Turns d) To turn
4. Hany, ... down please. Your classmate can't see the board.
   a) sat b) sit c) sitting d) sits
5. ..... speak loudly in the library, Randa.
   a) No b) Doesn't c) Not d) Don't
6. I have got a lot of homework to do, so ..... for me.
   a) wait b) don't wait c) waiting d) isn't waiting
7. ..... check that you are safe online.
   a) No b) Always c) Not d) Often
8. ..... after you eat a big meal. It's not a good idea.
   a) Exercise b) Don't exercise c) Exercises d) Not exercise
9. ..... make friends with people you don't know.
   a) Didn't b) Aren't c) Doesn't d) Don't
10. ..... say unkind things to your friends.
    a) Always b) Often c) Never d) Do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Not/tell) dad about my accident. He will be worried.
2. Sit down and ..... (opens) your book, dear students.
3. ..... (Doing) your best to achieve your goals.
4. Children, ... (walking) carefully while crossing the road.
5. ..... (To brush) your teeth before going to bed.
6. ..... (Talk) during the lesson. Listen carefully.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing

Inventions for a sustainable future اختراعات لمستقبل مستدام

Future inventions

- **(1)** What are the sustainable inventions?
- **(2)** What do they do?
- **(3)** Why are they sustainable?
- **(4)** How do they help the environment?

Example

"Future inventions"

Inventions for a sustainable future are very important. They help protect our planet and make life better. Solar panels are one great invention. They use the sun to make electricity. Electric cars are another good invention. They do not pollute the air. Recycling machines help turn old things into new things, eco-friendly ATMs help us recycle old electronic devices. Plant-based batteries are better for the environment than traditional batteries. These inventions help us use resources wisely and protect the environment. By using these inventions, we can make the world a better place for everyone.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about how to help the environment.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 4 Lessons (1 & 2)

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What are the oceans full of?
   a) Paper. b) Wool. c) Wood. d) Plastic.
2. How is that for the life in the ocean?
   a) Good. b) Bad. c) Famous. d) Interesting.
3. What project can we do to help that?
   a) Clean-up. b) Tree-planting
   c) Solar-powered. d) Rubbish-throwing.
4. Why do ships take it back to land?
   a) For living. b) For using. c) For recycling. d) For planting.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Kady is going to the cinema and her dad is going to pick her up home.

Kady : I'm going to see the new movie this evening. Would you like to come?
Zainab : (1)..... .
Kady : I have an extra ticket for you.
Zainab : Really? Thanks! (2).....?
Kady : No, Jasmen is going to play tennis at the sports center.
Zainab : (3).....?
Kady : It starts at 9 p.m.
Zainab : How are we going to get home after the movie?
Kady : My dad has a car. (4)..... .
Zainab : OK. Where will we meet?
Kady : (5)..... .

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

charity – sustainable – recycle – green – cycle

Eco-friendly ATMs are a great invention for a (1)..... future. These ATMs will help us (2)..... old devices. When you put your old device in it, the machine tells you how much money you can have for it. Then, you can keep the money or give it to a (3)..... . They show how (4)..... technology can help protect the environment.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Now, open the ..... to choose the color you want.
   a) battery b) screen c) color bar d) network
2. Scientists ..... new medicines to help the environment.
   a) develop b) recycle c) fix d) face

3. ..... on the icon for one second and it will open your photos.
a) Press b) Design c) Take d) Erase
4. Cycling is a totally ..... form of transport.
a) modern b) sustainable c) solar powered d) new
5. My grandparents bought a piece of ..... near the lake to plant apple trees.
a) planet b) ocean c) land d) device
6. This app has a lot of ..... for changing photos.
a) affects b) reviews c) seasons d) effects
7. ..... the photo to a folder to save it.
a) Tag b) Drag c) Delete d) Tap
8. Please, ... the door when you leave.
a) close b) closed c) closing d) closes
9. ..... me when you finish the report.
a) Call b) Called c) Calling d) Calls
10. OK, you can go out but ..... late.
a) not be b) don't c) don't be d) not

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Not) forget to call me when you arrive home.
2. Laila, sit down and ..... (to finish) your dinner.
3. Eat healthy food and ..... (remembering) to wash your hands.
4. To make a video call, ... (tapped) on this icon.

6 Write a paragraph of about (80-90) words on:

"A sustainable invention"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Is) kind to your classmates and help them.
2. You can use social media, but ..... (bully) any one.
3. Karim, ... (helping) your brother. I want him to do his homework by himself.

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48 - 51

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

account (n)	حساب	freeze (v)	يجمد
aim (n)	هدف	hacker (n)	مخترق/متسلل إلكترونى
behavior (n)	سلوك	horrible (adj)	فظيع/رهيب/مروع
bully (y-ied) (v/n)	يتنمر/متنمر	link (n)	رابط
bullying (n)	التنمر	nasty (adj)	بذىء/كريه
character (n)	رمز/شخصية	password (n)	كلمة السر/المرور
control (led) (v)	يتحكم فى	personal information (n)	معلومات شخصية
cyberbully (y-ied) (v/n)	يتنمر/المتنمر الإلكترونى	platform (n)	منصة
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكترونى	private (adj)	خاص (ملكية خاصة)
delete (d) (v)	يمسح/يحذف	prove (d) (v)	يثبت/يبرهن
download (ed) (v)	يحمل من الإنترنت	request (ed) (v/n)	يطلب/طلب
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل/يعالج

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

chat (ted) (v/n)	يدردش/دردشة	record (ed) (v/n)	يسجل/سجل
comment (ed) (v/n)	يعلق/تعليق	rude (adj)	غير مهذب
cycle (d) (v)	يركب دراجة	rule (n)	قاعدة
cool (ed) (v)	يبرد	science (n)	علوم/علم
design (ed) (v)	يصمم	technological (adj)	تكنولوجى
electronic messaging (n)	الرسائل الإلكترونية	temperature (n)	درجة حرارة
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	upset (v/adj)	يغضب/ غاضب
letter (n)	حرف	video call (n)	مكالمة فيديو
position (n)	مكانة	natural (adj)	طبيعى
produce (d) (v)	ينتج		

Check Point

Choose and complete: aim – record – cyberbully – cycle

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. Ayman is a ..... . He writes bad comments about his friends.
2. Shady wants to take his bike, so he can ..... around the park.
3. Nahla's ..... is to be a doctor. That's why she studies hard.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

accept > friend requests	يقبل طلبات صداقة	give	> a presentation	يقدم عرضًا تقديميًا
do > a job	يؤدى وظيفة	press	> a button	يضغط على زر
get > hold of	يستحوذ على	stay/keep	> safe online	يبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت
post > a comment	ينشر تعليق	make	> a list	يعد قائمة

Prepositions — حروف الجر

as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
click on	ينقر على	mix of	خليط/مزيج من
hide behind	يختبئ خلف	turn into	يحول إلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	lose	يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost
hide	يختبئ/يختفى	hid	hidden	send	يرسل	sent	sent

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
accept	يقبل	refuse	يرفض	simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفى	strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل	turn on	يفتح	turn off	يغلق
false	مزيف/خطأ	true	صحيح	useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة

Check Point

Choose and complete: at – on – press – careless

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

1. Nahed had to ..... a button to start the machine.
2. Please, click ..... the link to open the website.
3. Manar is always careful with her toys. She isn't ..... .

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

accept يقبل	agree to something
aim هدف	what you want to achieve when you do something
cool يبرد	to lose heat
cyberbullying التنمر الإلكترونى	treating(1) someone badly either online or through electronic messaging
device جهاز	a small electronic machine
efficiently بكفاءة	quickly and with good results(2)
freeze يجمد	to turn water into ice
hacker مخترق	a person who uses computers to get hold of(3) private information
hide behind يختبئ خلف	to put yourself in a position(4) where you cannot be seen
nasty بذىء/كريه	very bad or unkind(5)
prove يثبت/يبرهن	to show that something is true
post ينشر	to put on social media

(1) يعامل .....

(2) نتائج .....

(3) يستحوذ على .....

(4) مكانة/موقع .....

(5) غير عطوف

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
hard (adj) صعب	difficult صعب
horrible (adj) فظيع/رهيب/مروع	terrible فظيع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
care (n) رعاية	-less	تعطى عكس المعنى	careless (adj) مهمل

Prefix البادئة

Prefix — البادئة	Function — الوظيفة	Word — الكلمة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	appear (v) يظهر	disappear (v) يختفى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3: Online safety

- What are some examples of bad behavior online?

Look at the headings in the article. What do you think it is about?

SB page 48

When you go online to send messages, play video games, download an app, or just check your social media, it's important to remember a few simple rules(1) that can keep you safe.

(1) قواعد (2) رموز
(3) تعليق (4) يحذف
(5) حساب (6) طلبات الصداقة
(7) معلومات شخصية (8) التنمر الإلكتروني
(9) فظيع / كريه

1. Choose strong passwords

It's important to use a password that is a mix of letters, numbers, and special characters(2) like !, &, or $. Long passwords are also a good idea as they are hard to guess. Never use your name or date of birth, your pet's name, or anything that hackers can guess from your social media.

2. Think before you post

When you post a comment(3) or photo on social media, it stays there forever- even if you delete(4) it from your account(5). Don't post or share anything nasty or false.

3. Be careful of friend requests

Don't accept friend requests(6) from people you don't know. Always tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to chat with you, and don't click on any links they send you. Never share personal information(7) with anyone.

4. Be kind online

Cyberbullying(8) is a big problem for young people. It's easier for bullies to post horrible(9) messages online as they can hide behind a false name. Cyberbullying can happen any time you are online – at home, at school, or out with your friends. Tell an adult if someone is bullying you. And always be kind online.

Post-reading questions:

1. What makes a password strong? .....
2. What information should you not put in a password? .....
3. What shouldn't you share or post? .....

Listening Text

Lesson 4: Science and technology

Pre-listening question:

- In your opinion, what's the most important invention?

Listen to a talk about science and technology. *SB page 50*

Reader: Science and technology – what's the difference?

Well, science tell us about the world and how everything in it works. Technology, on the other hand, helps us to solve[1] problems. It also helps us to do things better and more quickly.

In science, we ask questions about the natural[2] world - questions like, if this happens, why does this always happen next? To answer these questions, we do tests. We must look carefully at the results[3] of the tests to check whether our ideas are correct. If we can use science to prove[4] something, we know it is a fact. For example, we can do tests to show that, at sea level, if fresh water cools to a temperature[5] of zero degrees Celsius, it always freezes into solid ice.

(1) يحل	(2) طبيعى
(3) نتائج	(4) يثبت
(5) درجة الحرارة	(6) أجهزة
(7) الكهرباء	

In technology, we use the information we learn from science to solve problems and find new ways to do things. Sometimes we do this by making devices[6] such as phones and computers. Of course, to make a device that uses electricity[7], we must first understand how electricity works - in other words, the science behind the technology!

So, in short, science is about understanding the world, while technology is about using that understanding of the world to make and do things that help it.

Post-listening questions:

1 When does water freeze?

.....

2 What is the difference between science and technology?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Don't share ..... information with anyone.
   a) personal b) technological c) unpleasant d) public
2. Your password should be a mix ..... letters, numbers, and special characters.
   a) with b) of c) for d) off
3. Students should follow their school ..... to be safe.
   a) chats b) rules c) posts d) records
4. Never ..... friend requests from people you don't know.
   a) offend b) prove c) accept d) refuse
5. It's important to remember to ..... safe online.
   a) accept b) press c) stay d) give
6. ..... is treating someone badly either online or through electronic messaging.
   a) Freezing b) Cyberbullying c) Information d) Hacking
7. The teacher liked Arwa for her excellent ..... .
   a) password b) comment c) platform d) behavior
8. Don't buy that coat–it looks cheap and ..... .
   a) nasty b) special
   c) private d) technological
9. The software makes it easier to ..... music from the internet.
   a) cool b) treat c) download d) call
10. My aunt is smart in solving problems. She solves them ..... .
    a) efficiently b) carelessly c) eventually d) wrongly
11. Tell an adult if someone is ..... you.
    a) cooling b) recognizing c) controlling d) bullying
12. Don't use easy passwords that ..... can guess from your social media.
    a) tips b) hackers c) letters d) requests
13. When you post something, it is hard to ..... it from the internet.
    a) delete b) comment c) prove d) disappear
14. My little brother always hides ..... the sofa when we play hide and seek.
    a) in b) off c) at d) behind

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Never ever tell anyone your account ..... .
   a) hackers b) post c) password d) message
2. Click on this ..... to visit our website.
   a) link b) post c) comment d) message
3. Merna likes to share photos of her family ..... social media.
   a) at b) in c) on d) of
4. Hana spent a lot of time on social media. She ..... her account every 10 minutes.
   a) checked b) proved c) offended d) controlled
5. Eslam can ..... his smart car with his phone.
   a) record b) control c) happen d) post
6. The school has a program to stop ..... . The students will learn good behaviors.
   a) bullying b) position c) temperature d) media
7. Osama checked his bank ..... online through InstaPay.
   a) request b) character c) password d) account
8. The weather was ..... yesterday. We couldn't go out.
   a) safe b) strong c) horrible d) useful
9. This ..... is great for sharing photos.
   a) presentation b) button c) video call d) platform
10. Nasser ..... a great job of cleaning his room every Saturday.
    a) makes b) does c) checks d) designs
11. The teacher explained the math problem in a/an ..... way that everyone understood.
    a) simple b) hard c) complex d) unpleasant
12. Nelly is very worried because she will ..... a presentation in front of the whole class.
    a) get b) give c) do d) miss
13. Don't believe everything you read online; some information is ..... .
    a) hard b) simple c) false d) true
14. The kids made their father ..... when they made a lot of noise.
    a) careless b) happy c) upset d) nasty

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Remember

The present simple tense

Form التكوين

تذكر: زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات

مصدر الفعل **inf.** + **I/You/We/They** اسم جمع

e.g. • I usually walk to school. • They play football on Fridays.

مصدر الفعل **inf.** + **(s, es, ies)** + **He/She/It** اسم مفرد

e.g. • Fady eats his lunch at three. • The cat carries its babies on its back.

Negative النفى

مصدر الفعل **inf.** + **don't** + **I/You/We/They** اسم جمع

e.g. • I don't walk to school. • We don't play football on Fridays.

مصدر الفعل **inf.** + **doesn't** + **He/She/It** اسم مفرد

e.g. • Wael doesn't eat his lunch at three. • Manal doesn't get up early.

Question السؤال

Do/Does + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. **A:** Do **you** walk to school? **B:** Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

Q.Word كلمة استفهام + do/does + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. **A:** Where does **your father** work? **B:** **He** works in an office.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Eman ..... (travel) to school by bike every day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (travels) لأن الفاعل مفرد والجملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

2 We ..... (not) like playing handball. We like football.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (don't) لأن الفاعل جمع والجملة منفية فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

The zero conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Usage الاستخدام

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true.

- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية للحديث عن الحقائق والأشياء التى تكون صحيحة دائمًا. أى مع الحقائق والعادات الثابتة بوجه عام.

e.g. • If you heat water, it boils.
• You get purple if you mix red and blue.

Form التكوين

Affirmative: الإثبات

If + subject (الفاعل) + مضارع بسيط **(inf./inf. + s), subject** (الفاعل) + مضارع بسيط **(inf./inf. + s)**

e.g. If **water** boils, it evaporates.

Subject (الفاعل) + مضارع بسيط **(inf./inf. + s) if subject** (الفاعل) + مضارع بسيط **(inf./inf. + s)**

e.g. **Metals** sink if **we** throw them in water.

Negative: النفى

e.g. • If you don't water plants, they die.
• It doesn't get warm if the sun doesn't shine.

Question السؤال

If + subject (الفاعل) + مضارع بسيط , **Q.Word** (كلمة استفهام) + **do/does + subject** (الفاعل) + **inf. ...?**

e.g. • If the sun sets, does it get dark?
• If you mix blue and yellow, what do you get?

Q.Word (كلمة استفهام) + **do/does** + الفاعل + **inf.** + **if** + الفاعل + مضارع بسيط?

e.g. • Does water turn into ice if you freeze it?
• Where does the sun go if it sets?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 If we add oil to water, they ..... (doesn't) mix.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (don't) لأنها حالة صفرية والفاعل جمع.

2 We get orange if we ..... (mixed) red and yellow.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (mix) لأنها حالة صفرية والفاعل جمع.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Water ..... if you heat it to 100°C.
   a) is boiling b) boil c) boils d) boiled
2. If you put water in the freezer, it ..... ice.
   a) become b) becomes c) became d) becoming
3. Students don't care if the lesson ..... boring.
   a) being b) be c) was d) is
4. My grandma gets so sad if we ..... call her for long.
   a) weren't b) aren't c) doesn't d) don't
5. I feel sick if I ..... too much chocolate.
   a) eating b) ate c) eats d) eat
6. ..... your teacher get upset if you don't do your homework?
   a) Was b) Has c) Does d) Is
7. What ..... if you are sick?
   a) happen b) happens c) happened d) happening
8. Plants die if they ..... get enough water.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) aren't d) won't
9. If I ..... ill, I don't go to school.
   a) was b) wasn't c) am d) am not
10. If you add sugar to tea, it ..... sweeter.
    a) become b) becomes c) becoming d) became

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If there ..... (be) no rain, the grass doesn't grow.
2. If my daughter ..... (eat) too much chocolate, she gets sick.
3. What ..... (you/do) if you have a headache?
4. If there is a storm, my cat ..... (hide) under the sofa.
5. If the sun ..... (shine) brightly, all plants and flowers grow fast.
6. The flowers die in hot weather if you ..... (not/water) them.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing which devices are important and why.

مناقشة أى أجهزة مهمة، ولماذا؟

online

Which device do you think is the most important?
أى جهاز هو الأكثر أهمية فى رأيك؟

I think phones are the most important.
أعتقد أن الهواتف هى الأكثر أهمية.

Why do you think that? لماذا تعتقد ذلك؟

Because we use them for so many things!
لأننا نستخدمها استخدامات عديدة!

I think laptops are also important.
أعتقد أن أجهزة الحاسب المحمول مهمة أيضًا.

Yes, I agree. نعم أتفق.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Jana and Hana are talking about the most important devices.

Jana : Do you use any electronic devices?
Hana : (1)..... . I use many of them.
Jana : (2).....?
Hana : I think a laptop is the most important. What about you?
Jana : (3)..... . It is very useful.
Hana : (4).....?
Jana : Because we use it to communicate.
Hana : What else do you think is important?
Jana : (5)..... .
Hana : I agree, tablets are very helpful.

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about the most important device

كيفية الكتابة عن الجهاز الأكثر أهمية

Important devices

(1) Which device do you think is the most important?

(2) Why do you think that?

(3) What do people use it for?

(4) Is it eco-friendly or not?

Example

The most important device

The most important device for many people is the smartphone. A smartphone helps us stay connected with family and friends. We can call, text, and use social media on it. It is also useful for work and school because we can check emails and search for information. Smartphones have cameras, so we can take photos and videos. They also have maps to help us find places. Many people use smartphones to play games and listen to music. Overall, smartphones are very helpful and make our lives easier. They are small and do many things.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on an important device.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

- استخدم نماذج متنوعة فى الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 4 Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many people use different devices every day. The smartphone is one of the most important devices. It helps us stay connected with family and friends. We can call, text, and use social media on a smartphone. Another important device is the laptop. Laptops are very useful for work and school. People use **them** to write, research, and play games. Tablets are also important. They are good for reading and watching videos. Some people like smart TVs because they can watch movies and TV shows on the internet. All these devices make our lives easier and more fun. They help us communicate, learn, and ***entertain*** ourselves.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this text?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

.....

3. Which device do you think is the most important?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. There are ..... devices in this passage.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
5. ..... are good for reading and watching videos.
   a) Smartphones b) Laptops c) Smart TVs d) Tablets
6. The word "***entertain***" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a) enjoy b) prove c) recognize d) collect

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I ..... a new game on my phone.
   a) hid b) appeared c) treated d) downloaded
2. Mayar finished her work ..... and on time. Her teacher was happy.
   a) suddenly b) efficiently c) forever d) horribly
3. Mazin ..... everyone with kindness.
   a) produces b) cycles c) treats d) shares
4. Can you ..... that you were at school not the park?
   a) prove b) recognize c) check d) achieve

5. Water can ..... in the very cold weather.
   a) hide b) click c) press d) freeze
6. In hot weather, the ..... gets very high.
   a) account b) platform c) password d) temperature
7. Please, ... on this post after reading it.
   a) delete b) choose c) comment d) send
8. If you ..... fire, you get burned.
   a) touched b) touch c) touching d) touches
9. We take a taxi if we ..... late.
   a) will be b) be c) were d) are
10. I always ..... happy if I listen to my mom's voice.
   a) feel b) feels c) feeling d) felt

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If it rains, the ground ..... (get) wet.
2. My mother gets angry if I ..... (not/do) my homework every day.
3. If you ..... (broke) your leg, it hurts.
4. If you ..... (pressing) this button, the machine stops.

4 Write a paragraph of about (80-90) words on:

"The most important modern invention"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(1) ..... (careful). The floor is wet.
(2) If we sing very loudly, our neighbors ..... (not happy).
(3) If you meet a friend, ... (you/say) hello?

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 52 - 55

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

ashamed (adj) (by)	خجلان/مستحٍ (من)	participate (d) (v)	يشارك
awesome (adj)	رائع	part-time (adj)	دوام جزئى
cautious (adj)	حذر/حريص	profile (n)	ملف/حساب تعريفى
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة	realize (d) (v)	يدرك
console (n)	وحدة تحكم	report (ed) (v)	يبلغ عن
detect (ed) (v)	يحدد	rescue (d) (v)	ينقذ
difficulty (n)	صعوبة	research (n)	بحث (علمى)
embarrassed (adj)	محرج/مرتبك	savings (n)	مدخرات
engineering (n)	الهندسة	scam (n)	احتيال/نصب
fair (n)	معرض	scammer (n)	محتال/نصاب/مخادع
gamer (n)	لاعب ألعاب الفيديو	scientific (adj)	علمى
international (adj)	دولى/عالمى	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو
life jacket (n)	سترة النجاة	trust (ed) (v)	يثق فى
limited-edition (adj)	إصدار محدود	winner (n)	فائز

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	No way!	مستحيل/لا مفر
amazed (adj)	مذهول/مندهش	the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF)	المعرض الدولى للعلوم والهندسة (ISEF)
amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش		
catchy title	عنوان جذاب	proudly (adv)	بفخر
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	prize (n)	جائزة
event (n)	حدث	reply (y-ied) (v)	يرد
excited (adj)	متشوق/متحمس	respond (v)	يرد
eye-catching (adj)	لافتة للنظر	review (n)	نقد/مراجعة
finally/eventually (adv)	أخيرًا	smart (adj)	ذكى
half price	نصف السعر/الثمن	talented (adj)	موهوب
seller (n)	بائع	worry (y-ied) (v)	يقلق

Check Point

Choose and complete: difficulty – proudly – rescued – smart

1. The lifeguard ..... the boy from the pool. He saved his life.
2. Mariam ..... showed her painting to the class.
3. Some people find a ..... in learning a new language.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

lead > the way	يقود المسيرة	as fast as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن
call-to-action	دعوة للعمل	catch > his eye	يلفت انتباهه
get > attention	يجذب الانتباه	make > the payment	يقوم بالدفع
add > your votes	أضف أصواتكم		

Prepositions — حروف الجر

for sale	للبيع	on a gaming forum	فى منتدى الألعاب
glad about	سعيد بشأن	on your own	بمفردك
in trouble	فى ورطة	save up	يدخر
at the fair	فى المعرض	participate in	يشترك فى
work in groups	يعمل فى مجموعات		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
catch يمسك/يصطاد	caught	caught	lead يقود	led	led
cost يكلف	cost	cost	speak up يبوح بما لديه	spoke up	spoken up
hurt يؤذى/يضر	hurt	hurt			

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
expensive غالى الثمن	cheap رخيص
positive إيجابى	negative سلبى

Check Point

Choose and complete: up – caught – in – negative

1. The shiny new bike in the window ..... the boy's eye.
2. The test results were positive and made her happy. They weren't ..... .
3. Mahmoud was ..... trouble for breaking the window.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 the first (عدد ترتيبى) to + inf. أول من.....

- Maybe he could be the first person **to message** the seller.

2 (be) gone ذهب وضاع

- All his money was gone.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

awesome	رائع	something really good or amazing
cautious	حذر/حريص	someone who does something slowly and carefully
embarrassed	محرج	someone who feels ashamed by something they did
expensive	غالى الثمن	something that costs a lot of money
limited-edition	إصدار محدود	something of which there are only a few

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
cautious (adj)	حذر/حريص	careful	حريص
participate (v)	يشارك	take part in	يشارك

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
difficult (adj)	صعب	-y		تحويل الصفة لاسم		difficulty (n)	صعوبة
win (v)	يفوز	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		winner (n)	فائز

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-		تعطى عكس المعنى		expensive (adj) غالى الثمن		inexpensive (adj)	غير مكلف

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 He's a cautious man. He's always ..... .
a) careless b) careful c) useless d) negative

2 To get the noun from the adjective "difficult", we add the suffix "..... ".
a) -ly b) -ment c) -ist d) -y

3 Neil Armstrong was the first person ..... on the moon.
a) walks b) to walking c) to walk d) walking

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5: Literature

Pre-reading question: - What is a scam?

Read and listen to the story. How is Ali scammed? *SB page 52*

Scammed!

Ali read the post carefully, and then read it again.

"No way!" he thought.

He was on his favorite gaming forum(1). Usually, he used it to chat to other gamers, but this morning another type of post caught his eye. In it, someone wanted to sell a limited-edition(2) games console. Consoles like that were very expensive, and there weren't many of them. Ali wanted it!

Ali checked the time of the post: 2 am. It was now 8 am. Maybe he could be the first person to message the seller!

From his part-time(3) job in a restaurant, Ali had some savings(4). He also had LE 500 from his grandma for his birthday. He checked his account: yes, he had enough for the console!

The seller had a good profile and lots of positive reviews(5). So, Ali sent him a message.

This console looks awesome(6)! Why is it half price?

The seller replied quickly. He explained that the console was a present, but he already had one. He sent Ali some photos and videos of it.

Thanks, Ali messaged back. I'll take it!

The seller told Ali where to send the money, and Ali made the payment(7). He felt excited - his friends would be amazed when he told them!

Every day, Ali waited for the console to arrive. After three days, he messaged the seller again.

The console hasn't arrived yet. When did you send it?

Another three days went by. No reply. No console. Ali began to worry. He messaged the seller again.

(1) منتدى الألعاب
(2) إصدار محدود
(3) دوام جزئى
(4) مدخرات
(5) تقييمات إيجابية
(6) رائع
(7) الدفع

The console still hasn't arrived. Please reply!

Nothing. A whole week went by, and then another until finally Ali realized[8] it was a scam[9]. He felt terrible, and very embarrassed[10]. All his money was gone and he had nothing to show for it.

Eventually, Ali knew that he needed to tell someone.

"Mom, Dad, I need to talk to you ..."

Ali felt much better after speaking to his parents. They helped him report the scammer.

The next time Ali went onto the gaming forum, the post was gone. He felt glad about speaking up, so the scammer couldn't do the same thing to someone else. He also learned to be cautious[11] when shopping online. It was a difficult lesson, but an important one.

Over the next few months, Ali worked hard at the restaurant and saved up enough money to buy the console from an official[12] seller.

"Remember," he said to his friends when he proudly showed them his new console. "If something doesn't seem right, stop, think, and speak to your parents or another adult for advice. It could be a scam!"

(8) أدرك

(9) احتيال

(10) محرج

(11) حريص

(12) رسمي

Post-reading questions:

1. What does Ali usually do on the gaming forum?

.....

2. Where does Ali work?

.....

3. Why does Ali trust the seller at first?

.....

4. How much did Ali's grandma give him for his birthday?

.....

5. What reason does the seller give for selling the console?

.....

Pre-reading question:

- What inventions do you hope to see in the future?

Read and listen to the blog. Answer the questions. *SB page 54*

Solve it with tech!

Students lead the way!

Do you think great inventions only come from adults and famous scientists? Think again!

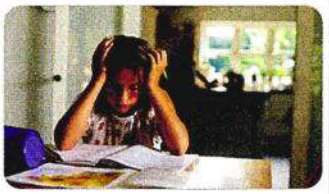
This month, 24 talented students from Egypt, aged 14-18, participated[1] in the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. It's a competition to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem. Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their scientific research skills and work in groups or on their own. Winners[2] can study for one year in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many prizes for their inventions! Some of them had great new ideas for technologies that solve problems!

(1) يشترك
(2) الفائزون
(3) في ورطة
(4) ينقذ
(5) يحدد

Some project ideas in the competition:

- A smart life jacket that can help people in trouble[3] at sea to be rescued[4] as fast as possible.
- A technology that cleans dirty water in a way that doesn't hurt the planet.
- A mobile phone app that can detect[5] when a student has reading difficulties and help them.

Which new technology do you think is the most important? Why? Please add your votes in the comments.



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The new gaming ..... has amazing graphics.
   a) skill b) difficulty c) console d) payment
2. I recognized Nada from her ..... picture.
   a) profile b) review c) present d) advertisement
3. Laila ..... her mistake, but it was too late.
   a) did b) rescued c) reported d) realized
4. The parents were ..... by their children's rude behavior.
   a) positive b) ashamed c) international d) official
5. The students ..... the problem to the school principal.
   a) reported b) trusted c) rescued d) avoided
6. There is a mobile app that can ..... students' difficulties and help them.
   a) report b) rescue c) detect d) avoid
7. Fatma ..... her cat when it fell in the lake.
   a) worried b) trusted c) realized d) rescued
8. Mahdy got a/an ..... job after school because he wants to buy a new mobile.
   a) scientific b) limited-edition c) part-time d) embarrassed
9. They did ..... for their project on the internet.
   a) research b) review c) scam d) profile
10. Sally's mom usually tells her to be ..... while crossing the street.
    a) amazed b) cautious c) talented d) proud
11. Shaimaa won a ..... for her awesome painting.
    a) prize b) profile c) price d) fair
12. Wesam felt ..... when he made that mistake.
    a) talented b) official c) embarrassed d) scientific
13. The new movie was ..... . We liked it so much.
    a) useless b) negative c) cautious d) awesome
14. Noor faced ..... doing her homework, but her mother helped her.
    a) skill b) difficulty c) console d) payment
15. Fares won first place in the writing ..... .
    a) competition b) engineering c) prize d) scammer

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This website has a good profile and lots of positive ..... .
   a) event b) research c) reviews d) prize
2. Ammar wants to study ..... when he finishes school.
   a) messaging b) engineering c) solving d) worrying
3. How can you protect yourself from an online .....?
   a) skill b) life jacket c) prize d) scam
4. Basma went to the science ..... to represent her invention there.
   a) fair b) gamer c) research d) scam
5. Nadia decided to ..... in the next art competition.
   a) rescue b) realize c) avoid d) participate
6. Nabil ..... the advice of his teacher, so he followed it.
   a) avoided b) rescued c) trusted d) worried
7. Our community organized a charity ..... to help the poor.
   a) event b) prize c) seller d) skill
8. My little brother always speaks loudly to ..... attention.
   a) trust b) get c) make d) do
9. Every child should put on a/an ..... before swimming.
   a) advertisement b) research c) life jacket d) competition
10. Saif is ..... in drawing. He won many prizes.
    a) talented b) ashamed c) cautious d) scientific
11. Talal used his ..... to buy a car.
    a) message b) events c) profiles d) savings
12. Yasmin knew she was ..... trouble when she lost her books.
    a) on b) in c) at d) of
13. My parents ..... the payment for their shopping before leaving the shop.
    a) made b) took c) gave d) went
14. Faisal bought a game, but he discovered it was a/an ..... one.
    a) part-time b) talented c) limited-edition d) official
15. My cousins played games with other ..... online.
    a) winners b) gamers c) prizes d) profiles

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about having an online scam

كيفية الكتابة عن التعرض للاحتيال الإلكتروني

- When did you experience it?
- What happened?
- How did you know it was a scam?
- What did you do?
- What advice can you present?

Example

"Online scam"

Last month, I experienced a scam. I got an email saying I won a prize. I was excited and followed the link. It asked for my personal information. Later, I felt something was wrong. The website looked strange, and the email had spelling mistakes. I realized it was a scam. I quickly closed the website and didn't give any extra information. I told my parents, and we reported the scam. My advice is to be cautious with emails from unknown people. Always check if the email is real, and never give personal information to strangers. Stay safe online.

How to write about taking part in a technology competition

كيفية الكتابة عن الاشتراك في مسابقة تكنولوجية

- When did you take part?
- What is your invention?
- How is it useful?
- Why is this competition?
- What prizes did you win?

Example

"A technology competition"

Last month, I participated in a technology competition at my school. My invention was a smart water bottle. It detects how much water you drink and reminds you to drink more often. This is useful because many people forget to drink enough water each day. The competition was held to encourage students to create new and helpful technologies. There were many great inventions, but my smart water bottle won the first prize. I won a special prize and a gift card. It was a fun experience, and I learned a lot. Taking part in this competition made me feel proud and excited about future inventions.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 4 Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Complete the following dialog:

Reda got scammed last week.

Reda : Hi Soliman, how are you?

Soliman : Hi Reda, I'm fine. (1)..... about you?

Reda : I'm okay, but something bad happened.

Soliman : What happened?

Reda : I got (2)..... .

Soliman : Oh no! When did it happen?

Reda : (3)..... week. I got an email saying I won a prize.

Soliman : What (4)..... they ask you to do?

Reda : They asked me to give them my personal information.

Soliman : I think you should speak with your (5)..... about it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The store is offering items at ..... . They aren't expensive.
   a) half price b) review c) difficulty d) scam
2. Hamza played games on his new ..... .
   a) research b) console c) competition d) winner
3. This tree is ..... over a hundred years.
   a) proud b) ashamed c) talented d) aged
4. Fahd felt proud to be the ..... of the running race.
   a) event b) prize c) winner d) profile
5. Students from 80 countries participated ..... the project.
   a) by b) in c) of d) with
6. This is a ..... title. I liked it.
   a) catchy b) call-to-action c) difficult d) saving
7. Reem put her old bike up ..... sale.
   a) at b) by c) for d) of
8. ..... the door when you go outside.
   a) Close b) To close c) Closing d) Closed

9. I use my finger print to open the phone if I ..... remember the password.
a) am not b) not c) don't d) haven't

10. If I ..... on a computer for too long, I get a headache.
a) work b) worked c) works d) working

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you ..... (eats) too much, you get fat.
2. ..... (Giving) me your phone number so that I can call you.
3. Do you tell an adult if you ..... (has) a problem?
4. ..... (Be) so rude.

4 Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. touch – burn – you – a hot – **If** – it – pan, – you.

.....

2. carefully – and – **Be** – teachers – your – to – quiet – listen.

.....

3. are – do – you – you – **What** – ill – if – do?

.....

5 Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Hana to tell her about the scam you had. Your name is Esraa.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (To go) to the park is so relaxing.
2. What ..... (you/do) if you are late for school?
3. If you have a problem online, ... (you/speak) to your parents?

General Exercises on Unit 4

A Listening

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When did students take part in the competition?
   a) This year. b) This month. c) This week. d) This Friday.
2. How old are the students?
   a) Aged 14-18. b) Aged 41-81. c) Aged 14-41. d) Aged 4-8.
3. Where is it?
   a) In the KSA. b) In the ARE. c) In the UK. d) In the US.
4. What does it develop?
   a) Science. b) Engineering. c) Both a & b. d) Nothing.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Emad participated in a competition last month.

Emad : I'm excited! I participated in a technology competition.
Nader : That's great! When was it?
Emad : (1)..... .
Nader : (2).....?
Emad : It was at my school.
Nader : (3).....?
Emad : I invented a smart water bottle.
Nader : Did you win any prizes?
Emad : (4)..... . I won the first prize.
Nader : (5).....! I'm happy for you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

prize – will go – go – personal – reported

I almost fell for a scam. I got a phone call saying I won a trip. They asked for my (1)..... information and a payment for the (2)..... . I felt something was wrong. I checked online and found similar scams. I didn't give any details and told my family about it. We (3)..... the scam. Now, if I (4)..... online, I follow all the safety rules.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last year, I participated in an international technology competition. It was an exciting online event. Students from many countries joined the competition. My project was a smart **backpack** that students take to school for their books. The backpack had solar panels to charge devices and a GPS to find **it** if it got lost. It was useful for students and travelers. I worked hard on my project and presented it. I didn't win the first prize, but I got a special gift. The competition taught me a lot about technology and inventions. I also made new friends from different countries. Taking part in this competition was a great experience, and I am proud of my achievement. I look forward to joining more competitions in the future.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What is the smart backpack designed to do? .....
3. How did the competition help the writer? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Students from ..... joined the competition.
   a) locals b) one country
   c) many countries d) the writer's school
5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the ..... .
   a) GPS b) device
   c) project d) backpack
6. The word "**backpack**" is similar in meaning to a ..... .
   a) bag b) book
   c) panel d) project

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Electricity is a useful ..... for us. We can't imagine life without it.
   a) charity b) invention c) battery d) engine
2. Solar ..... make electricity from sunlight.
   a) panels b) devices c) oceans d) reviews
3. Cotton is a common ..... used in clothes.
   a) power b) land c) plan d) material
4. Always choose a strong password for your ..... .
   a) rules b) characters c) accounts d) links

5. I'm glad that Maya accepted my friend ..... on social media.
   a) position b) request c) chat d) tip
6. It's important to learn to do things ..... your own.
   a) on b) of c) at d) by
7. Don't forget to add your ..... online to know your opinions.
   a) presents b) skills c) votes d) prizes
8. ..... too much noise in the office.
   a) Make b) Making c) Makes d) Don't make
9. If I walk for a long time, my feet ..... .
   a) hurt b) hurts c) hurting d) would hurt
10. ..... the lights before you go to bed.
    a) Turn off b) Turned off c) Turning off d) Turns off

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Doesn't) forget to tidy up your room.
2. If babies ..... (be) hungry, they usually cry.
3. ..... (Quiet) in the library. Don't speak.
4. Water ..... (freeze) if we put it in the freezer.

E Writing

7 Write a blog post of about (80-90) words on your review of a device you like.

..... | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINK | ARCHIVE

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Ayman: What do you think the future will be like?

Hams: I think there will be more technology everywhere.

Ayman: (1)..... . Do you think we will have flying cars?

a) Sorry **b)** Thanks **c)** No, I don't **d)** Yes, I agree

Hams: (2)..... . We will use them in traveling.

a) Yes, I think so **b)** No, I don't **c)** Yes, I will **d)** No, I won't

Ayman: (3).....?

a) When do you think we will travel **b)** Where do you think we will travel

c) Why do you think we will travel **d)** Who do you think we will travel

Hams: I think we will travel to other planets.

Ayman: Which device do you think is the most important?

Hams: (4)..... .

a) Yes, I think so **b)** No, I don't think so

c) I think phones are the most important

d) I think phones are the least important

Ayman: (5)..... ?

a) Why do you think that **b)** How do you think that

c) Who do you think that **d)** Where do you think that

Hams: Because we use them for so many things!

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... (Are) you turn on the fan if it's hot?

a) Have **b)** Do **c)** Would **d)** Were

2. ..... (Been) careful when you go online.

a) Be **b)** To be **c)** Being **d)** To being

3. If something goes wrong with your car, ... (to take) it to the service center.

a) will take **b)** taking **c)** take **d)** takes

4. If my fridge ..... (be) empty, I shop at the nearest supermarket.

a) is **b)** was **c)** will be **d)** would be

5. ..... (Not) go to school late again, Salma.

a) Aren't **b)** Didn't **c)** Don't **d)** Haven't

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Module 2 Question Bank on Units 3&4

1 Complete the following dialog:

A) Ali and Baher are talking about free time.

Ali : How do you usually spend your free time?
Baher : (1)..... . What about you?
Ali : (2)..... .
Baher : Drawing must be fun.
Ali : Who do you play video games with?
Baher : (3)..... .
Ali : Playing with friends is fun. (4).....?
Baher : We play adventure games.
Ali : (5).....?
Baher : Yes, of course.

B) Samar and Rania are talking about staying safe online.

Samar : Hey Rania, can I ask for your advice?
Rania : (1)..... . What's up?
Samar : I'm trying to be more cautious online. (2).....?
Rania : You should use strong passwords.
Samar : (3).....?
Rania : You should be careful when you post on social media.
Samar : Should I trust emails from unknown people?
Rania: (4)..... . They can be dangerous.
Samar : What can I do if I find a strange website?
Rania : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ola ..... the event very well.
   a) organized b) saved c) focused d) cooked
2. I usually make a ..... every morning.
   a) recipe b) skill c) to-do list d) chef
3. Salwa made a necklace with blue ..... .
   a) bazaar b) lemonade c) beads d) principal
4. Huda had ..... time to finish the project.
   a) expert b) homemade c) surprised d) extra
5. Scientists develop .....to make our life much easier.
   a) charities b) inventions c) batteries d) skills

6. Google is a popular search ..... .
   a) panel b) machine c) engine d) device
7. Ramy wears ..... to listen to music.
   a) headphones b) temperatures c) tips d) messages
8. The view from the top was ..... . I liked it.
   a) talented b) official c) unpleasant d) awesome
9. Lamees gave ..... a gift for my birthday.
   a) me b) my c) mine d) I
10. I like my friends and ..... also like me.
   a) we b) they c) he d) she
11. Rawda ..... because she's late for her lesson.
   a) runs b) running c) was running d) is running
12. My dad ..... today. He is on holiday.
   a) is working b) isn't working c) works d) doesn't work
13. If you leave ice in the sun, it ..... .
   a) melts b) melt c) melting d) melted
14. ..... a message if you can't attend the meeting.
   a) Send b) Sent c) Sending d) Sends
15. What ..... your cousins doing in the garden?
   a) are b) is c) do d) have
16. Never ..... late again. This is not safe.
   a) come b) comes c) coming d) came

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Amr ..... (not/use) his computer at the moment.
2. This is Mona's toy. Give it to ..... (she).
3. What ..... (did) the boys doing now?
4. ..... (Us) want our books.
5. My cousins ..... (learn) how to swim these days.
6. If you ..... (exercises) regularly, you get fit.
7. Maher and Sama want to learn new skills. ..... (Them) will join after school classes.
8. Nada ..... (read) a book. She is helping her brother with his homework.
9. Don't ..... (is) unkind to other students.
10. Nabil, ... (is having) your juice now.

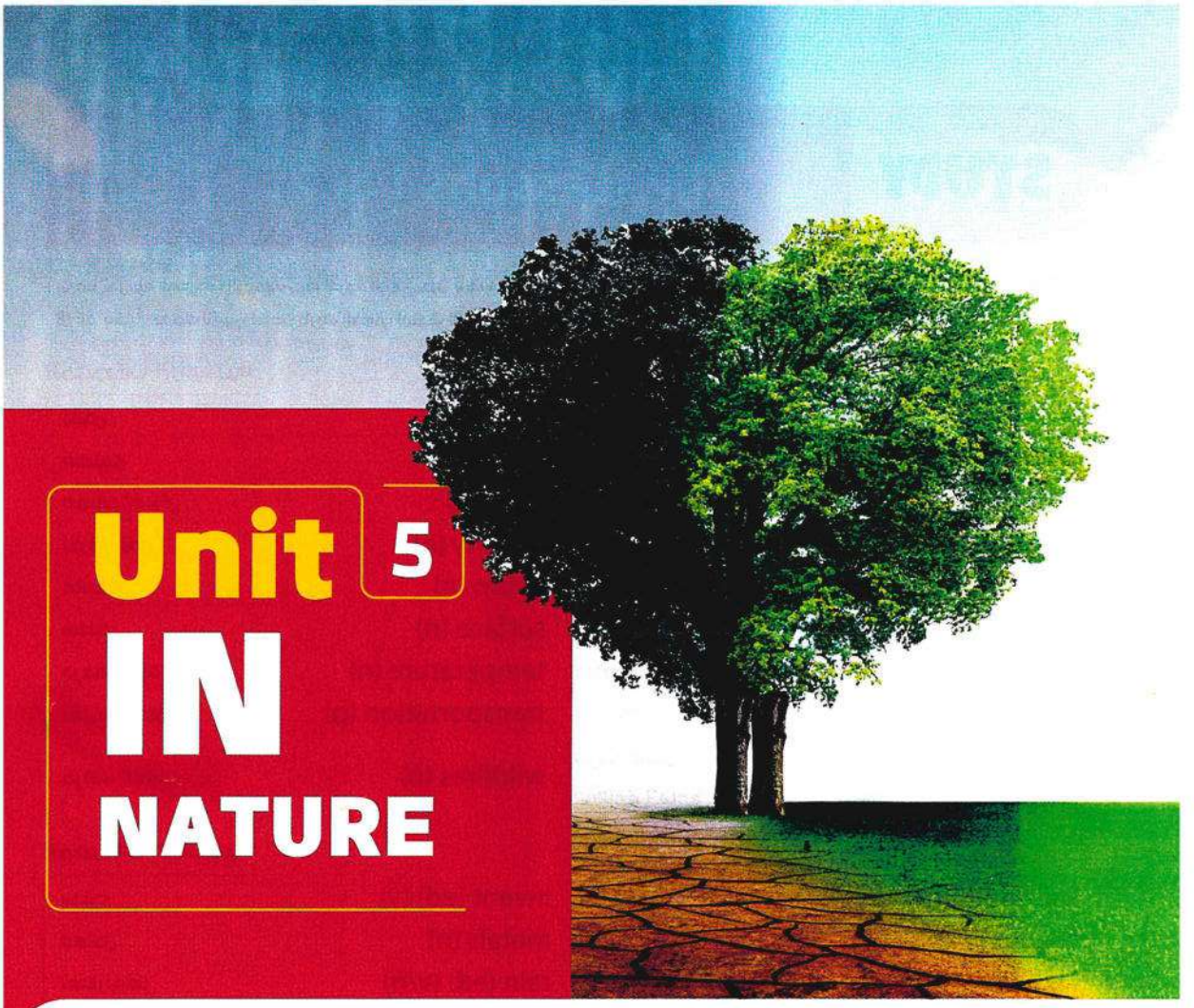
MODULE 3

مقرر شهر
ديسمبر

Unit 5 In nature

Unit 6 Food for thought

Module 3 Question Bank



Unit 5

IN NATURE

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	An article about how climate change is affecting people; An article about water scarcity; Helping the earth; a poem
Writing	A blog post about becoming more eco-friendly
Listening	Understand a talk about geology
Speaking	Talk about the effects of climate change; Making comparisons
Language	Comparatives and superlatives; Articles

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 56 – 59

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	lack (n)	نقص
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	level (n)	مستوى
crops (n)	محاصيل	scale (n)	مقياس/ميزان
drought (n)	جفاف	scarcity (n)	ندرة/نقص
effect/impact (n)	تأثير	storm (n)	عاصفة
fever (n)	حمى	surface (n)	سطح
flood (n)	فيضان	temperature (n)	درجة حرارة
nature (n)	الطبيعة	transportation (n)	نقل/مواصلات
heatstroke (n)	ضربة شمس	wildfires (n)	حرائق الغابات
hygiene (n)	النظافة العامة		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

air conditioning (n)	نظام تكييف الهواء	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	metals (n)	معادن
billion	مليار	rain (ed) (v/n)	تمطر/مطر
cause (d) (v/n)	يسبب/سبب	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
cover (ed) (v)	يغطى	resources (n)	موارد
degree (n)	درجة	source (n)	مصدر
fresh (adj)	نقى/طازج/منعش	therefore (adv)	لذلك
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	wind (n)	رياح
lake (n)	بحيرة	worrying (adj)	مقلق/مثير للقلق
leaf/leaves (n)	ورقة شجرة/أوراق		

Check Point

Choose and complete: (reaches – drought – surface – metals)

1. There are leaves on the ..... of the water.
2. My dad always ..... his work on time.
3. The ..... caused the river to dry up completely.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

as much as possible	بقدر الإمكان	fight	> illnesses	يحارب الأمراض
earn	> money	يكسب مالًا	have	> a fever	يصاب بالحمى
feel	> better	يشعر بتحسن	take	> action	يتخذ إجراء

Prepositions — حروف الجر

because of	بسبب	stay in bed	يبقى فى السرير
effect/impact on	تأثير على	suffer from	يعانى من
on average	فى المتوسط/المعدل	look for	يبحث عن
plenty of	وفرة/كثير من	worried about	قلق على
reason for	سبب لـ	on farm	فى المزرعة
in the south of	فى جنوب		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
burn يحرق/يحترق	burnt	burnt	grow يزرع/ينمو	grew	grown
fall يقع/يتساقط	fell	fallen	mean يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
fight يحارب	fought	fought	pay for .. يدفع ثمن	paid for	paid for

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
dirty	متسخ/قذر	clean	نظيف
dry	جاف	wet	مبلل/رطب
high	مرتفع/عالٍ	low	منخفض
normal	عادى	abnormal	غير عادى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
warm	دافئ	cool/ cold	بارد

Check Point

Choose and complete: fever – burnt – about – low – of

1. I'm worried ..... my husband's health.
2. If your baby has a ....., you should call a doctor.
3. The trees are so dry, so a wildfire started and ..... them down.
4. High temperatures have a great effect on plants. The opposite of "high" is ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **because of + noun/inf. + ing** بسبب

- We can't give the plants as much water as they need because of **the drought**.

2 **too + adj. + to + inf.** جدًا لدرجة ألا

- She was too **ill** to **get** up.

3 **too/as well** أيضًا (تأتى آخر الجملة المثبتة)

- Basmala likes English. Her brother likes English, too/as well.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We stayed home ..... the storm.
   a) because **b)** because of **c)** so **d)** but
2. I like vegetables. I like fruits, ...
   a) therefore **b)** so **c)** to **d)** as well
3. The story is ..... long to read in one day.
   a) too **b)** to **c)** as **d)** as well

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
effect (n) تأثير	impact تأثير
scarcity (n) ندرة/نقص	lack نقص

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
ill (adj) مريض	-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	illness (n) مرض

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The synonym of "scarcity" is "..... ".
   a) lake **b)** lack **c)** lock **d)** look
2. Climate change has a great effect on the planet. This means it has a great ..... .
   a) impact **b)** contact **c)** surface **d)** flood

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about climate change?

Lesson 1: Climate change

Read and listen to the article. Match the photos to the paragraphs. *SB page 57*

How climate change is affecting me

(1) Hi, I'm Leonie. I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is normal(1) for us, but this summer the highest temperature (2) was 46°C. That's about five degrees(3) warmer than it normally is. My family is having a lot of problems because of the hot weather here.

(2) My family lives on a farm. Because of the hot weather, there's a drought(4) in the south(5) of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller and some of their leaves(6) are brown. Because of the drought, we can't give the plants as much water as they need. My family therefore don't have enough tomatoes to sell. My dad is looking for a second job so he can earn more money.

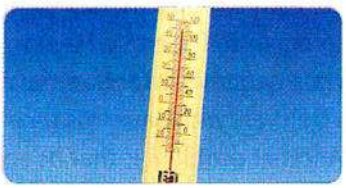
(3) We're also having some problems with our health. My mom had heatstroke(7) last week and she stayed in bed for three days because she was too ill to get up. She had a fever(8) and she was really tired all the time. We were very worried about her, but, fortunately(9), she's feeling better now. Some of my friends had heatstroke, too. I'm trying to stay inside as much as possible, so I don't get heatstroke as well.

(4) The worst thing about this summer for me was that our school closed for a week. The teachers said it was dangerous for us to travel to school because it was so hot. It was also too hot for us to be at school because we don't have air conditioning(10) there. I missed my friends when we couldn't go to school. I hope that never happens again!

a

b

c



d

(1) عادى (2) درجة حرارة

(3) درجات (4) جفاف

(5) جنوب (6) أوراق الشجر

(7) ضربة شمس (8) حمى

(9) لحسن الحظ (10) نظام تكييف الهواء

Post-reading question:

- How is the weather in Leonie's village in summer? .....

Lesson 2: Water scarcity

Pre-reading question:

- What problems do people have when there is water scarcity?

Read and listen to an article about water scarcity. *SB page 58*

Thirsty planet

Water scarcity[1] is one of the most **worrying** problems facing the world today. Although water covers more than 70% of Earth's surface[2], two billion people don't have enough fresh[3], clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. Even in countries where there are good water resources[4], the water cannot always reach[5] the people who need it.

One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change[6]. On average[7], temperatures are higher than they were in the past. In some places, there is also less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes[8] and rivers.

Water scarcity affects[9] people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow as many crops as they used to. Without crops[10] to sell, they can't earn enough money to pay for clean water. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it, which can have a negative **effect** on their health. The biggest impact[11] can be on children, who have less time to spend in school.

(1) ندرة	(2) سطح
(3) نقى	(4) موارد
(5) يصل	(6) تغير المناخ
(7) متوسط/ معدل	(8) بحيرات
(9) يؤثر	(10) محاصيل
(11) تأثير	(12) معادن
(13) بكتيريا	(14) يعانى

Another problem is that people often can't find clean, safe water. The dangerous metals[12] and bacteria[13] in dirty water can make them very ill. This can be more dangerous for children than for adults because their bodies are less able to fight the illnesses.

Solving the problem of water scarcity is not simple. However, there are lots of things that can help such as finding new water sources and developing new **technologies** to produce clean water. It is also important that people who live in countries with plenty of **water** don't use too much of it. The worst thing that could happen is that no action is taken, and more people suffer[14].

Post-reading question:

- How many people around the world don't have enough water? .....

Comprehension Skills

Critical Thinking Skill: مهارة التفكير النقدى:

- What is critical thinking? ما هى مهارة التفكير النقدى؟

- هـو عمليـة تحليل وتقييـم المعلومات التى جمعت من خـلال الملاحظة وبناء رأى نقدى شـخصى على ما تم قراءته من معلومات فى النص ودائمًا ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

Example: What do you think will happen if the problem of water scarcity increases?

- I think if the problem of water scarcity increases, there will be more droughts, crop failures, the spread of illness, and economic problems.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Water ..... is a big problem in many areas. People can't find water easily.
   a) surface **b)** crop **c)** scarcity **d)** level
2. Sara had a ..... after walking for a long time in the sun.
   a) heatstroke **b)** hygiene **c)** wildfire **d)** scarcity
3. Many trees died because of the ..... . There was no water for a long time.
   a) rain **b)** flood **c)** draught **d)** drought
4. The ..... in the desert can be extremely high during the day and very low at night.
   a) flood **b)** temperature **c)** wildfire **d)** transportation
5. My father uses public ..... to get to work. He goes by metro.
   a) transportation **b)** conservation **c)** surface **d)** technology
6. Hany is worried ..... the next exam.
   a) to **b)** for **c)** of **d)** about
7. Anas started a small business to ..... more money.
   a) fight **b)** do **c)** feel **d)** earn
8. ..... average, people sleep eight hours a night.
   a) In **b)** On **c)** For **d)** Of
9. Cleaning helps remove ..... from surfaces.
   a) bacteria **b)** wildfire **c)** health **d)** hygiene
10. This village is 1500 meters above sea ..... .
    a) source **b)** crop **c)** level **d)** scale
11. My flight to London was canceled because of a terrible ..... .
    a) heatstroke **b)** wildfire **c)** scarcity **d)** storm
12. Eslam ..... for the tickets online.
    a) paid **b)** looked **c)** felt **d)** sold
13. There are many animals ..... my grandfather's farm.
    a) to **b)** on **c)** of **d)** off

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eating healthy food and doing exercises can help us ..... illnesses.
   a) feel **b)** fight **c)** get **d)** have
2. The temperature is 38 ..... today. It's very hot.
   a) features **b)** levels **c)** degrees **d)** sources
3. My cousins were playing outside. They got wet in the ..... .
   a) rain **b)** wind **c)** wildfire **d)** drought
4. The air feels so ..... after the rain.
   a) dirty **b)** fresh **c)** dry **d)** high
5. I am going shopping tonight to look ..... a new dress for my sister's wedding.
   a) at **b)** out of **c)** forward **d)** for
6. One of the reasons for water scarcity is ..... change.
   a) climate **b)** plant **c)** dry **d)** health
7. The leaves ..... from the trees in autumn.
   a) fall **b)** pay **c)** feel **d)** fill
8. ..... cause great damage to the forests.
   a) Levels **b)** Fever **c)** Sources **d)** Wildfires
9. My parents traveled to a small town ..... the south of Spain for our vacation.
   a) on **b)** in **c)** at **d)** for
10. Marwa ..... from a bad headache because she stayed up late.
    a) covered **b)** washed **c)** suffered **d)** produced
11. The fever made her feel .....; not strong.
    a) weak **b)** fresh **c)** dry **d)** clean
12. The heavy rain caused a ..... and a lot of farms were damaged.
    a) drought **b)** flood **c)** scarcity **d)** lake
13. There are over seven ..... people living in the world.
    a) hundred **b)** million **c)** thousand **d)** billion
14. It is very hot today, so I turned on the ..... .
    a) temperature **b)** air conditioning **c)** television **d)** climate change

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Comparatives and superlatives — صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

A) The comparative of adjectives
المقارنة بين شيئين

e.g. • Adel is taller than Ramy.
• Reading is more useful than computer games.

We use comparatives to say what is the same or different about two things, people, or situations.

• نستخدم المقارنات لنقول ما هو المتشابه أو المختلف عن شيئين، شخصين أو موقفين. وتنقسم الصفات حسب النطق إلى:

- صفات قصيرة (Short adjectives) وهى صفات تتكون من مقطع واحد (One syllable).
مثل: (high - big - tall - old - wide - nice - hot)

- صفات طويلة (Long adjectives) وهى صفات تتكون من أكثر من مقطع (Two or more syllables).
مثل: (modern - crowded - amazing - wonderful - interesting)

1 Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

... adj. صفة + er + than ...

e.g. • This puzzle is easier than the last one.
• The Nile River is longer than the Amazon River.

2 Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

... more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة + than ...

e.g. • This book is more interesting than that one.
• The dog is less dangerous than the lion.

- عند السؤال نستخدم (Which) بمعنى أى / أيهما للتخيير كالتالى:

Which + (is/are) + (adj. er) / (more/less adj.) ...?

e.g. • Which is longer, the River Nile or the River Thames?
• Which is more useful, the mobile or the computer?

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 His car is certainly better because it's ..... (modern) than mine.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (more modern) لأنها مقارنة بين اثنين والصفة modern طويلة.

2 Turtles are ..... (slow) than rabbits.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (slower) لأنها مقارنة بين اثنين والصفة slow قصيرة.

B) The superlative of adjectives
صيغة التفضيل العليا

e.g. • The Nile is the longest river in the world.
• English is the most/ least difficult subject.

We use superlatives to express the highest degree of something.
- نستخدم الصيغ التفضيلية للتعبير عن أعلى درجة من شيء ما.

1 Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

... the + adj. صفة + est ...

e.g. • This is the **small**est room in the house.
• He is the **old**est member of the group.

2 Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

... the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. صفة ...

e.g. • This restaurant has the most **delicious** food in our town.
• He has the least **interesting** job in the office.

لاحظ

عند إضافة (er) أو (est) للصفة القصيرة المنتظمة، نتبع الآتي:
١) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (e)، نضيف فقط (r) أو (st).
- nice (nicer/nicest)
٢) إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف (er) أو (est).
- big (bigger/biggest)
٣) إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) قبله حرف ساكن، نحولها إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er) أو (est).
- easy (easier/easiest)

Common Exceptions — **استثناءات شائعة**

Adj./Adv. الصفة/الظرف		Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين		Superlative المقارنة بين مجموعة	
good/well	جيد/بشكل جيد	better (than)	أفضل/أحسن (من)	the best	الأفضل/الأحسن
bad/badly	سيئ/بشكل سيئ	worse (than)	أسوأ (من)	the worst	الأسوأ
far	بعيد	farther (than)	أبعد (من)	the farthest	الأبعد

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 The fridge is the ..... (more expensive) device in the kitchen.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (most expensive) لوجود (the) الدالة على أنها صيغة تفضيل عليا والصفة expensive طويلة.

2 Sami is ..... (good) student in the class at math.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (the best) لأنها مقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين والصفة good غير منتظمة.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My house is ..... than your house.
a) big **b)** bigger **c)** biggest **d)** the biggest

2. Marwan is ..... boy in our class.
a) the cleverest **b)** cleverest **c)** cleverer **d)** clever

3. A holiday by the sea is ..... than a holiday in the mountains.
a) good **b)** best **c)** the best **d)** better

4. The weather this summer is even ..... than last summer.
a) badly **b)** bad **c)** worst **d)** worse

5. Which is ..... dangerous animal in the world?
a) the most **b)** most **c)** the more **d)** more

6. Laila lives the ..... from the university among all her friends.
a) farther **b)** farther than **c)** farthest **d)** the farthest

7. That's ..... man in our street. He's about 198 cm tall.
a) the tallest **b)** tallest **c)** taller **d)** the taller

8. Villages are usually ..... than cities.
a) polluted **b)** more polluted **c)** less polluted **d)** as polluted

9. Which bridge is ....., the 6th October Bridge or the Qasr El Nil Bridge?
a) longest **b)** as long **c)** the longest **d)** longer

10. The red car is ..... expensive than the blue one.
a) fewer **b)** little **c)** less **d)** least

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My grandpa is ..... (oldest) in my family.
2. This book is the ..... (less) interesting in the library.
3. Tamer is ..... (nice) person that I know.
4. Science is ..... (difficult) than math.
5. It was sunnier yesterday ..... (then) today.
6. My brother is ..... (the noisier) than my sister.

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I think French is ..... difficult subject.
   a) most **b)** more **c)** the most **d)** the more
2. That's ..... pizza I've ever eaten!
   a) the best **b)** best **c)** better **d)** good
3. Hadeer is ..... with her new job than with her old one.
   a) happy **b)** happier **c)** happiest **d)** the happiest
4. In my opinion, my mom is ..... cook in the world.
   a) good **b)** better **c)** best **d)** the best
5. Tennis is less dangerous ..... football.
   a) this **b)** that **c)** then **d)** than
6. The new app is ..... to use than the old one.
   a) simplest **b)** simpler **c)** the simplest **d)** simpler than
7. The beach is the ..... place in the city.
   a) more attractive **b)** attractive
   c) most attractive **d)** attractive than
8. This is the ..... place I traveled to.
   a) far **b)** the farther **c)** farthest **d)** farther
9. This is the ..... game in the sports center; it's my favorite.
   a) amazing **b)** more amazing
   c) less amazing **d)** most amazing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Traveling by plane is ..... (expensive) than traveling by bus.
2. Physics is ..... (bad) than chemistry.
3. This is ..... (most) beautiful painting in the museum.
4. This is the ..... (hot) day of the summer so far.
5. Well done! Your drawing is ..... (good) than mine.
6. The new restaurant is ..... (popular) than the one in the city center.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Write it right

How to write about water scarcity كيفية الكتابة عن ندرة المياه

(1) What is water scarcity?

(2) What causes water scarcity?

(3) What effects can it cause?

Water scarcity

(4) How can we solve the problem of water scarcity?

(5) What do we need to do?

Example

Water scarcity is a big problem in many parts of the world. It happens when there is not enough water for people to use. This can be because of drought or overuse of water. When there is not enough water, people cannot grow food or stay clean. Animals and plants also suffer. To solve this problem, people should save water by using less water. We should build better water systems and protect water sources. Everyone needs to work together to make sure there is enough fresh, clean water for all. Water is very important for life.

Check Point

Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Droughts"

TEST YOURSELF

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where does the family live?
   a) On a farm. **b)** In a lake. **c)** On a river. **d)** In a city.
2. Which plants does the family grow?
   a) Pear **b)** Mango **c)** Tomato **d)** Apple
3. What is the cause of losing their plants?
   a) A flood. **b)** A drought. **c)** Rain. **d)** Wildfire.
4. What is the father looking for?
   a) A farm. **b)** A car. **c)** A house. **d)** A job.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Adel and Anwar are discussing climate change.

Adel : Did you notice the weather was different?
Anwar : (1)..... . It feels hotter than usual.
Adel : What is the cause of that?
Anwar : (2)..... .
Adel : (3).....?
Anwar : Yes, it has a very bad effect on the environment.
Adel : What else can climate change cause?
Anwar : (4)..... .
Adel : Storms! (5).....?
Anwar : We can plant more trees.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

affects – then – crops – cause – than

Climate change affects all of us in many ways. The weather is hotter in summer. Sometimes, there are more storms and heavy rain, which can (1)..... floods. In winter, it might be warmer (2)..... normal. Climate change also (3)..... the food we eat. We can't grow some (4)..... . We all need to help stop climate change.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We need to ..... action to solve the problem of climate change.
   a) get **b)** make **c)** do **d)** take
2. Brushing your teeth twice a day is important for good ..... .
   a) surface **b)** drought **c)** rain **d)** hygiene
3. Pollution has a bad ..... on health.
   a) effect **b)** cause **c)** level **d)** lack

4. We need a ..... to measure the temperature changes.
   a) effect **b)** scale **c)** source **d)** crop
5. A ..... of water caused crops to die.
   a) lake **b)** lack **c)** back **d)** sack
6. Water scarcity is one of the most ..... problems facing the world today.
   a) worrying **b)** positive **c)** fresh **d)** useful
7. Rice is an important ..... in many countries.
   a) crop **b)** drought **c)** scale **d)** degree
8. My sister is ..... person in my family.
   a) younger **b)** youngest **c)** the younger **d)** the youngest
9. I think math is ..... interesting than English. I don't like numbers.
   a) more **b)** most **c)** less **d)** least
10. My mom's car isn't very fast. She wants a ..... one.
    a) faster than **b)** faster **c)** the faster **d)** fastest

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Winter is ..... (cold) season of the year.
2. Ahmed is ..... (good) at English than Samir.
3. My English teacher is ..... (than) kindest teacher I know.
4. This story is ..... (most) interesting than the other one.

6 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Climate change"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Alexandria is a very ..... (larger) city.
2. Cairo is Egypt's ..... (the biggest) city.
3. Bikes are ..... (expensive) than planes.

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 60 - 63

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

audience (n)	جمهور	melt (ed) (v)	ينصهر
basalt (n)	بازلت (حجر بركانى)	mineral (n)	معدن
bird feeder (n)	وعاء طعام الطيور	planet (n)	كوكب
consume (d) (v)	يستهلك	re-use (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
electronic (adj)	إلكترونى	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
energy (n)	طاقة (قدرة على العمل)	rock (n)	صخرة
features (n)	صفات / سمات/ خصائص	sandstone (n)	حجر رملى
geology (n)	علم الجيولوجيا	save (d) (v)	يوفر/يدخر/ينقذ/يحفظ
hanging basket (n)	سلة معلقة	statue (n)	تمثال
ideal (adj)	مثالى	talk (n)	حديث
layer (n)	طبقة	tips (n)	نصائح
marble (n)	رخام	trash (n)	سلة المهملات

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bath (n)	حوض استحمام	material (n)	مادة خام
container (n)	وعاء/حاوية	natural (adj)	طبيعى
design (ed) (v)	يصمم	power (n)	قوة/طاقة (مشغلة)
Earth's crust (n)	القشرة الأرضية	recycling bin (n)	سلة إعادة التدوير
form (ed) (v)	يتكون	result (n)	نتيجة
fuel (n)	وقود	shape (n)	شكل
generate (d) (v)	يولد	swap (ped) (v)	يتبادل
light (n)	ضوء	waste (d) (v)	يهدر/يبدد

Check Point

Choose and complete: slide – results – trash – tips

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. My grandma gives me useful ..... to improve my writing skills.
2. They posted the exam ..... on the school website.
3. The beach became cleaner after we picked up the ..... .

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

have >	a bath	يستحم	make >	a difference to	يُحدث اختلافًا لـ
	a shower	يأخذ دشا		electricity	يولد كهرباء
set >	the alarm	يضبط المنبه			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

agree on	يوافق على	in use	قيد الاستخدام
at the bottom	فى القاع	on stand-by	فى وضع الاستعداد

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن	solid	صلب	liquid	سائل

Check Point

Choose and complete: in – on – make – liquid – do

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

1. Helping to clean up the park will ..... a difference to our community.
2. This device is ..... use, so let's pick another one to play with.
3. The rock is a hard solid. "Solid" is opposite in meaning to ..... .

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 الشىء + is/are + made of + المادة الخام — يصنع من

- The Sphinx at Giza is **made of** sandstone.
- Many statues from Ancient Greece are **made of** marble.

2 **Places** — أماكن

Ancient Greece	اليونان القديمة	the Giant's Causeway	الجسر العملاق
Ireland	أيرلندا	the Sphinx	أبو الهول

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

air conditioning	نظام تكييف الهواء	a machine to cool your home
bird feeder	وعاء طعام الطيور	a garden container of food for birds
consume	يستهلك	to use something
geology	جيولوجيا	the study of rocks
hanging basket	سلة معلقة للنبات	a container for plants
on stand-by	فى وضع الاستعداد	not switched on but using power
save energy	يوفر طاقة	not waste electricity or fuel

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة		Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها	
consume (v)	يستهلك	use up	يستهلك
switch on/off (v)	يفتح/يغلق	turn on/off	يفتح/يغلق

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة		Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة	
contain (v)	يحتوى على	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	container (n)	وعاء/حاوية
feed (v)	يطعم			feeder (n)	وعاء طعام

Prefix البادئة

Prefix — البادئة	Function — الوظيفة	Word — الكلمة		The new word — الكلمة الجديدة	
re-	تعطى معنى الإعادة	use (v)	يستخدم	re-use (v)	يعيد استخدام ...

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3: Saving energy

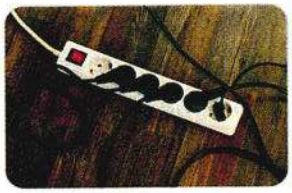
Pre-reading question:

- Do you save energy at home?

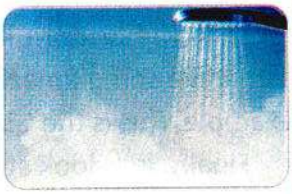
Read and listen to the text. What do you think is the best title for the poster? *SB page 60*

Air conditioning, hot water, and electronic devices in our homes all use a lot of electricity. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources, which can make climate change worse. Let's help our planet - let's save energy at home!

a Remember to always switch off lights, TVs, computers, games consoles, tablets, and all of your electronic devices when they aren't in use.
Don't leave them on stand-by as this still consumes a lot of energy. And don't use more than one device at the same time!



b There are about 150 to 200 liters of water in an average bath, but there's only between 30 and 80 liters in a five-minute shower. Showers are a great way to save water and energy. But don't spend a long time in the shower: set the alarm on your phone for five minutes and then stop!



c There are lots of things in our trash that we can recycle or even re-use at home. Plastic bottles are a good example. Re-use them to make other things, for example a bird feeder, or a hanging basket for your plants.

Post-reading question:

- How can we use recycled plastic bottles? .....

Lesson 4: Geology

SB page 62

Listening Text

Listen to part one of a talk. Number the features in the order you hear them.

Teacher: Good morning class. Today we're looking at different types of rocks for module 3 on the structure of the Earth. Tarek, please show the first slide. That's it, thank you.

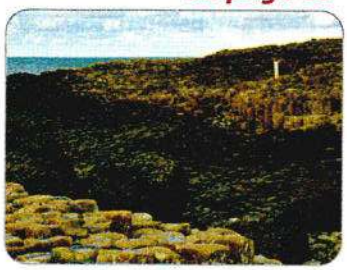
The Earth's surface(1) is, as you can see, made up of layers(2) of rocks. Rocks are solids(3) which are made of minerals(4). Rocks can be grouped into three types depending on(5) which minerals they contain and how they were formed.

(1) سطح
(2) طبقات
(3) صلب
(4) معادن
(5) يعتمد على

Pre-listening question:

- What kinds of rocks do you know?

Now listen to Part 2. Match the pictures (a-c) to the rock types (1-3). *SB page 62*



Teacher: The three types of rock we're looking at today are sandstone(1), basalt(2), and marble(3).

Sandstone is usually found near the Earth's surface. It's formed from the broken parts of other rocks and material when they press together. The youngest layers of sandstone are at the top. The oldest layers are at the bottom. The Ancient Egyptians used sandstone to build things, like the Sphinx in Giza.

Now, if rock becomes very, very hot, it melts into liquid(4). Basalt is a type of rock that forms when liquid rock cools again and becomes solid. We find these rocks in the bottom layers of the Earth's surface. It can make some amazing natural(5) shapes. Here's an example. This is the Giant's Causeway in Ireland.

Finally, let's look at marble. Marble is also found in the bottom layers of the Earth's surface. It forms when other types of rock get very hot and the minerals in them change form. Marble is a very strong type of rock. It is often used to make statues, like this one here from Ancient Greece.

(1) حجر رملى (2) حجر البازلت

(3) الرخام (4) سائل

(5) طبيعى

Post-listening questions:

1. How is marble formed? .....
2. Mention three kinds of rocks from the passage. .....

Complete this part of the audioscript with the missing words. *SB page 63*

Now, if rock becomes very, very hot, it melts into liquid. Basalt is **a** type of rock that forms when liquid rock cools again and becomes solid. We find these rocks in the bottom layers of **the** Earth's surface. It can make some amazing natural shapes. Here's **an** example. This is **the** Giant's Causeway in Ireland.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I read an interesting book about the ..... of the animals.
   a) features **b)** grains **c)** marbles **d)** minerals
2. This historic building is made of ..... .
   a) marbles **b)** geology **c)** shapes **d)** baskets
3. This weather is ..... for a picnic. It's very fine outside.
   a) ideal **b)** renewable **c)** eco-friendly **d)** broken
4. Youmna likes to ..... old things. This will help the environment.
   a) waste **b)** form **c)** recycle **d)** cool
5. My parents had a ..... about healthy eating habits.
   a) feature **b)** grain **c)** talk **d)** marble
6. Young people usually have more ..... .
   a) energy **b)** source **c)** audience **d)** machine
7. We need more ..... to finish the project.
   a) results **b)** effects **c)** materials **d)** feeders
8. The singer waved to the ..... during the concert.
   a) title **b)** audience **c)** container **d)** planet
9. Laila had a heatstroke as a ..... of walking in the sun.
   a) device **b)** planet **c)** result **d)** source
10. We put seeds in the bird ..... in our garden for different birds.
    a) feeder **b)** tablet **c)** flag **d)** light
11. Earth is called the green ..... in the solar system.
    a) plant **b)** plane **c)** planet **d)** plate
12. We should ..... less plastic to help the environment.
    a) cool **b)** save **c)** waste **d)** consume
13. We should replace vehicles that use fossil ..... with vehicles that use green energy.
    a) devices **b)** fuels **c)** sources **d)** falls
14. We need to manage our ..... carefully to avoid waste.
    a) results **b)** baths **c)** baskets **d)** resources

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To help our planet, we should ..... energy.
   a) set **b)** make **c)** waste **d)** save
2. We can make hanging ..... for our plants from old things.
   a) containers **b)** baskets **c)** consoles **d)** feeders
3. Switch ..... the lights when you leave the room.
   a) on **b)** off **c)** up **d)** down
4. The Earth's ..... is the solid outer layer of the planet.
   a) material **b)** machine **c)** crust **d)** result
5. Many ..... are used in making electronics and jewelry.
   a) minerals **b)** alarms **c)** grains **d)** results
6. To save water, ... a shower, not a bath.
   a) go **b)** do **c)** have **d)** make
7. We should ..... old things to save energy.
   a) re-use **b)** waste **c)** set **d)** take
8. The teacher asked us to be more ..... in the home.
   a) broken **b)** possible **c)** electronic **d)** eco-friendly
9. Most electronic devices in our homes use a lot of ..... .
   a) consoles **b)** electricity **c)** planets **d)** resources
10. To get up early, ... your alarm clock to wake you up.
    a) do **b)** make **c)** set **d)** take
11. Please, switch off your electric devices when they aren't ..... use.
    a) in **b)** on **c)** at **d)** by
12. They agreed ..... how many hours children should have to play games.
    a) in **b)** at **c)** on **d)** about
13. The teacher asked us many questions in our group to help us ..... new ideas.
    a) do **b)** generate **c)** make **d)** set
14. You shouldn't leave your devices ..... stand-by as this still consumes a lot of energy.
    a) in **b)** on **c)** to **d)** for

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ **Quiz** الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Definite and Indefinite Articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة

Articles (the/a-an/no article) الأدوات

The definite article

the

تستخدم أداة المعرفة the:

١- قبل الاسم المحدد والمعرف تمامًا.

e.g. • I bought the **book** we saw yesterday.

٢- مع الاسم الذى تم ذكره فى الجملة للمرة الثانية (الأولى نكرة والثانية معرفة).

• I saw **a dog** in the street. The **dog** is very dangerous.

٣- مع الأشياء الفريدة فى الكون مثل (الأرض - الشمس - القمر - السماء - أسماء البحار والأنهار والمحيطات ...).

e.g. • The **Earth** is our planet.

• The **moon** appears in the evening.

• The **Red Sea** is very deep.

٤- مع أسماء الأماكن العامة والمشهورة والسينما والمسرح وأماكن الترفيه.

e.g. • the zoo - the Hilton Hotel - the cinema - the theater - the club

٥- مع أسماء الآلات الموسيقية بغرض العزف والممارسة والتعليم.

e.g. • I play the **piano** every Friday.

٦- مع أسماء البلاد المركبة أو اختصارات البلاد.

e.g. • the United Kingdom - the UK - the United States of America - the USA

٧- مع الاختراعات والاكتشافات بوجه عام.

e.g. • The **plane** makes the world a small village.

٨- مع الاسم المفرد للدلالة على فصيل كامل.

• The **rich** should help the **poor**.

The indefinite article

a/an

• وهى أداة نكرة تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد.

- He likes a **girl** in our class.

- I saw an **animal** in the street yesterday.

an

تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (vowels) (a ، e ، i ، o ، u).

الأصوات المتحركة:

an **e**lephant - an **a**pple - an **i**mpact - an **u**mbrella - an **o**x

لاحظ ما يلى: • صوت الحروف (X - S - M) فى بداية بعض الاختصارات تأخذ صوت (e) المتحرك فتأخذ (an)

(an **X**-ray - an **S**MS - an **M**P3 player)

- إذا بدأت الكلمة بحرف صامت نتعامل مع الحرف الذى بعده فى النطق

(an **h**our - an **h**onest man)

a

تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن (consonants) (باقى الحروف غير المتحركة)

(a **b**oy - a **c**at - a **d**og - a **f**rog - a **g**irl - a **h**orse - a **j**ug - a **c**amel - a **l**ion - a **m**an)

- صوت حرف (u) إذا نطق كـ (يو) يأخذ (a)

(a **u**niform - a **u**niversity - a **Eu**ropean city - a **u**nion)

لاحظ أن: - نستخدم (a - an) أمام الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد وغير المحدد أو غير معرف تمامًا.

e.g. - I saw a **man** in the street. - They hunted an **ox**.

- نستخدم (a - an) أمام الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد للإشارة إلى واحد من المجموعة.

e.g. - I borrowed a **book** from the library. - I ate an **apple** yesterday.

- نستخدم (a - an) أمام أسماء الوظائف بصفة عامة.

e.g. - My father is a **doctor**. - He wants to be an **engineer**.

- نستخدم (a - an) أمام الصفة التى بعدها اسم مفرد يُعد وغير محدد.

e.g. - Paris is a **European city**. - I'm an **Egyptian boy**.

no article

لا نستخدم أى أداة مع:

- أسماء العلم (أسماء الأشخاص - أسماء البلاد والقارات - أسماء الأيام والشهور - أسماء المواد الدراسية - أسماء اللغات - أسماء الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة والهوايات).

(Ali - Egypt - Africa - Monday - May - science - Arabic - football - reading ...)

- الاسم الجمع بوجه عام.

- Teachers work at school. - Giraffes have got long necks.

- الاسم المفرد الذى لا يُعد بوجه عام والأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام والوجبات بوجه عام.

- I like rice very much. - We can't live without love for each other.

- مع كلمات مثل (home - bed - work).

لاحظ أن: - إذا تم تخصيص وتحديد أى مما سبق نكتب (the).

- The **teachers** at my school are kind. - The **lunch** we ate together was delicious.

- أسماء الجبال والجزر والبحيرات المفرد منها لا يأخذ أى أداة والجمع منها يأخذ (the).

(Mount Everest - the Alps)

- الألقاب التى بعدها اسم شخص لا تأخذ أى أداة أما إذا جاءت بدون اسم شخص تأخذ (the).

King Soliman - the King

- إذا جاءت كلمة (language) بعد اسم اللغة نكتب (the).

English - the English language

- بعض الأماكن إذا كانت تعبر عن مكانها وغرضها الطبيعى لا تأخذ أى أداة أما إذا جاءت بغرض مؤقت مثل الزيارة تأخذ (the).

- I go to **school** at seven every day. - My father went to the **school** to ask about me.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's ..... interesting book.
   a) some **b)** an **c)** the **d)** a
2. There was ..... paper on the table.
   a) no article **b)** a **c)** an **d)** the
3. I don't have ..... car.
   a) it **b)** an **c)** a **d)** no article
4. ..... apple fell from the tree.
   a) A **b)** An **c)** The **d)** No article
5. I met my uncle at ..... airport.
   a) no article **b)** the **c)** an **d)** a
6. Do you want to have ..... lunch with me?
   a) a **b)** an **c)** the **d)** no article
7. I want to learn how to play ..... .
   a) the piano **b)** a piano **c)** piano **d)** pianos
8. We bought some cheese. ..... cheese was delicious.
   a) A **b)** The **c)** An **d)** No article
9. I never eat ..... fish.
   a) the **b)** a **c)** an **d)** no article
10. Bossi has a dog and some cats. ..... is really cute.
    a) Dog **b)** An dog **c)** The dog **d)** A dog

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father is ..... (engineer).
2. Do you like ..... (the football)?
3. ..... (The lion) are dangerous.
4. Who is ..... (best) player in the world?
5. He will come back in ..... (a) hour.
6. Where is ..... (book) I was reading?

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Is ..... shining today?
   a) sun **b)** the sun **c)** a sun **d)** an sun
2. She is ..... actress. I like all her movies.
   a) an **b)** a **c)** the **d)** no article
3. Do you have ..... dog?
   a) the **b)** an **c)** no article **d)** a
4. She is reading ..... book.
   a) the English **b)** a English **c)** an English **d)** English
5. Did you get ..... flowers that I sent you?
   a) no article **b)** the **c)** a **d)** an
6. Is there ..... old woman in your family?
   a) an **b)** a **c)** the **d)** no article
7. He ate ..... and two apples.
   a) orange **b)** a orange **c)** an orange **d)** the orange
8. We arrived at ..... station very late.
   a) an **b)** no article **c)** a **d)** the
9. Did you buy ..... we looked at yesterday?
   a) some car **b)** the car **c)** a car **d)** car
10. I had ..... orange juice for lunch.
    a) an **b)** a **c)** the **d)** no article

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We want to buy ..... (new) car.
2. There are many stars in ..... (sky).
3. Many people listen to ..... (radio) at night.
4. Mr Said married ..... (young) woman.
5. Shall we meet at ..... (same) place tomorrow?
6. **A:** Which bike do you like? **B:** ..... (red) one.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing

How to write about ways to save energy at home

كيفية الكتابة عن طرق توفير الطاقة فى المنزل

(1) How can we save electricity at home?

(2) What can we do to use less water?

(3) Why is it important to turn off the lights when we leave a room?

Ways to save energy at home

(4) How can we reduce the waste we create at home?

(5) What can we do to save energy while cooking?

Example

Ways to save energy at home

Saving energy is very important for us and for our environment, so we should all do our best to save energy at home. To save electricity, we can turn off lights and all devices when we're not using them. To use less water, we should take shorter showers. It's important to turn off lights when we leave a room to save electricity. To keep the house cool without using too much air conditioning, we can use fans and keep curtains closed during the hottest part of the day. We can recycle paper, plastic, and cans. Using renewable sources مصادر للطاقة المتجددة like wind or solar energy is good because they are better for the environment. To save energy while cooking, we can use cover pots to cook food faster and use less energy.

Check Point

Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Saving energy"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 5 Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Being eco-friendly means looking after our planet by making small changes in our daily lives. Here are some easy tips to be more eco-friendly at home. We could use less water when we wash dishes or clean our teeth. We should turn off the tap when we don't need it. We can also save electricity by turning off lights when they are not in use. This helps to save energy. We shouldn't forget to recycle ***almost*** everything at home like, paper, plastic, and glass. We could put **them** in recycling bins, so we can re-use them again. We can help the environment by planting a small garden or keeping plants inside our home. Plants clean the air and make our homes healthier.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to? .....
3. In your opinion, what else can we do to save energy? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. To save electricity at home, we ..... when not in use.
   a) leave lights on **b)** turn off lights
   c) use electricity **d)** run all devices
5. Plants can ..... in our homes.
   a) turn lights off **b)** clean the air
   c) use much water **d)** make the air dirty
6. The word "***almost***" means ..... .
   a) whole **b)** exactly **c)** nearly **d)** nothing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I saw many ..... in the museum.
   a) statues **b)** containers **c)** machines **d)** folders
2. We need ..... to run many machines.
   a) electricity **b)** maps **c)** flags **d)** tablets
3. We need to rethink the way we ..... energy.
   a) light **b)** plant **c)** cool **d)** consume
4. This ..... is full of water. You should empty some water from it.
   a) map **b)** container **c)** fuel **d)** shower

5. Put the paper in the ..... to re-use it again.
   a) dialog **b)** bird feeder **c)** hanging basket **d)** recycling bin
6. Helping others can ..... a difference to their lives.
   a) make **b)** set **c)** do **d)** get
7. The ..... was used to cut the metal into different shapes.
   a) machine **b)** planet **c)** energy **d)** trash
8. What is ..... title of that book we read last night?
   a) the **b)** a **c)** an **d)** no article
9. Everybody knows that ..... cats are very independent animals.
   a) the **b)** a **c)** an **d)** no article
10. I have ..... dog named Fox.
    a) the **b)** any **c)** an **d)** a

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (The Spain) is a beautiful country.
2. My uncle lives in ..... (a) USA.
3. ..... (The) apple a day keeps the doctor away.
4. Do you have ..... (umbrella) for me?

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"How to save energy at home"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father is ..... (police) officer.
2. ..... (Police) have special uniforms.
3. Sara is Mr Emad's ..... (the youngest) daughter.

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 64 – 67

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

documentary (n)	وثائقى	recyclable (adj)	قابلة لإعادة التدوير
dive (d) (v)	يغوص	save (d) (v)	يوفر/ينقذ
poem (n)	قصيدة	worth (n)	قيمة/ثمن
poet (n)	شاعر		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bees (n)	نحل	tap (n)	صنبور/حنفية
cycle (v) (d)	يركب دراجة	tech (n/adj)	تقنية/تقنى
eco blog (n)	مدونة صديقة للبيئة	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
human (n)	إنسان/بشر	wet (adj)	مبلل

Check Point

Choose and complete: cycle – ride – save – wet

1. It's our duty to ..... our planet.
2. I usually ..... to school. It's healthy.
3. My shirt was ..... because of the rain.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

grow	> hotter	يزداد سخونة.	take	> a shower	يأخذ حمامًا/ دشًا
make	> changes	يُحدث تغييرات			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

decide to	يقرر أن	look for	يبحث عن
good for	جيد لـ	travel to	يسافر إلى
look after	يعتنى بـ		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
drive يقود	drove	driven	show يعرض/يوضح	showed	shown
grow يزرع/ينمو	grew	grown	throw يرمى/يلقى	threw	thrown

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – threw – make – at

1. Noha always looks ..... new books to read at the library.
2. He ..... the ball high into the air for the dog to catch.
3. We should ..... changes to our plans for the weekend because of the rain.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية والتعبيرات اللغوية والكلمات وعكسها.

Structure of the poem — بنية القصيدة

blank line (n)	سطر فارغ	rhyme (v/n)	يتناغم/قافية/سجع
line (n)	خط/سطر	stanza (n)	مقطع شعرى
personification (n)	التجسيد	structure (n)	بناء/بنية/هيكل

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Prepositions of transport: — حروف الجر الخاصة بالمواصلات:

by - يتم استخدامه قبل وسيلة المواصلات مباشرة بدون كلمة بينهما.

- I travel to work by train/bus/metro.

on - يتم استخدامه قبل وسيلة المواصلات التى يمكن التحرك داخلها بسهولة يشترط وجود كلمة بينهما.

- I travel to work on a train/a bus/a plane.

in - يتم استخدامه قبل وسيلة المواصلات التى لا يمكن التحرك داخلها بسهولة يشترط وجود كلمة بينهما.

- I travel in a car.

2 Other/another/others:

other + اسم جمع — آخر

- Electric buses are better for the environment than other **types** of transport.

another + اسم مفرد — آخر

- I want another **book** instead of this one.

others (بدون اسم بعدها) — آخرون

- You shouldn't tell others this sort of information.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

look after	يعتنى بـ	to take care of
worth	قيمة/ثمن	the value[1] of something
dive	يغوص	jump into the water
earth	الأرض	the planet we live on

(1) قيمة

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
look after (v) — يعتنى بـ	care — يهتم
worth (n) — قيمة	value — قيمة

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
recycle (v) يعيد التدوير	-able	تحويل الفعل لصفة	recyclable (adj) قابلة لإعادة التدوير

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How can we look after our planet?

Lesson 5: Literature

Helping the earth

SB page 65

Stanza 1

As the earth grows hotter and wetter,
We need to learn to look after it better.
A drought here, a flood there,
We can help, no matter where!

Stanza 2

Turn off lights that you don't need,
Turn off that tap, others are in need.
Walk or cycle rather than drive.
Don't throw plastic where dolphins dive.

Stanza 3

Plant more flowers, plant more trees,
For the birds and for the bees.
We must try for all we're worth,
So we can save our Planet Earth!

Moira Dutton

Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think the earth is getting hotter and wetter?.....
2. Name two things the poet thinks we should stop doing.....

Lesson 5: Literature

SB page 65

Identifying the structure of a poem.

Every poem has a different structure[1]. The structure helps to show us what the poem is about or how the poet felt when he or she wrote it. When you look at a poem and you want to know what structure it has, notice these things about it:

1. **How many stanzas[2] it has** - Stanzas are the different parts of a poem that usually have a blank line between them.
2. **Which words rhyme[3]** - When two words have the same sound in them, they rhyme.
3. Personification[4] -When the poet gives qualities of a person to a thing.

(1) بنية
(2) مقاطع شعرية
(3) يتناغم
(4) التجسيد

Lesson 6: Writing

SB page 66

Pre-reading question: - How can we save energy?

Read the text. What type of text is it?

Rami's eco blog

Hi, my name's Rami. Last year, I watched a documentary[1] about the effects[2] of human[3] activities on the planet. After that, I decided to make some changes in my life **because** I wanted to be more eco-friendly. In the past, I always traveled to school by bus, **but** now I ride my bike to school. It only takes 15 minutes, it's healthy **and** it's fun! Before, I never put my trash in the recycling bins **and** I never thought about if it was recyclable[4] or not. Now, I always look for the right type of recycling bin and put my trash in it, **because** I understand how important it is to re-use the Earth's resources[5].

Now, I also try to switch off all my tech devices[6] - like my laptop **and** my games console - when I'm not using them, **because** I know that this saves energy and that's good for the planet, too. We can all do things that help in small ways! What changes have you made to help the planet? Leave a comment below.

(1) فيلم وثائقي
(2) تأثيرات
(3) الإنسان
(4) قابل لإعادة التدوير
(5) مصادر
(6) أجهزة

Post-reading questions:

1. How did Ali travel to school in the past?.....
2. What does Ali do to save electricity?.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He learned a lot about the wildlife from a/an ..... .

a) eclipse **b)** documentary **c)** poem **d)** eco blog

2. Paper, wood, and plastic are ..... materials.

a) tech **b)** dark **c)** recyclable **d)** impotent

3. She wrote a ..... about her mother and read it aloud to us.

a) poem **b)** poet **c)** harmony **d)** rhythm

4. ..... have a great ability of thinking rather than animals.

a) Humans **b)** Crickets **c)** Insects **d)** Messages

5. I like to ..... changes to my room.

a) ride **b)** take **c)** make **d)** do

6. Can you help me look ..... my book? I can't find it.

a) up **b)** after **c)** at **d)** for

7. Write your name at the top of the ..... .

a) line **b)** hyphen **c)** stanza **d)** structure

8. I like writing poems, so I want to become a ..... .

a) poet **b)** stanza **c)** line **d)** rhythm

9. I try to switch off all my ..... devices to save energy.

a) wisdom **b)** tech **c)** poet **d)** eclipse

10. Children are very happy to ..... in the swimming pool.

a) cycle **b)** walk **c)** drive **d)** dive

11. She forgot to turn off the ....., so there was water all over the floor.

a) tap **b)** tape **c)** tip **d)** light

12. I will look ..... her child when she is at work.

a) at **b)** in **c)** after **d)** out

13. Sameh enjoys ..... to work. It's very healthy.

a) showing **b)** cycling **c)** throwing **d)** turning

14. We never know the ..... of water till it dries.

a) bird **b)** glide **c)** worth **d)** earth

C Language

Conjunctions أدوات الربط

Conjunctions are words we use to join two parts of a sentence together.

أدوات الربط هى الكلمات التى نستخدمها لربط جزأين من الجملة معًا مثل: (and – but – because – so)

1 and

We use the conjunction "and" to add information.

تستخدم أداة الربط «و» عند إضافة معلومة.

e.g.
- We visited the museum and the park.
- She likes to read books and write stories.
- The cat slept on the couch and the dog slept on the floor.

2 but

We use the conjunction "but" to contrast information.

تستخدم أداة الربط «ولكن» عند التناقض.

e.g.
- I wanted to go for a walk, but it started raining.
- Ali loves pizza, but he doesn't like cheese.
- They invited us to the party, but we couldn't go.

3 because

We use the conjunction "because" to explain information or give a reason for something.

تستخدم أداة الربط «لأن» عند إعطاء سبب.

e.g.
- Merna is happy because she got a new job.
- We missed the bus because we woke up late.
- My sister went to bed early because she was very tired.

4 so

We use the conjunction "so" to indicate a result for something.

تستخدم أداة الربط «لذلك» عند إعطاء نتيجة لفعل ما.

e.g.
- It was raining, so we stayed indoors.
- Waleed didn't eat breakfast, so he was hungry by lunchtime.
- She studied hard for the exam, so she got a good mark.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We bought ice cream ..... (so) it was a hot day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (because) لأن الجملة التى تليها سبب.

2 The movie was interesting, ... (and) the ending was very bad.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (but) لأنها تعبر عن تناقض.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The dress is beautiful, ... it's too expensive.
   a) but **b)** so **c)** and **d)** because
2. He didn't eat dinner ..... he wasn't hungry.
   a) because **b)** and **c)** so **d)** before
3. Eman wanted to buy a new phone, ... she didn't have enough money.
   a) and **b)** so **c)** while **d)** but
4. My brothers studied for the test ..... completed their homework.
   a) so **b)** and **c)** because **d)** therefore
5. Nabil was excited ..... it was his birthday.
   a) after **b)** during **c)** because **d)** but
6. I was tired ..... I stayed up late studying.
   a) and **b)** because **c)** but **d)** so
7. It was so cold, ... the kids played indoors.
   a) and **b)** because **c)** so **d)** but
8. We climbed up the mountain ..... enjoyed the view.
   a) because **b)** so **c)** after **d)** and
9. He practiced basketball ..... improved his skills.
   a) and **b)** because **c)** so **d)** but
10. She was feeling unwell, ... she stayed home.
    a) and **b)** so **c)** but **d)** but

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I wore a coat ..... (so) it was cold outside.
2. Tom bought milk ..... (but) bread from the store.
3. I like to read books ..... (because) play soccer.
4. He was late for the meeting ..... (so) his car broke down.
5. It's hard work, ... (and) he enjoys it.
6. Basma woke up early ..... (but) went for a run.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing

How to be more eco-friendly

كيفية أن تكون صديقًا للبيئة

Being eco-friendly

- **(1)** What are easy ways to save energy at home?
- **(2)** Why is it important to save water?
- **(3)** Why is recycling important for our environment?
- **(4)** How does planting trees help stop climate change?
- **(5)** What is the importance of recycling bins?

Example

Being eco-friendly

I usually used plastic bags, but now I bring my own cloth bags to the shops. To save energy, I turn off lights and devices when I don't need them. Saving water is important because it is an important resource. Taking shorter showers helps save water. Eco-friendly actions like using recyclable bottles and planting trees are great for the environment. Recycling is important because it reduces trash and helps make new things from old materials. Planting trees helps fight climate change by cleaning the air. Recycling bins make it easy to sort recyclables from trash. Let's all help our planet by being more eco-friendly!

Check Point

Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Helping our planet"

1 Complete the following dialog:

Nasser is telling Marwan about how to be eco-friendly.

Nasser : Did you think about being more eco-friendly, lately?

Marwan : No, I (1)..... . What can I do?

Nasser : You can save energy at home.

Marwan : (2)..... can I save energy?

Nasser : You can save energy at home by turning off lights when you're not using them.

Marwan : What else can I do?

Nasser : You (3)..... have a bath. Having a bath consumes much water.

Marwan : What else can I (4).....?

Nasser : You can put your trash in recycling bins.

Marwan : That's (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... are important insects because they give us honey.

a) Ants **b)** Poets **c)** Bees **d)** Birds

2. I usually ..... a shower before having my breakfast.

a) go **b)** take **c)** save **d)** draw

3. A ..... is a group of lines in a poem.

a) structure **b)** stanza **c)** reader **d)** poet

4. I sent a text ..... to my friend to invite him to my brother's wedding.

a) email **b)** poem **c)** human **d)** message

5. Schools must meet the challenge of new ..... .

a) blogs **b)** animals **c)** technology **d)** ways

6. Why did you decide ..... look for a new job?

a) to **b)** at **c)** in **d)** for

7. A number of products are now packaged in ..... materials.
   a) documentary **b)** long **c)** loud **d)** recyclable
8. Amira and Hanaa cleaned the house ..... organized their rooms.
   a) and **b)** so **c)** but **d)** because
9. My cousins moved to a new city ..... their father got a new job.
   a) because **b)** but **c)** so **d)** and
10. I'm tired, ... I have to finish this project.
   a) and **b)** because **c)** so **d)** but

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She studied hard, ... (so) she didn't pass the exam.
2. We watched a movie ..... (because) ate sandwiches.
3. Sarah smiled ..... (and) she got good news.
4. They tried their best, ... (so) they lost the game.

4 Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. his – changes – **Adel** – to – some – decided – in – life - make

   .....

2. was – were – so – **Salma** – her parents – late, – worried.

   .....

3. off – need – lights – those – **Turn** – you – don't

   .....

5 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"How to be eco-friendly"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He's intelligent, ... (so) lazy.
2. ..... (But) rain was heavy, we stayed home.
3. The food was delicious, ... (so) it was expensive.

General Exercises on Unit 5

A Listening

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did Ali watch?

a) A film. **b)** A show.

c) A play. **d)** A documentary.

2. When did he watch it?

a) Last year. **b)** Last weekend.

c) Last month. **d)** Yesterday.

3. What was it about?

a) Plants. **b)** Human activities.

c) Our planet. **d)** His family.

4. What did he want to be?

a) Rhyming. **b)** Renewable.

c) Eco-friendly. **d)** Recyclable.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Dahab is visiting Egypt.

Nagwa : Hi Dahab, did you visit the Pyramids?

Dahab : No, I didn't. But I want to go! (1)..... ?

Nagwa : They are in Giza.

Dahab : What other places should I visit?

Nagwa : (2)..... .

Dahab : Is there a desert in Egypt, too?

Nagwa : (3)..... . Sahara Desert is in Egypt.

Dahab : (4)..... ?

Nagwa : The best place to visit in summer is Hurghada.

Dahab : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

save – and – so – making – Recycling

Becoming eco-friendly means helping our planet by (1)..... small changes in our habits. We can turn off lights when we leave a room to (2)..... energy. Also, taking shorter showers helps save water. (3)..... paper, plastic, (4)..... cans reduces trash. Let's all work together to be eco-friendly!

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Climate change is affecting people in many ways. One way is through dangerous weather, like stronger storms and heatwaves, which can be dangerous. Farmers find it harder to grow crops because of changing weather forms. Rising temperatures are melting ice in polar regions, which can cause sea levels to rise and flood many areas. Some animals are losing **their** homes because of these changes. People in cities are also affected by the poor air quality caused by pollution. It's important for everyone to use energy wisely and reduce pollution to help slow down climate change. By working together, we can protect our planet and make it safer for everyone.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**their**" refer to?

.....

3. What else can we do to reduce these effects?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Because of climate change, farmers find it harder to grow their ..... .

a) crops **b)** areas **c)** homes **d)** air

5. Climate change can cause ..... .

a) storms **b)** floods

c) rising temperatures **d)** all of these

6. The word "wisely" is similar in meaning to ..... .

a) lazily **b)** carefully

c) easily **d)** loudly

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Old cars ..... a lot of fuel.
   a) re-use **b)** consume **c)** save **d)** design
2. She uses ..... bags for shopping to help the environment.
   a) electric **b)** broken **c)** electronic **d)** eco-friendly
3. How do you manage to work in this heat without air .....?
   a) features **b)** temperature **c)** transportation **d)** conditioning
4. Trees take carbon dioxide and ..... oxygen.
   a) cycle **b)** need **c)** produce **d)** delete
5. Wind turbines ..... electricity for the local factories.
   a) generate **b)** waste **c)** affect **d)** suffer
6. The farmer saved his animals from the ..... .
   a) coast **b)** poem **c)** flood **d)** metal
7. Many countries suffer ..... lack of water.
   a) of **b)** with **c)** about **d)** from
8. The car is old, ... it's fast.
   a) but **b)** and **c)** because **d)** so
9. We are looking for ..... apartment.
   a) a **b)** an **c)** the **d)** no article
10. No one is faster than Mazin. He is ..... .
    a) faster than **b)** as fast **c)** the fastest **d)** as faster

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The weather was warm ..... (so) sunny.
2. Azza said sorry ..... (and) she made a mistake.
3. Are these ..... (shoes) you want?
4. He wants to come first, so he must get the ..... (high) marks.

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Recycling"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Hadi and Ahmed are talking about places in Egypt.

Hadi : What's your favorite place in Egypt?

Ahmed : I really love Luxor. (1).....?

a) What about you **b)** How are you **c)** What are you **d)** Why are you

Hadi : I love it, too.

Ahmed : (2).....?

a) Do you go to the Red Sea **b)** Will you go to the Red Sea

c) Did you go to the Red Sea **d)** Are you going to the Red Sea

Hadi : Yes, I went to the Red Sea.

Ahmed : Did you visit Alexandria?

Hadi : (3)..... . It's beautiful.

a) Yes, I do **b)** No, I don't **c)** No, I didn't **d)** Yes, I did

Ahmed : (4)..... . It has many temples.

a) I visited Alex **b)** I visited Giza **c)** I visited Aswan **d)** I visited Luxor

Hadi : I visited Aswan, too. Which place do you want to visit?

Ahmed : (5)..... . It has a wonderful beach.

a) I want to visit Hurghada **b)** I want to visit Cairo

c) I want to visit Giza **d)** I want to visit Benha

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. The movie was interesting, ... (and) it was too long.

a) because **b)** but **c)** so **d)** as

2. This is the ..... (bad) trip I've ever been on.

a) a bad **b)** the worse **c)** worst **d)** worse

3. They ordered pizza ..... (so) they didn't feel like cooking.

a) because **b)** and **c)** but **d)** during

4. Do you know ..... (a) answer for this question?

a) the **b)** an **c)** a lot **d)** no article

5. They went to the park ..... (but) had a picnic.

a) before **b)** because **c)** so **d)** and

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)
Q 2	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Unit 6

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	An article about traditional food; A menu; An article about a recipe; The Living café: a short story
Writing	A blog post about favorite foods
Listening	Understand descriptions of celebration favorite foods
Speaking	Discuss food choices; Talk about celebration foods
Language	Wh- questions in the past simple; Adverbials of time and place

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 68 - 71

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

café (n)	مقهى	menu (n)	قائمة (طعام)
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل	oven (n)	فرن
customer (n)	زبون	popular (adj)	شعبى/محبوب/شائع
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	regards (n)	تحياتي
dessert (n)	الحلوى	service (n)	خدمة
dish (n)	أكلة/طبق	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
email address (n)	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى	starters (n)	مقبِّلات
ingredients (n)	مقادير/مكونات	sweet dish (n)	طبق الحلو
main course (n)	طبق رئيسى	taste (d) (v/n)	يتذوق/مذاق
manager (n)	مدير	waiter (n)	جرسون/نادل
Verbs for cooking	**أفعال الطهى**		
add (ed)	يضيف	fry (ied)	يقلى
bake (d)	يخبز/يحمر (فى الفرن)	order (ed)	يأمر/يطلب
boil (ed)	يغلى	serve (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bring (brought) (v)	يُحضر	reader (n)	قارئ
food on the go	طعام سريع (أثناء التنقل)	sweet shop (n)	محل حلوى
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
plate (n)	طبق	warm (adj)	دافئ

Check Point

Choose and complete: bring – service – serve – boil

1. That restaurant has good ..... .
2. Aya wants to ..... a new story from the library to read.
3. I need to ..... some water to make some tea.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

at that point	فى تلك اللحظة	enjoy	> the meal	يستمتع بالوجبة
bring	> the starters	يحضر المقبلات	order	> food	يطلب طعامًا
easy to make	سهل الصنع	taste	> delicious	مذاقه لذيذ

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at all	إطلاقا/على الإطلاق	make into	يحول إلى

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها	Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
comfortable مريح	uncomfortable غير مريح	fortunately لحسن الحظ	unfortunately لسوء الحظ
healthy صحى	unhealthy غير صحى		

Check Point

Choose and complete: at – into – Unfortunately – order

1. We can make milk ..... cheese.
2. Nowadays, we can use apps to ..... food.
3. ....., we lost the match in the last minute.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Traditional dishes — أكلات تقليدية

chipsi mayai/zege	شيبسى مايا/زيجى	koshari	كشرى
corn-on-the-cob	كوز ذرة مشوى	maakouda	المعقودة
eggah	عجة	ruz sayadieh	رز صيادية
falafel	فلافل	sayadieh el samek	صيادية السمك
fish kebabs	كباب سمك	shawerma	شاورما
hawawshi	حواوشى	sweet potatoes	بطاطا

Desserts — الحلويات

baklawa	بقلاوة	chocolate ice cream	آيس كريم شوكولاتة
basbousa	بسبوسة	om Ali	أم على

Foods — أطعمة

baked fish	سمك مشوى فى الفرن	oil	زيت
chickpea paste	طحينة الحمص	onion	بصل
cucumber	خيار	peppers	فلفل
fries	بطاطس مقلية	salad	سلطة
hummus	حمص	spices	توابل

Places أماكن

Algeria	الجزائر	Tanzania	تنزانيا
Morocco	المغرب	Tunisia	تونس

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 take + وقت + to + inf. يستغرق

- It took **a long time** for our starters to arrive.

2 keep + v + ing يستمر

- We kept **saying**: "When did we order our food?"

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 She takes ten minutes ..... to school.

a) arrives b) arrive c) to arrive d) to arriving

2 Sally keeps ..... her favorite book at break.

a) reading b) to reading c) read d) to read

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
comfortable (adj)	مريح	relaxing/relaxed	مريح/مسترخ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
manage (v)	يدير	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		manager (n)	مدير
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al		تحويل الاسم لصفة		traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		comfortable (adj)	مريح	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح
				fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
				healthy (adj)	صحى	unhealthy (adj)	غير صحى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What's your favorite food?

Lesson 1: Traditional food

Read and listen to the article. Where do people eat these traditional foods?

SB page 69

Food on the Go

We asked our readers to tell us about the traditional food that they love. Here's what they said!

Most Egyptians know hawawshi. It is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices(1) inside it. Some people like to add cheese to it, too. You bake it in the oven(2) and eat it warm. Delicious! You can also find it in some parts of the Middle East.

Samir, Cairo.

Chipsi mayai, which is also sometimes called zege, is a very popular(3) traditional food here in Tanzania. We make it with fries and eggs fried in oil. I love it, but I don't think it is a very healthy snack(4), so I don't eat it very often!

Elizabeth, Arusha

Maakouda are very popular in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia. We make them with potatoes. We boil the potatoes in hot water, then make them into small balls.

Sometimes we put meat, fish, or cheese in them, too. Finally, we fry them in a lot of oil and serve(5) them in a sandwich. They're so good!

Youssef, Agadir

(1) توابل (2) فرن

(3) شعبى (4) وجبة خفيفة

(5) يقدم

Post-reading questions:

1. What are the main ingredients of Hawawshi? .....
2. How is maakouda cooked? .....
3. Where do people eat Chipsi mayai? .....

Lesson 2: At a restaurant

Pre-reading question:

- What sweet dishes do you like to have?

Read and listen to an email from a customer at the Nile View Restaurant.

SB page 70

Dear Sir or Madam,

My family and I ate at your restaurant last Wednesday. The restaurant is clean and comfortable(1), but unfortunately, we did not enjoy our meal(2) very much at all.

It took a long time for our starters(3) to arrive. We kept saying to each other: "When did we order our food? I think it was 40 minutes ago!" I ordered a special salad which must be quick and easy to make. After 50 minutes, the waiter brought our starters to us. The starters tasted delicious, but then our main courses(4) came about one minute after we finished eating the starters! We didn't like that at all.

(1) مريح (2) وجبة
(3) مقبلات (4) طبق رئيسى
(5) جرسون (6) التحلية
(7) خدمة

We all ordered sayadieh el samak as our main course. When it arrived, there weren't any tomatoes on our plates. "Why did your cook put no tomatoes on our plates?" We asked the waiter(5). He said, "We don't have any tomatoes today."

After all of that, we weren't sure if we wanted desserts(6). But, as it was my daughter's birthday, we decided to order them anyway. Five minutes after we ordered, the waiter came back to our table and asked us, "What did you order for dessert?" At that point, we decided to pay for the food we had and leave. I had ordered basbousa and I can also buy that in a sweet shop. So, that's what I did.

Your restaurant is a nice place, but I really think that you need to make some changes. Our family definitely doesn't want to eat there again unless you improve your service(7).

Regards,

Randa Al-Katib

Post-reading questions:

1. How long did the starters take to arrive? .....
2. Did they have desserts at the restaurant? .....
3. What was the main course the family ordered? .....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Salwa loves to eat chocolate ice cream as a ..... .
   a) dish b) dessert c) plate d) course
2. My family ordered soup and salad as ..... .
   a) starters b) snacks c) regards d) ingredients
3. Adel and I had fish as the main ..... .
   a) reader b) menu c) course d) oven
4. Aya left the cinema. She didn't like the movie ..... all.
   a) on b) at c) for d) in
5. Drinking water keeps you ..... .
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) popular d) unpopular
6. Fareeda talked to the ..... about the problems she faces at work.
   a) customer b) cook c) manager d) waiter
7. Alyaa likes to ..... eggs for breakfast.
   a) fry b) celebrate c) invite d) taste
8. I will ..... come to the party. I will come with my parents.
   a) specially b) healthily c) unfortunately d) definitely
9. Huda wants to ..... her birthday with her friends.
   a) order b) bring c) celebrate d) taste
10. They ..... the best coffee in that café.
    a) serve b) bake c) boil d) add
11. Mr. Farouk is a ..... teacher at school. All students like him.
    a) traditional b) popular c) comfortable d) unhealthy
12. A good waiter welcomes the ..... with a smile.
    a) courses b) desserts c) customers d) services
13. Laila put the pizza in the ..... to cook.
    a) oven b) address c) menu d) apartment

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My mother ..... a cake for the party.
   a) boiled b) baked c) fried d) grilled
2. To make pasta, you should ..... the water before adding it.
   a) fry b) grill c) boil d) serve
3. My mom prefers food that is quick and ..... .
   a) easy to make b) difficult to prepare
   c) expensive to cook d) needs more ingredients
4. Please, send the picture to my email ..... .
   a) reader b) course c) service d) address
5. The manager said to me, "..... to everyone on your team for their hard work."
   a) Service b) Regards c) Invite d) Definitely
6. I ..... a new book online.
   a) ordered b) served c) invited d) added
7. Sameer dropped the ..... and broke it.
   a) menu b) snack c) apartment d) plate
8. Students should ..... their books to school.
   a) forget b) remind c) bring d) bake
9. The ..... shop has plenty of chocolates.
   a) oven b) plate c) sweet d) meal
10. Lubna ..... much sugar to her tea. That's not healthy.
    a) added b) served c) boiled d) fried
11. The ..... at the hotel was amazing. We will go there again.
    a) reader b) menu c) customer d) service
12. Nada brought some ..... for the trip.
    a) regards b) snacks c) ingredients d) lists
13. This restaurant uses fresh ..... for its meals. They are delicious.
    a) ingredients b) waiters c) customers d) cooks

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Wh- questions in the past simple السؤال بأداة استفهام فى الماضى البسيط

لمراجعة زمن الماضى البسيط ارجع لصفحة ٢٦.

Wh- questions are questions that start with a question word such as what, which, where, when, why, who, or how.

أسئلة أدوات الاستفهام هى الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام، مثل: ماذا، أى، أين، متى، لماذا، من، أو كيف.

e.g. • **When** did you order your food?
• **We** ordered it an hour ago.

Q. Word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدرالفعل?

e.g. • **Why** didn't you **come** yesterday?
• I didn't **come** yesterday because I was ill.
• **How** did they **travel**?
• They traveled by train.

انتبة جيدا

١- عند السؤال عن الفاعل لا نستخدم did بل نستخدم ماضيًا بسيطًا مباشرة.

Q. Word أداة استفهام + التصريف الثانى للفعل?

e.g. • **A: Who** scored the last goal? **B: Mo Salah** scored the last goal.
• **A: How many** people came to the party? **B: Twenty** people came to the party.

٢- لا نستخدم (did) إذا كان السؤال ليس به فعل فى المصدر فى الماضى، بل نستخدم was أو were.

Q. Word أداة استفهام + was/were + subject الفاعل + حرف جر / اسم / صفة ...?

e.g. • **A: Why** were you sad yesterday? **B: I** was sad because I lost my book.
• **A: Who** was at school? **B: My brother** was at school.
• **A: How** was your day? **B: It** was very tiring.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 How ..... (do) you go to school yesterday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (did) لأن السؤال فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

2 What did Sama ..... (bought) at the market?

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (buy) لأن did يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When did Karma ..... at the party?
   a) arriving b) arrives c) arrived d) arrive
2. Why ..... angry last night?
   a) did you b) were you c) you d) are you
3. Who ..... you meet at the club?
   a) does b) did c) were d) are
4. What ..... your brothers do yesterday?
   a) were b) do c) did d) will
5. **A:** ..... did Makkah come to work this morning? **B:** By bus.
   a) Why b) Who c) Where d) How
6. When ..... home last night?
   a) did he get b) he did get c) he got d) did get
7. **A:** Who ..... to the zoo last weekend? **B:** Rayan.
   a) did go b) went c) go d) going
8. Where ..... your grandpa live a year ago?
   a) does b) did c) can d) was
9. How ..... your last vacation?
   a) did b) didn't c) was d) were
10. Why did Judy ..... the party so early last night?
    a) leave b) leaves c) leaving d) left

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When ..... (were) they visit their parents last time?
2. What time did Batool ..... (comes) home last Monday?
3. How did your father ..... (got) to work yesterday?
4. Who ..... (did) your teachers last year?
5. Why ..... (you didn't) tell me it was your birthday?
6. How ..... (you/find) my house yesterday?

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing

How to write about traditional food.

كيفية الكتابة عن الطعام التقليدى.

Example

"My favorite traditional meal"

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favorite traditional meal is koshari. I like it because it tastes delicious and it's fun to eat. It is very popular. Many people like to eat koshari for lunch. The main ingredients of koshari are pasta, rice, lentils, and tomatoes. There are a lot of famous koshari restaurants in Egypt. It can be healthy if we use fresh ingredients and not too much oil. The taste is amazing. I like to eat it with family and friends.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about a traditional meal you like.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Writing tips

The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence. Other sentences are details that should support the topic sentence.

الجملة الأولى فى الفقرة هى الجملة الرئيسية. الجمل الأخرى تعطى تفاصيل تعزز الموضوع. هذه التفاصيل يمكن أن تكون أسبابًا، أو وصفًا، أو أمثلة.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 6 Lessons (1 & 2)

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What type of food is the text about?
   a) Koshari. b) Maakouda. c) Falafel. d) Chipsi mayai.
2. Which country is known for making them?
   a) Algeria. b) Tunisia. c) Morocco. d) All of these.
3. How is this food?
   a) Good. b) Hot. c) Bad. d) Spicy.
4. Which ingredients can be put in them?
   a) Bread. b) Fish. c) Oil. d) Milk.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Nada likes eating chipsi mayai.

Nada : Have you tried any traditional food?
Sandy : (1)..... . What's your favorite traditional food?
Nada : (2)..... .
Sandy : (3).....?
Nada : I tried it in Tanzania.
Sandy : (4).....?
Nada : They make it with fries and eggs.
Sandy : Is it healthy?
Nada : (5)..... . I don't eat it very often.
Sandy : I don't like to try traditional food from other countries.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

delicious – onions – try – tried – traditional

Hawawshi is a (1)..... Egyptian food. It is a type of bread with meat, (2)....., peppers, and spices. I like Hawawshi because it is very (3)..... . It is usually eaten for lunch or dinner in Egypt. Hawawshi can be healthy if it is made with fresh meat and lots of vegetables. Did you (4)..... it before?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My cousins enjoyed the ..... dish after dinner.
   a) oil b) onion c) sweet d) pepper
2. Our group looked at the ..... to order their food.
   a) plate b) menu c) list d) oven

3. The ..... brought the drinks to our table very late.
   a) waiter b) manager c) customer d) dish
4. Nahla ..... the soup to see if it needed more salt.
   a) celebrated b) tasted c) fried d) boiled
5. Malak ..... delicious food to the guests.
   a) tasted b) served c) boiled d) invited
6. The restaurant is clean and comfortable, but ....., we did not enjoy our meal.
   a) happily b) fortunately c) luckily d) unfortunately
7. Baher likes eating food ..... the go while traveling.
   a) for b) at c) on d) in
8. When did Ibrahim ..... the accident?
   a) having b) has c) had d) have
9. What time ..... your son go to bed?
   a) do b) did c) was d) is
10. Where ..... the cat?
   a) was b) did c) does d) were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What ..... (she/study) 3 days ago?
2. Where ..... (did) they yesterday?
3. When did the children ..... (slept) last night?
4. Who ..... (buy) you this lovely dress?

6 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Your favorite dish"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What ..... (is) your last project about?
2. **A:** Who ..... (invite/you) to the party? **B:** I invited all my friends.
3. Why ..... (didn't) you at school yesterday?

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 72-75

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

card (n)	كارت/بطاقة	pick (ed) (v)	يختار
celebration (n)	احتفال	recipe (n)	وصفة طهى
festival (n)	مهرجان	research (ed) (v/n)	يبحث/بحث
grilled (adj)	مشوى	select (ed) (v)	يختار
large-scaled (adj)	ذات قشور كبيرة	syrup (n)	شراب
native (adj)	محلى/ أصلى	task (n)	مهمة
origin (n)	أصل	tasty (adj)	لذيذ

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

Australia (n)	أستراليا	include (d) (v)	يتضمن
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد	lamb (n)	لحم الخروف
branch (n)	فرع	leaves (n)	أوراق الشجر
butter (n)	زبدة	nearly (adv)	تقريبًا
check (ed) (v)	يفحص/يراجع/يتأكد	pour (ed) (v)	يصب/يسكب
Christmas (n)	كريسماس (عيد الميلاد)	project (n)	مشروع
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	Ramadan (n)	شهر رمضان
cylinder (n)	أسطوانة	roll (ed) (v)	يلف
describe (d) (v)	يصف	sauce (n)	صوص
dried fruit (n)	فواكه مجففة	snow (n)	الجليد
famous (adj)	مشهور	sugar (n)	سكر
garlic (n)	ثوم	website (n)	موقع إلكترونى

Check Point

Choose and complete: nearly – grilled – celebration – website

1. Moataz likes to eat ..... chicken.
2. Rana shops online from a famous ..... .
3. We had a big ..... for my birthday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	research/search	يجرى بحثًا	go	on the internet	يدخل على الإنترنت
	task	يؤدى مهمة	make	a card	يعد بطاقة
go	online	يدخل على الإنترنت		notes	يدون ملاحظات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

decide on	يحدد/يختار	fill with	يملأ بـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: go – with – at – do

1. I will ..... the task before lunch.
2. She will fill the glass ..... water.
3. How often do you ..... online, Lara?

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Foods — أطعمة

barramundi	سمك البارامونداى	longevity noodles	معكرونة (يعتقد الصينيون أنها تطيل العمر)
chocolate cake	كيك شوكولاتة	Buche de Noel	كيك فرنسى
kebab	كباب	yebeg wot	وجبة لحم إثيوبية
nuts	بندق	injera	نوع من الخبز
pancake	فطيرة	pudding	حلوى
qatayef	قطايف		

Nationalities — جنسيات

Australian	أسترالى	Ethiopian	إثيوبى
Chinese	صينى	British	بريطانى
French	فرنسى		

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

would ('d) + like/prefer + to + inf. يود/يفضل أن

- I'd like to **try** this dish because I love desserts.
- I'd prefer to **try** qatayef.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
pick (v)	يختار	choose	يختار
tasty (adj)	لذيذ	delicious	لذيذ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
celebrate (v)	يحتفل	-ion		تحويل الفعل لاسم		celebration (n)	احتفال
taste (n)	مذاق	-y		تحويل الاسم لصفة		tasty (adj)	لذيذ

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3: A new recipe

Pre-listening question:

Listening Text

- What's your favorite meal?

Listen to Farah talking about researching a recipe. Then look at the recipe card and correct the mistakes on it. *SB page 72*

Mom What are you doing, Farah?

Farah A research task(1) for school.

Mom That's an interesting picture. What is it?

Farah It's called Barramundi. It's a river fish from Australia.

Mom Where does the name come from?

Farah It's from a native(2) Australian language and means "large scaled(3) river fish".

Mom So, the name describes what it is.

Farah Yes, and you can eat it in nearly every restaurant in the country. People usually eat it with tomatoes and potatoes.

Mom How did you do your research?

Farah First, I decided on a country.

Mom And you picked Australia.

Farah Yes, I didn't know anything about Australian food so I thought it would be interesting. Once I'd decided on the country, I went on the internet and did a search for famous dishes. I looked at a few different websites so that I could check the information. I then looked at the questions from the project and tried to find the answers. The next thing I did was make notes. Then, I selected(4) the information from my notes that I wanted to include in my project. Finally, I wrote the recipe card. Do you want to see it?

Mom Yes, please.

Recipe

Name of the dish:
Barramundi
Origin of name:
Australian
Ingredients:
Chicken, tomatoes
How is it cooked?
Grilled

(1) مهمة (2) أصلي/ محلي
(3) ذات قشور كبيرة (4) اختارت

Post-listening questions:

1. What is Barramundi? .....
2. Where does the name of Barramundi come from? .....

Listening Text

Lesson 4: Celebration food

Pre-listening question:

- What do people in your country usually eat when they celebrate?

Listen to four speakers talking about foods they eat in their country when they celebrate.

SB page 74

Chinese boy:

At New Year in my country, we have a very big festival(1). At this time of year, we always cook special noodles which are very, very long. In Chinese, this dish is called 'longevity noodles'. It's a dish that we believe(2) can help you to live a very long life! We say if you eat very long noodles at New Year, your life will be very long in the future!

French girl:

The Buche de Noel is a traditional cake that we bake for Christmas in my country. We roll(3) the cake into a cylinder(4) shape, then cover it in chocolate. We also often decorate it with sweets which look like leaves, or we put sugar on the cake to look like snow, so the cake seems like the branch(5) of a tree in winter!

(1) مهرجان	(2) يعتقد
(3) يلف	(4) أسطوانة
(5) فرع	(6) ثوم
(7) توابل	(8) مجفف

Ethiopian boy:

My favorite celebration dish is called yebeg wot. It's a delicious meat dish that we cook during the vacation season. We make it with lamb, onions, tomatoes, garlic(6), butter, and special spices(7). In my family, my grandma is the person who usually cooks the yebeg wot. She also bakes a type of bread called injera, which she serves next to it.

British girl:

In my country, there's a popular celebration dish called Christmas pudding. It's a dessert which has lots of dried(8) fruit, sugar, and spices in it. We boil it for a long time, then serve it hot with a sweet sauce. Sometimes you can find a coin in your Christmas pudding! People bake a coin into the pudding and the person who finds it, will have good luck!

Post-listening question:

- What's "longevity noodles"? .....

Lesson 4 : Celebration food

Pre-reading question:

- What is the most popular dessert Egyptians eat in Ramadan?

Complete the text with the adverbials from the box. *SB page 75*

During the month of Ramadan in Egypt, Egyptians often eat a special dessert called qatayef with their families. Qatayef are a type of sweet pancake filled with nuts[1], or sometimes chocolate, which are then **put into** oil and fried. Once the qatayef are ready to eat and **on the table**, people pour syrup[2] made from sugar over them. I like to make qatayef **at home;** they taste much better than the ones you buy from shops.

(1) مكسرات
(2) شربات

Post-reading questions:

1 How do qatayef taste?

.....

2 Do you like qatayef? Why/ Why not?

.....

Comprehension Skills

Give a title: وضع عنوان:

When you give a title to something like a book, article or story, you usually capitalize the important words. But, you don't need to capitalize small words like "the", "a" or "of" unless they are the first words of the title.

عندما تقوم بإعطاء عنوان لشىء مثل كتاب أو مقال أو قصة، عادة ما تكون الكلمات الرئيسية بحروف كبيرة ولكن لا نضع للكلمات الصغيرة مثل the/a/of حروفًا كبيرة إلا إذا كانت هى الكلمات الأولى فى العنوان.

For example:

Give a title to the previous passage.

- Traditional Ramadan Dessert: Qatayef
- Making Delicious Qatayef at Home

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The grilled chicken was so ..... that everyone asked for the recipe.
   a) dried b) tasty c) horrible d) unhealthy
2. Christmas pudding is a dessert which has lots of ..... fruit, sugar, and spices in it.
   a) dried b) fried c) boiled d) grilled
3. French people roll the cake into a ..... shape, then cover it in chocolate.
   a) square b) cylinder c) circle d) triangular
4. Aya ..... some Australian dishes for her project on the internet.
   a) researched b) celebrated c) boiled d) poured
5. Barramundi is a ..... river fish from Australia.
   a) large-scaled b) unhealthy c) nasty d) ugly
6. Moaz ..... milk into the glass and drank it.
   a) checked b) selected c) poured d) picked
7. The book ..... many pictures. It's amazing.
   a) includes b) describes c) decides d) selects
8. The ..... people lived here for thousands of years ago.
   a) delicious b) tasty c) large-scaled d) native
9. The school group ..... a nice place for the picnic.
   a) poured b) selected c) checked d) filled
10. Esraa went ..... the internet to find the recipe of Italian pizza.
    a) for b) into c) to d) on
11. Talia ..... a card for her friend's birthday.
    a) believed b) got c) made d) did
12. My parents visited the school's ..... for information.
    a) syrup b) website c) origin d) project
13. My classmates ..... a good time to visit the museum.
    a) checked b) poured c) celebrated d) picked
14. I received a birthday ..... from my friend.
    a) website b) card c) recipe d) project

C Language

Adverbials of time and place ظروف الزمان والمكان

1 Adverbials of time ظروف الزمان

- They are short phrases that we use to say when something happens.

- هى العبارات القصيرة التى نستخدمها لقول متى يحدث شىء ما.

Adverb	Meaning	Adverb	Meaning
yesterday	أمس	tomorrow	غدا
last week	الأسبوع الماضى	next month	الشهر القادم
in the 1990s	فى التسعينيات	in a few days	خلال بضعة أيام
in the morning/ afternoon/ evening	فى الصباح/ وقت الظهيرة/ المساء	at night	فى الليل
before/after dinner	قبل / بعد العشاء	once/twice a month	مرة/ مرتين فى الشهر
now	الآن	on/at the weekend	فى العطلة الأسبوعية
during	خلال / أثناء	for a long time	لوقت طويل

وهى تأتى فى بداية الجملة أو آخرها.

e.g. • She **finished** her homework yesterday. • Last week, we **visited** the zoo.

2 Adverbials of place ظروف المكان

- They are short phrases that we use to say where someone or something is.

- إنها عبارات قصيرة نستخدمها لتحديد مكان شخص ما أو شىء ما.

Adverb	Meaning	Adverb	Meaning
here	هنا	near	بالقرب من
there / over there	هناك	in front of	أمام
everywhere	فى كل مكان	on	على
upstairs/downstairs	الطابق الأعلى / الأسفل	across	عبر
into	داخل	between ... and ...	بين ... و ...
inside/indoors	بالداخل	outside/outdoors	بالخارج

- وهى تأتى فى بداية الجملة أو آخرها.

e.g. • He parked his car over there. • The bank is in front of the restaurant.

لاحظ

فى حالة وجود ظرف زمان وظرف مكان فى جملة واحدة يتم ترتيبهما كالتالى:

ظرف المكان + ظرف الزمان

e.g. • She planted flowers **in the garden** this afternoon.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We had lunch ..... our meeting.
   a) under b) after c) near d) across
2. My family will have dinner ..... tonight.
   a) outside b) near c) last d) between
3. The bus stop is over ..... .
   a) at b) near c) there d) on
4. What is your sister doing .....?
   a) near b) now c) yesterday d) on
5. There was a storm ..... the night.
   a) there b) then c) when d) during
6. Samy went to the cinema ..... .
   a) next b) last c) yesterday d) everywhere
7. There were some flowers ..... .
   a) soon b) on the table c) between d) on
8. My grandparents have one bedroom ..... .
   a) downstairs b) next to c) tonight d) on
9. I have a lot of work ..... .
   a) month b) the moment c) then d) today

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's starting to rain. Let's go ..... (outside).
2. The students are quiet ..... (classroom).
3. We will have lunch ..... (afternoon).
4. They plan to travel ..... (last) year.
5. ..... (future), we will have flying cars.
6. There is a new restaurant ..... (front) the cinema and the club.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Talking about celebration foods and discussing its choices

التحدث عن أطعمة الاحتفال ومناقشة اختيارها

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	**Response**	جملة الرد

online

What celebration foods would you like to try?

أى أطعمة الاحتفال التى تود أن تجربها؟

I'd like to try qatayef because I love desserts.

أود أن أجرب القطايف لأننى أحب الحلوى.

Where and when do people make it?

أين ومتى يصنعها الناس؟

They make it in Ramadan, in Egypt.

يقومون بصنعها فى شهر رمضان، فى مصر.

For me, I don't like sweet things. I'd like to try a meat dish. It's tasty!

بالنسبة لى، لا أحب الحلوى. أود أن أجرب طبق اللحم، إنه لذيذ!

Great, let's try it.

عظيم، هيا نجربه.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Hossam and Mido are discussing celebration foods.

Hossam : Hi Mido. Did you go to Sameh's wedding party last week?
Mido : (1)..... .
Hossam : Great! (2).....?
Mido : I ate a piece of the wedding cake. It was delicious.
Hossam : Oh, I don't like eating sweet foods.
Mido : (3).....?
Hossam : Because they are not healthy.
Mido : So, which celebration foods would you like to try?
Hossam : (4)..... .
Mido : (5)..... . I hope you will try it soon.

2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about a dish from another country.

كيفية الكتابة عن أكلة من دولة أخرى.

Example

"A dish from another country"

Barramundi is a popular fish dish from Australia. The name "barramundi" comes from a native Australian language meaning "large-scaled river fish." Barramundi has white meat. The main ingredients for cooking barramundi include the fish itself, olive oil, lemon, and garlic. People often eat barramundi for lunch or dinner, grilling, baking, or frying it. It tastes delicious. Barramundi is not only enjoyed in Australia, but has also become popular in other countries for its health benefits.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about a popular dish:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Writing tips

Follow these steps while writing a paragraph:

- Plan your paragraph.
- Write it.
- Review your paragraph.

* اتبع تلك الخطوات عند كتابة الفقرة:

- خطط لفقرتك.
- اكتبها.
- راجعها بعد الكتابة.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 6 Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Paella is a famous dish from Spain. It got its name from the special pan, called "paellera," used to cook it. Paella is made with rice, chicken, seafood, and vegetables. Some common ingredients are shrimp and peas. People often eat paella for lunch or dinner, especially at weekends or special occasions. They usually cook it outdoors over an open fire, giving it a smoky **flavor**. Paella tastes rich with a mix of different flavors from the meat, seafood, and spices. This colorful and delicious dish is enjoyed by people all around the world and is a symbol of Spanish food.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What are some common ingredients used in paella? .....
3. Why do you think paella is cooked outdoors over an open fire? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Paella got its name from a ..... .
   a) seafood b) pan c) city d) spice
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) open fire b) paella c) seafood d) pan
6. The word "**flavor**" means ..... .
   a) taste b) recipe c) sugar d) fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My mom found a new ..... for chocolate cake.
   a) nut b) website c) recipe d) research
2. We planned a ..... for the new year.
   a) celebration b) recipe c) search d) pancake
3. Hadeer poured ..... on her pancakes.
   a) notes b) syrup c) a card d) research
4. Sara completed her ..... quickly.
   a) origin b) festival c) syrup d) task
5. I like to eat ..... with vegetables.
   a) noodles b) qatayef c) cylinder d) leaves

6. My sister cooked a/an ..... meal for dinner. We all liked it.
   a) ugly b) bad c) original d) tasty
7. Omar wants to learn about the ..... of his family.
   a) origin b) festival c) research d) website
8. My house is between the school ..... the hospital.
   a) and b) but c) to d) then
9. I always do my homework ..... the afternoon.
   a) in b) yesterday c) next d) on
10. We were looking for you ..... .
   a) across b) soon c) everywhere d) then

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Basmala was sitting ..... (garden).
2. I took the dog out ..... (these) morning.
3. The restaurant is ..... (next) the bank.
4. He goes for a run ..... (ever) day.

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"A dish from another country"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Adel is staying at home ..... (at tonight). He won't go out.
2. I will call you back ..... (minute).
3. People began to use the internet in the ..... (1960).

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

A Vocabulary

SB pages 76 & 79

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

ceiling (n)	سقف	recycled (adj)	مُعاد تدويره
closely (adv)	عن قرب	reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
coffee grounds (n)	بقايا القهوة	set up (v)	ينشئ/يقيم
compost (n)	سماد	straw (n)	شفاطة
container (n)	حاوية/وعاء	successful (adj)	ناجح
environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	summarize (d) (v)	يلخص
everywhere (adv)	فى كل مكان	trash (n)	نفاية/قمامة
herbs (n)	أعشاب	used (adj)	مستعمل/مستخدم
living café (n)	مقهى صديق للبيئة	waste (n)	قمامة/نفايات
local park (n)	حديقة محلية		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

act (n)	فعل/عمل/تصرف	nearby (adj/adv)	مجاور/قريب
almost (adv)	تقريبًا	no longer (adv)	لم يعد
bin (n)	سلة قمامة	paint (ed) (v)	يدهن
coffee beans (n)	حبوب القهوة	perfect (adj)	مثالى
coffee cup (n)	فنجان قهوة	pick up (ed) (v)	يلتقط
creamy (adj)	كريمى	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
crispy (adj)	مقرمش	smell (n)	رائحة
excited (adj)	متحمس	soft (adj)	ناعم/طرى
glass (n)	زجاج	tube (n)	أنبوبة
leftover (n)	بقايا	wood (n)	خشب

Check Point

Choose and complete: excited – trash – closely – Reusable

1. ..... cups help reduce waste.
2. Maya is ..... about her birthday party.
3. I'd like to look ..... at the stars.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

all the way home	طوال الطريق إلى البيت	make	a difference	يحدث اختلافًا
			waste	يصنع نفايات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

hear about	يسمع عن	on the ground	على الأرض
in bloom	مُزهر	on the roof	على السطح
in return	فى المقابل	pay for	يدفع ثمن ...

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought	hurt	يؤذى/يضر/يصيب	hurt	hurt
hang	يعلق	hung	hung	light up	يضىء/يتوهج	lit up	lit up

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح	positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى
bright	ساطع	dark	داكن/قاتم	quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب
cold	بارد	hot	حار	salty	مالح	sweet	حلو

Foods — أطعمة

bun	كعكة	fries	بطاطس مقلية
burger	برجر	olive oil	زيت زيتون
cheesecake	كعكة الجبن	strawberry	فراولة

Check Point

Choose and complete: sweet – in – at – make

1. I helped my cousin, and he gave me a gift ..... return.
2. We ..... waste when we throw away food.
3. The sea water is very salty. It isn't ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية والتعبيرات اللغوية والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **coffee** قهوة / **a coffee** فنجان قهوة

- I like coffee, so I want to drink a coffee.

2 **do/does/did** + مصدر الفعل — تستخدم للتأكيد

- I **do love** them.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

coffee grounds بقايا القهوة	the leftover(1) part of coffee beans
compost سماد	old plant material used to grow new plants
recycled مُعاد تدويره	used again in a different way
straw شفاطة	a thin paper or plastic tube(2) you drink through
waste قمامة/نفايات	something not wanted or no longer(3) used

(1) بقايا
(2) أنبوب
(3) لم يعد

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
almost (adv) تقريبًا	nearly تقريبًا

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
contain (v) يحتوى على	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	container (n) حاوية/وعاء
reuse (v) يعيد الاستخدام	-able	تحويل الفعل لصفة	reusable (adj) قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
success (n) ناجح	-ful	تحويل الاسم لصفة	successful (adj) ناجح

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
re-	تعطى معنى الإعادة	use (v) يستخدم	reuse (v) يعيد الاستخدام

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To change the verb "reuse" into an adjective, we use the suffix "……".
   a) -ly b) -ment c) -able d) -ics
2. The antonym of "positive" is "……".
   a) possible b) negative c) dark d) healthy

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5: Literature

Pre-reading question:

- Do you usually go to a café? Why?

Read and listen to the story. Check (✓) the sentence that best describes what it is about. *SB page 76*

The Living Café

"What's that?" asked Magdy.

The two friends looked more closely[1] at the trash[2] on the ground.

"It's a coffee cup," said Sami. "And look, there's another over there."

Magdy and Sami were in their local[3] park. It was a beautiful day and the flowers were in bloom[4], but everywhere they looked there were used cups, plastic straws[5], and old food containers[6].

"Most of this trash comes from a nearby café", said Magdy. "Why don't we set up a café that makes almost no waste[7]?"

"No waste? How is that possible?"

"Well, take this coffee cup. Next time the person who used it wants a coffee, they can bring their own cup to the café. In return, they pay less for their coffee."

"That's a good idea."

"And instead of plastic straws, our café can give paper straws that don't hurt the environment[8]."

Sami's eyes lit up. "There are ways to reuse waste, too. Think of all those coffee grounds – we can use them as compost[9] to grow food."

"Food that we serve in the café!"

The two friends were excited. They talked about their ideas all the way home.

Soon, Magdy and Sami bought an old building near the park. They cleaned it and painted it bright colors with environmentally friendly[10] paint.

(1) عن قرب

(2) قمامة

(3) محلي

(4) متفتحة/مزهرة

(5) شفاطات

(6) أوعية

(7) نفايات

(8) البيئة

(9) سماد

(10) صديق للبيئة

They put in recycled glass windows and used old pieces of wood to make tables and chairs. They also hung lots of plants from the ceiling[11]. On the roof, was a little garden for growing herbs[12], fruit, and vegetables.

(11) سقف .....

(12) أعشاب .....

A few weeks later, The Living Café opened. It was quiet at first, but then people started to notice it. They liked the way they could help save the planet with their morning coffee! More people came for lunch and said the food tasted delicious and very fresh. They were excited to hear that some of the ingredients grew on the roof of the café. The Living Café quickly became the most popular café near the park.

One day, Magdy and Sami walked through the park again. This time, there weren't any used coffee cups on the ground. There were a few straws, but they were paper. Magdy picked one up and put it in the bin.

"Every little act helps!" he said, smiling.

Post-reading questions:

1 What do Magdy and Sami see in the park at the start of the story?

.....

2 What do Magdy and Sami do with the coffee grounds?

.....

3 What happens when someone brings their own coffee cup to the Living Café?

.....

Lesson 6: Writing

Pre-reading question:

- What are your favorite dishes?

Read Shaden's email. How many salty dishes does she mention?

SB page 78

(1) كعكة

(2) مقرمش

(3) زيت الزيتون

(4) كعكة الجبن

(5) مثالى

To : Emma **Subject :** My favorite food

Hi Emma,

How are you? I enjoyed hearing about your new school. You asked me about my favorite food. Well, I love lots of different types of food, but these are my all-time top three favorite dishes ...

First, it's got to be burger and fries. Some restaurants fry their burgers, but I prefer mine grilled. They're healthier that way, too. This is why I usually eat them at home. I like them with tomato and onion in the bun(1). I know fries are a bit unhealthy, so I don't eat them often, but I do love them. They're so crispy(2) and salty. Delicious!

Another type of food that I really like is salad. It is healthy and good for you. Of course, there are many different types of salad and you can make it in a hundred different ways, but I like to have mine with cucumber, onion, and cheese.

I put lots of olive oil(3) on it, too, I like it best with fresh bread as a cold lunch. I always make and eat my salads at home.

And finally, my favorite dessert is definitely strawberry cheesecake(4), I know how to make it, but my mom's cheesecake is the best. I love the taste and smell of the strawberries and the soft, creamy cheese is delicious. I love eating it on hot days. It's the perfect(5) summer dessert, Yum!

What are your favorite dishes?

Bye!

Shaden

Post-reading questions:

1. Which dishes does Shaden think are healthy? .....
2. Which dishes does Shaden know how to make? .....
3. Which ingredients does Shaden mention for each dish? .....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I like fried chicken. It is very ..... .
   a) noisy b) reusable c) crispy d) recycled
2. Malak gave me a gift, and I thanked her ..... return.
   a) in b) at c) for d) to
3. ..... materials are good for the environment.
   a) Positive b) Excited c) Successful d) Recycled
4. There is a supermarket ..... . It's next to our house.
   a) closely b) almost c) nearby d) no longer
5. Coffee grounds can be used in ..... .
   a) compost b) container c) herbs d) waste
6. Esraa used a ..... to drink her juice.
   a) bin b) straw c) bean d) moral
7. Can you ..... the story for me? I don't have time to read it all.
   a) reuse b) paint c) summarize d) notice
8. The trash bin is full of ..... .
   a) waste b) smell c) herbs d) acts
9. There are flowers ..... in the garden.
   a) almost b) everywhere c) closely d) nearby
10. This jacket isn't new. It's ..... .
    a) helpful b) excited c) successful d) used
11. Adel and I often visit the ..... park on the weekends.
    a) local b) salty c) sweet d) positive
12. Bassant ..... some old paper to make notes.
    a) heard b) did c) reused d) hurt
13. Using too much paper ..... waste.
    a) does b) makes c) has d) gets
14. The flowers are ..... bloom in the garden. They're lovely.
    a) in b) on c) at d) by

Time to Practice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mayar ..... her favorite picture on the wall.
   a) hangs b) brings c) hurts d) lights
2. The bread is ..... and fresh.
   a) ugly b) noisy c) soft d) salty
3. Your help can ..... a difference to me.
   a) do b) make c) feel d) hurt
4. I like ..... desserts like cheesecake.
   a) negative b) dark c) bright d) creamy
5. My mom adds ..... to her cooking to make it tasty.
   a) herbs b) morals c) acts d) grounds
6. It is ..... time for dinner. Your father will come soon.
   a) everywhere b) almost c) nearby d) no longer
7. He looked up at the ..... of the room while thinking about the problem.
   a) surface b) bin c) ceiling d) roof
8. I use a ..... water bottle every day to help the environment.
   a) negative b) noisy c) successful d) reusable
9. The ..... was made of glass, so it was easy to see what was inside.
   a) container b) ceiling c) roof d) straw
10. Please, put the ..... in the bin.
    a) moral b) trash c) act d) bloom
11. Sahar and Ghada studied the map ..... before the trip.
    a) instead b) everywhere c) nearby d) closely
12. My grandparents ..... up a new charity to help people.
    a) set b) pick c) hurt d) hang
13. Mo Salah is a very ..... player. He achieves a lot of victories.
    a) negative b) successful c) ugly d) local

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Writing

Writing an email about your favorite food. كتابة إيميل عن الطعام المفضل.

Example

From: Said **To:** Waleed

Subject: My Favorite Food

Hi Waleed,

How are you? I'm excited about your good news. I want to tell you about my favorite food. My favorite food is pizza. I like pizza because it is tasty and has many tastes. The main ingredients are dough عجينة, tomato sauce, cheese, and vegetables. Pizza is very delicious, and I enjoy it a lot. I usually eat it at home, but sometimes I go to a restaurant to get a special pizza. My favorite dessert is chocolate cake. It is sweet and soft. I love eating it after a meal.

Best wishes,

Said

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Jack to tell him about your favorite meal. Yor name is Youssef.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 6 Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Complete the following dialog:

Hagar is asking Esraa about her favorite food.

Hagar: Hi Esraa! How are you today?

Esraa : Hi Hagar! I'm fine, thank you. (1)..... about you?

Hagar: I'm fine, too. What's your favorite food?

Esraa : My (2)..... food is burger.

Hagar: Oh, I love burgers, too! What do you (3)..... on your burger?

Esraa : I like cheese and tomato on my burger.

Hagar: Do you like any sauce on your burger?

Esraa : (4)..... . I like ketchup and mayonnaise.

Hagar: Yummy! Where would you prefer to eat burgers?

Esraa : I would prefer to eat them at a (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... helps plants grow better.
   a) Plastic b) Trash c) Compost d) Straw
2. We use environmentally ..... products to help the environment.
   a) successful b) friendly c) negative d) crispy
3. Please throw the trash in the ..... .
   a) bin b) tube c) cup d) straw
4. Jana bought a bag of coffee ..... yesterday.
   a) parks b) tubes c) herbs d) beans
5. Hassan asked his brother to ..... the book.
   a) pay b) hang c) pick d) hurt
6. Ibrahim was ..... about the new game. He liked to play it.
   a) noisy b) excited c) negative d) impossible
7. I like the ..... of flowers because it is very nice.
   a) smell b) leftover c) act d) tube
8. How ..... your last trip?
   a) did b) has c) was d) does

9. **A:** Why ..... you come yesterday? **B:** Because I was ill.

a) did b) didn't c) were d) weren't

10. My father was working in an office ..... morning.

a) next to b) yesterday c) there d) these days

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How ..... (do) you travel last week?
2. Faisal found the book ..... (the table).
3. What did your mother ..... (cooked) for lunch yesterday?
4. My uncle traveled to Paris three years ..... (last).

4 Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. Monday, – grandparents – we – our – **Last** - visited.

.....

2. club – **I** – friends – met – the – my old – at.

.....

3. koshari – traditional – **My** – is – dish – favorite.

.....

5 Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Samy to tell him about the food you like. Your name is Reda.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Please, come ..... (there). I can't hear you.
2. I can't visit you today, but I'll visit you ..... (late).
3. Two days ..... (last), I visited my cousins in Tanta.

General Exercises on Unit 6

A Listening

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which food was the speaker interested in?
   a) American. b) Japanese. c) Egyptian. d) Australian.
2. Where did the speaker do his search?
   a) On the internet. b) At home. c) At the library. d) At the park.
3. What did he/she search for?
   a) Restaurants. b) Famous dishes. c) Parks. d) Famous cities.
4. What did he/she write?
   a) A birthday card. b) A book. c) A story. d) A recipe card.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Mazen's favorite food is Hawawshi.

Nader : What's your favorite food?
Mazen : (1)..... .
Nader : I love Hawawshi, too! (2).....?
Mazen : It has meat, onions, and spices inside bread.
Nader : Where do you eat it?
Mazen : (3)..... .
Nader : (4).....?
Mazen : I eat it at home to be sure it's healthy.
Nader : Do you eat it with anything else?
Mazen : (5)..... . I like to eat it with salad and yogurt.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

delicious – next – last – waiter – starters

I went to a restaurant with my family (1)..... week. We ordered our food and some starters. The (2)..... were salad and soup. We waited for a long time, but the waiter was late. We were very hungry and a bit angry. Finally, the (3)..... came with our food. He said sorry for being late. The food was (4)....., and we enjoyed it.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Feseekh is a traditional food in Egypt. It is a type of fish that is dried and salted. People usually eat feseekh during the spring festival called Sham El-Nessim. This festival is celebrated in April. Feseekh has a strong smell and taste, which some people love, but others do not like. To make feseekh, fish is cleaned, salted, and left to dry for **several** weeks. When it is ready, people eat it with bread, onions, and lemons. Eating feseekh is a tradition that many Egyptian families follow. It brings people together to celebrate the festival. Even though feseekh has a special taste, **it** is an important part of Egyptian culture and history.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think feseekh has a strong smell?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Feseekh is eaten in ..... .
   a) autumn b) summer c) spring d) winter
5. ..... people like feseekh.
   a) All b) Many c) Few d) Some
6. The word "**several**" has the same meaning as ..... .
   a) many b) few c) some d) less

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rania checked the ..... before cooking.
   a) managers b) addresses c) ingredients d) services
2. Khalid ..... cookies in the oven.
   a) ordered b) baked c) poured d) boiled
3. My father ..... our family for dinner as I passed my exams.
   a) invited b) made c) brought d) tried
4. Omar ..... a red apple from the tree.
   a) checked b) poured c) boiled d) picked

5. Jamal likes to go ..... the internet to watch videos.
   a) in b) for c) on d) at
6. My father will ..... the game I ordered online.
   a) pay for b) pick up c) set up d) make into
7. The big fire ..... up the sky last night.
   a) set b) lit c) picked d) looked
8. How much bread ..... there on the table?
   a) did b) was c) were d) do
9. My uncle will arrive from France ..... .
   a) through b) over c) in a few days d) there
10. Children like to play ..... .
   a) near b) outside c) across d) between

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When did Laila ..... (bought) that dress?
2. Ali went to England ..... (tomorrow).
3. How ..... (does) Mazin celebrate his last birthday?
4. Who ..... (come) to your party yesterday?

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Your favorite dish"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Alaa: How are you?

Mira: (1)..... .

a) Me, too **b)** Sorry

c) I'm fine, thanks **d)** No, thanks

Alaa: (2).....?

a) What is your favorite game

b) What is your favorite book

c) What is your favorite sport

d) What is your favorite traditional food

Mira: I love koshari. It is my favorite.

Alaa: (3).....?

a) What are its ingredients **b)** When is it

c) How is it **d)** Where is it

Mira: It has rice, pasta, lentils, and tomato sauce.

Alaa: Do you like any other traditional foods?

Mira: (4)..... . I also like molokhia.

a) No, I don't **b)** Yes, I do **c)** Yes, I am **d)** No, I am not

Alaa: How is molokhia?

Mira: (5)..... . It's very good!

a) It is very tasty **b)** It's ugly **c)** It's not good **d)** I don't know

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where ..... (is) he yesterday?

a) was **b)** did **c)** does **d)** has

2. How did your father ..... (traveled) to Port Said?

a) traveling **b)** travel **c)** travels **d)** to travel

3. How many people ..... (live) in Egypt in 2000?

a) lives **b)** live **c)** didn't live **d)** lived

4. Waleed likes to sleep ..... (under) his room.

a) in **b)** over **c)** tomorrow **d)** later

5. ..... (Over there), my sister is going to get married.

a) There **b)** Here **c)** Next week **d)** Then

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Module 3 Question Bank on Units 5&6

1 Complete the following dialog:

A) Abdullah and Mohammed are discussing traditional foods.

Abdullah : Did you try any traditional food?
Mohammed : (1)..... . What's your favorite traditional food?
Abdullah : My favorite traditional food is biryani.
Mohammed : (2).....?
Abdullah : I tried it in India.
Mohammed : (3).....?
Abdullah : They make it with rice, meat, and spices.
Mohammed : Is it spicy?
Abdullah : (4)..... . But it's very tasty.
Mohammed : (5)..... . I'll eat it soon.

B) Samir and Karma are talking about the new park.

Samir : Did you see the new park?
Karma : (1)..... . It looks really nice.
Samir : (2).....?
Karma : I like the big playground and the flowers.
Samir : How often do you go to the park?
Karma : (3)..... .
Samir : (4).....?
Karma : I like to walk and play with my friends.
Samir : Is there a place to eat in the park?
Karma : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Pollution can ..... our health.
   a) affect b) recycle c) waste d) set
2. You should stay inside during the ..... .
   a) crust b) alarm c) electricity d) storm
3. A lot of countries ..... from a lack of food.
   a) press b) suffered c) set d) design
4. Youssef plays on his games ..... .
   a) map b) container c) console d) crust
5. Manar ..... her birthday every year.
   a) celebrates b) adds c) serves d) pours

6. Ali likes to add ..... to his coffee like milk.
   a) task b) syrup c) waste d) trash
7. Hoda ..... the soup into bowls.
   a) grilled b) pressed c) checked d) poured
8. Rawan decided to ..... a search for information on the internet.
   a) take b) get c) do d) make
9. Hanaa is ..... than her sister.
   a) beautiful b) more beautiful
   c) most beautiful d) the beautiful
10. ..... project is building a hotel in our city.
   a) Large b) Larger c) Largest d) The largest
11. Basma bought ..... piano last month.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
12. Laila didn't come to the party ..... she was ill.
   a) and b) so c) because d) but
13. How often ..... you visit the zoo when you were young?
   a) do b) did c) does d) doing
14. What ..... the last movie about?
   a) was b) is c) does d) did
15. I will visit you ..... .
   a) to b) so c) later d) late

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. English is ..... (difficult) than Arabic.
2. I like eating ..... (a rice).
3. Fruits are ..... (good) than sweets.
4. Tourists like visiting cities in ..... (Red Sea).
5. That was the ..... (bad) thing that happened to me.
6. Where did Salma ..... (went)?
7. How ..... (did) your last vacation?
8. My grandparents live ..... (stairs).
9. Mona is sitting ..... (next) her grandma.
10. My father always watches the news ..... (evening).

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How can we save water?

Read the text quickly. Which of the problems in the photos are mentioned in the text? *SB page 80*

Water world

In some countries around the world, not having enough clean water is a big problem. In fact, almost two thirds[1] of the world's population[2] face water scarcity at some point during the year. This means having to walk a long way to find clean, fresh water, or not having enough to drink, cook, and wash.

(1) ثلثى
(2) تعداد السكان
(3) يربح
(4) يعانى
(5) يتصرف

Not having enough water can have a bad effect on people's health. Our bodies need a lot of water to stay healthy, but dirty water can make us very ill.

People who need water to earn[3] money also suffer[4] when there isn't enough. For example, farmers need water to grow crops. Without it, they don't have enough crops to sell.

Some research shows that the problem of water scarcity is getting worse because of climate change. We must act[5] now to find a solution!

Post-reading questions:

1 Why is water scarcity bad for farmers?

.....

2 How can water scarcity have a bad effect on people's health?

.....

3 Why is water scarcity getting worse?

.....

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- What do you think the phrase "eat green" means?

Listen to the dialog. What does it mean to "eat green"? *SB page 81*

Hana What are you doing, Menna?

Menna I'm reading an article about ways to "eat green".

Hana You mean ways to eat more green vegetables?

Menna Haha, no, not exactly. Eating green is about making don't harm the environment.

Hana Oh, I see.

(1) مسافات

(2) غلاف

Menna Our food choices have a big effect on the environment, you see. They can either increase, or help to reduce, climate change.

Hana Can you give me an example?

Menna Sure, no problem. Choosing local fruits and vegetables can make a big difference. If you buy food that is grown near to where you live, it doesn't need to travel long distances(1) to get to you.

Hana That's true. I guess driving or flying food around the world causes pollution.

Menna Exactly. Secondly, try to buy food that has little or no packaging. Or, check that the packaging(2) is made from something like paper or cardboard. Plastic packaging is the worst!

Hana OK, got it.

Menna Another thing you can do is to only buy as much as you need. Throwing away lots of food is a huge waste.

Hana That's all really good advice. I will think more carefully about my food choices in the future. Thanks, Menna!

Post-listening questions:

1 What is Menna doing?

.....

2 Why do you think we should buy food that has little or no packaging?

.....

General Exercises Listening Text

Listen again. Answer the questions. *SB page 84*

Listening Text

Mara Hi, Penny. What are you doing?

Penny I'm choosing decorations for my wedding.

Mara How exciting!

Penny Yes, it is. I want all the decorations to be environmentally friendly.

Mara That's cool. Can you show me some?

Penny Sure, no problem. Here are the paper lanterns. We'll use these instead of balloons, which are made of plastic. And this is confetti made of lots of small, dried flowers.

Mara It looks beautiful. What about these glass jars?

Penny They're for candles. The jars contained food, so we washed them and a put ribbon around them. We'll put a small candle inside each jar and put them on the tables during the wedding meal.

Mara That's a great way to reuse them. What about your invitations?

Penny Those will be digital, of course! We'll email them to the guests.

General Exercises

أجزاء من مراجعة الوزارة على المنهج

SB pages 84-85

Reading

1 Complete the information with the words from the box.

accept – Cyberbullying – hackers – hide behind – nasty – post

Top tips to stay safe online

- Choose a strong password with combinations of letters and special characters, (1)..... can often guess passwords.
- Never (2)..... personal details online or post or share anything (3)..... . Always be nice to others!
- (4)..... is never good, it's always bad. Be yourself, be kind and never (5)..... a false name.
- Never (6)..... friend requests if you don't know the person. **Always ask an adult for help if you are not sure!**

2 A) Read the article. How can people today get a "taste of the past"?

A taste of the past!

Thanks to the fertile land near the River Nile, the Ancient Egyptians could grow crops and raise animals for food. They had lots of good quality ingredients, and they used them to cook a surprising variety of different dishes.

Bread was very popular and cheap to make. The Ancient Egyptians baked it in many different ways, often adding oil, spices, or chopped vegetables to make it tastier. One kind of bread was aish baladi, which is still popular in Egypt today. However, in the past, people baked it slowly in special clay ovens which they heated with wood fires. Today, we can bake it quickly in electric ovens.

Another food that was popular in Ancient Egypt was hummus. To make it, people boiled and mashed chickpeas, then mixed them with oil, garlic, and salt. In fact, there is an Egyptian recipe for hummus still used today that is nearly 1,000 years old!

Some Ancient Egyptians also ate meat and fish. They usually grilled meat over a fire, in the same way that we make kebabs today, or roasted it in ovens. However, they didn't have fridges, so to preserve meat and fish they dried them and covered them in salt. They made the fish dish we still know as Feseekh in this way.

Some people still use this method today to get a real taste of the past!

B) Read again and answer the questions.

1. What did the Ancient Egyptians add to bread?

.....

.....

2. How was aish baladi baked in the past?

.....

.....

3. What is nearly 1,000 years old?

.....

.....

4. How did the Ancient Egyptians cook meat?

.....

.....

5. Why did the Ancient Egyptians cover dried meat and fish in salt?

.....

.....

Language

1 Match the sentence halves.

1. If you like spicy food,	a) we can wear our new clothes.
2. What happens if we	b) they taste delicious.
3. If we go to the wedding,	c) use AI.
4. If you grill sweet potatoes,	d) this meal is perfect.
5. If you want to write stories,	e) it tastes sweeter.
6. If you add some sugar,	f) post our personal details online?

2 Choose the correct options in the dialogs.

1. **A:** I helped at my uncle (Ail's/Ails') workshop during the summer vacation.
   B: That's great. Is (his/its) workshop near here?
2. **A:** (Can/Can't) you help me with my homework, please?
   B: Sorry, I (can/can't) help you just now. I ('ll help/helps) you later.
3. **A:** Is the new (student's/students') name Salma?
   B: No, it isn't. (Her/Its) name is Nabila.
4. **A:** How often do you borrow your (parents'/parent's) laptop?
   B: I only borrow (it/them) on the weekend.

3 **Complete the post with the past simple of the verbs and adverbs of frequency in brackets.**

Last summer, I (1)..... (always/get up) early. I (2)..... (often/help out) at a family **workshop in** the morning and I (3)..... (sometimes/teach) my friends how to play chess in the afternoons. In the evenings, I (4)..... (be/usually) tired, but I (5)..... (alway/write) my journal! I (6)..... (never/go) to bed late because every day was a busy day.

Writing

Write a blog post about a special family event or celebration.

..... | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINK | ARCHIVE

Listening Texts

Unit 1

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Hi, I'm Omar. This summer was great. I played football every day. At first, I played with some of my neighbors. Our street is quiet and very safe. We had a lot of fun.

General Exercises on Unit 1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Hana Goda is a famous table tennis player. She was born on 12th December 2007. She started playing table tennis at the age of four. She plays for Al Ahly Sports Club.

Unit 2

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Last weekend, Lama got married to Sameh. It was really fun. Many guests came. The whole family was there too. They took photos with the bride and the groom.

General Exercises on Unit 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's birthday party last week. The party was at the club. We all had a lot of fun.

Unit 3

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I write a "To do" list to organize my day. After school, I take exercise, so on Tuesdays and Thursdays I play football with my friends. I go to evening classes to learn new skills.

General Exercises on Unit 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I love drawing and painting, and I enjoy going to the art club after school. I also practice most days at home. It's so relaxing. My favorite thing to draw is animals.

Unit 4

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The world's oceans are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Ocean clean-up project collect rubbish in the water, then ships take it back to land for recycling.

General Exercises on Unit 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

This month, 24 talented students from Egypt, aged 14-18, participated in the international competition in the United States. It's a competition to develop a science or engineering project.

Unit 5

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

My family lives on a farm. There is a drought because of hot weather. The tomato plants are getting smaller. We can't sell tomatoes. Father is looking for another job.

General Exercises on Unit 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

My name's Ali. Last weekend, I watched a documentary about the effects of human activities on the planet. I wanted to be more eco-friendly.

Unit 6

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Maakouda are very popular in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia. People make them with potatoes. Sometimes, they put meat, fish, or cheese in them. They're so good.

General Exercises on Unit 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I didn't know about Australian food, so I went on the internet and did a search for famous dishes. I looked at a few websites. I could write a recipe card.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. got
2. Did you do
3. help

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. didn't often
2. usually
3. How often

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. never
2. watched
3. weren't

Unit 2

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. car window
2. It
3. Whose

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. Can I
2. their
3. girls'

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. your
2. me
3. can

Unit 3

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. laughing
2. plays
3. he is

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. me
2. he
3. Her

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. wants
2. you
3. am not

Unit 4

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. Be
2. don't bully
3. don't help

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. Be careful
2. don't feel
3. do you say

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. Going
2. do you do
3. do you speak

Unit 5

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. large
2. biggest
3. less expensive

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. a police
2. The police
3. youngest

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. but
2. Because
3. but

Unit 6

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. was
2. did you invite
3. weren't

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. tonight
2. in a minute
3. 1960s

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. here
2. later
3. ago

Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Group 1: All three forms are the same

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
bit	يراهن	bit	bit
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
hurt	يصيب/يؤذى	hurt	hurt
let	يسمح/يدع	let	let
put	يضع	put	put
put out	يطفئ	put out	put out
read	يقرأ	read	read
rid	يزيل	rid	rid
set	يعد-يجهز	set	set
shut	يغلق	shut	shut
split	يفصل	split	split
sweat	يعرق	sweat	sweat

Group 2: The 2nd and 3rd forms are the same

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
bleed	ينزف	bled	bled
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
build	يبنى	built	built
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يمسك / يلحق / يصطاد	caught	caught
feel	يحس / يشعر	felt	felt
fight	يحارب	fought	fought
find	يجد	found	found
get	يحصل	got	got
have	يمتلك	had	had

hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hold	يمسك	held	held
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
leave	يترك/ يغادر	left	left
lend	يسلف	lent	lent
light	يشعل	lit	lit
lose	يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
make	يصنع	made	made
meet	يقابل	met	met
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
say	يقول	said	said
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
send	يرسل	sent	sent
shoot	يصوب	shot	shot
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
spend	ينفق/يقضى	spent	spent
stand	يقف	stood	stood
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
win	يفوز	won	won

Group 3: **All three forms are different**

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
be	يكون	was, were	been
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
blow	يهب	blew	blown

break	يكسر	broke	broken
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يقود	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
give	يعطى	gave	given
grow	ينمو / يزرع / يكبر	grew	grown
hide	يختفى	hid	hidden
know	يعرف	knew	known
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
see	يرى	saw	seen
show	يوضح/يعرض	showed	shown
sing	يغنى	sang	sung
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
swim	يعوم	swam	swum
take	يأخذ	took	taken
throw	يرمى/يلقى	threw	thrown
wake	يوقظ	woke	woken
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
write	يكتب	wrote	written

1st PREP
FIRST TERM

AL ADWAA
Gem

2025

BEYOND WORDS

HELLO!

Ongoing Assessment Booklet

CONTENTS

1. Follow-up Worksheets	نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة العام)
2. Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheets	نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة الأزهر)
3. Mini-Tests (General & Azhar)	الاختبارات القصيرة (عام + أزهر)
4. Monthly Models (General & Azhar)	النماذج الشهرية (عام + أزهر)
5. (10) Guiding Models	(١٠) نماذج استرشادية
6. Listening Texts	نصوص الأستماع

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

member	.....	.....	بطولة/دورة مباريات
community	.....	.....	خطأ
software	.....	.....	مذهل/مدهش
talented	.....	.....	متحمس
adult	.....	.....	مجموعة محلية
volunteer	.....	.....	غريب

Language Expressions & Prepositions

help out	.....	.....	متوتر/عصبى بشأن
instead of	.....	.....	يحل مشكلة
score a goal	.....	.....	يؤدى أنشطة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	تغرب	.....	
.....	يقلع عن/ييأس	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	ممكن	.....	مستحيل
positive	.....	negative	.....

Definitions

..... : think about something and form an idea of it

..... : something makes you tired so that you want to rest or sleep

..... : someone who trains a person or team in a sport

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Salma always ..... her best to do well in school.
   a) makes b) tries c) takes d) helps
2. My friends learnt how to repair car engines in the ..... .
   a) workshop b) bank c) tournament d) party
3. The ..... on my grandma's phone needs an update.
   a) community b) vacation c) activity d) software
4. Don't give ....., you can do it!
   a) at b) with c) up d) in
5. Laila ..... up early this morning.
   a) woke b) wake c) wakes d) waking
6. They didn't ..... the museum last Sunday.
   a) visiting b) visited c) visits d) visit
7. Ola is a ..... of the school team.
   a) partner b) member c) vacation d) mistake
8. They take their old newspapers to the ..... center.
   a) sports b) player c) workshop d) recycling
9. Adel ..... to help clean up the park.
   a) volunteered b) imagined c) mentioned d) kicked
10. Who ..... with you to the cinema yesterday?
    a) go b) goes c) went d) going

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did Omar ..... (found) his lost keys?
2. The train ..... (arrive) late at the station. People were angry.
3. My father was busy yesterday. He ..... (write) many emails.
4. What ..... (does) the children play last Friday?
5. Hend ..... (be) at the club yesterday. She was in the library.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hadi : How was your vacation?

Kady : (1)..... . I had a lot of fun.

Hadi : (2).....?

Kady : The weather was sunny.

Hadi : Did you go to the beach?

Kady : (3)..... . I swam in the sea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Amir ..... well on the math test and got a high score.
   a) did b) made c) took d) got
2. Youssef is a ..... basketball player on the school team.
   a) dangerous b) safe c) empty d) talented
3. They felt tired after a long and ..... trip.
   a) bright b) tiring c) strange d) only
4. We ..... the zoo last summer.
   a) visited b) visits c) visit d) visiting
5. My brother got wet because he didn't ..... the umbrella.
   a) took b) taking c) takes d) take

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your last vacation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

tunnel	.....	.....	حل
effect	.....	.....	يدفن
religion	.....	.....	سائح
smart	.....	.....	حجر
weather	.....	.....	مميز/خاص
temple	.....	.....	عالم آثار

Language Expressions & Prepositions

cut away	.....	.....	يعتنى بـ
problem with	.....	.....	يتصل بالإنترنت
edit the videos	.....	.....	يحمى المبنى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يقضى/ينفق	.....	
.....	يشترى	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	مفيد	.....	عديم الفائدة
active	.....	lazy	.....

Definitions

..... : a model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone

..... : a place where people come together to pray

..... : underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. In Ancient Egypt, people go to the temples to ..... .
   a) prey b) pray c) explain d) discuss
2. Manal spent all afternoon ..... the videos for the project.
   a) protecting b) giving c) editing d) looking
3. The ..... discovered a hidden catacomb in the desert.
   a) cooker b) archaeologist c) doctor d) farmer
4. Please, ... my cat while I'm away.
   a) walk around b) cut away c) look after d) find out
5. I always ..... to the library after school when I was young.
   a) go b) goes c) gone d) went
6. How often ..... she go for a walk last vacation?
   a) did b) was c) does d) is
7. The teacher was very ..... and explained the math problem.
   a) useless b) lazy c) special d) helpful
8. Fadel ..... his ideas to the class.
   a) presented b) prayed c) noticed d) buried
9. I like to ..... online to watch funny videos on the computer.
   a) edit b) go c) protect d) give
10. She received a ..... gift from her grandmother on her birthday.
    a) special b) weak c) useless d) bad

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Lamia often ..... (paint) pictures when she was at school.
2. My sister ..... (hard) ever drank coffee.
3. I ..... (always) ate spicy food. I didn't like it at all.
4. My friend sometimes ..... (forget) to bring his lunch, so I shared my lunch with him.
5. I ..... (helped/often) my family and friends in the summer vacation.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eating too much sweets is bad ..... your teeth.
   a) in b) on c) for d) at
2. They built a ..... through the hill for the new train line.
   a) panel b) tunnel c) canal d) temple
3. My brothers and I were ..... about our trip to the zoo.
   a) excited b) angry c) useful d) special
4. Omar ..... helped his dad in the garden. He was very active.
   a) never b) always c) hardly ever d) sometimes
5. **A:** ..... did he play football? **B:** He usually played at weekends.
   a) Why b) Where c) How often d) How much

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tourists come to visit Egypt because it's a very beautiful country. The people in Egypt are very kind and friendly. Many tourists go to Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh to enjoy the sea. A lot of tourists enjoy the warm weather in Aswan in winter. Tourists can see the Pyramids in Giza and many museums in Cairo. Last Monday, my friend Sam came from London to visit Egypt. He went to Luxor by plane. He stayed at a nice hotel. He visited a lot of temples and beautiful places.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Sam come from?

   .....

2. Why do many tourists go to Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh?

   .....

3. How did Sam go to Luxor?

   .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Tourists usually visit Aswan in ..... .
   a) summer b) winter c) spring d) autumn
5. Tourists can see the Pyramids in ..... .
   a) Hurghada b) Luxor c) Cairo d) Giza

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

clear	.....	.....	جائزة
national	.....	.....	إنجاز
speed	.....	.....	انتصار
attention	.....	.....	رحلة (طويلة)
difficulty	.....	.....	يسمح
focus	.....	.....	خصم

Language Expressions & Prepositions

at the age of	.....	.....	خطوة بخطوة
come true	.....	.....	يشرح بوضوح
stop ... from	.....	.....	لساعات طويلة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يختار	.....	
.....	يرتفع	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	مرتفع	.....	منخفض
important	.....	unimportant	.....

Definitions

..... : the person who wins a competition

..... : a thing that someone has done very well

..... : the people you play against in a competition

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialog:

Nasser and Nabil are talking about their summer vacation.

Nasser : How are you, Nabil?

Nabil : (1)..... . Nice to see you again.

Nasser : Are you happy to be back at school?

Nabil : (2)..... . I'm pleased to see my friends again.

Nasser : (3).....?

Nabil : I helped out at a local community project.

Nasser : What did you do on that project?

Nabil : We cleaned up litter. (4).....?

Nasser : I planted trees in my street.

Nabil : (5)..... . The lesson is about to start.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's important to work hard to ..... success.
   a) achieve b) practice c) focus d) connect
2. Hana was young. However, she became top of the women's world ..... .
   a) opponent b) goals c) ranking d) health
3. I ..... notes in class to remember what the teacher says.
   a) do b) make c) watch d) get
4. My father sometimes ..... stories in his free time in the past.
   a) writes b) writing c) wrote d) write
5. When did you ..... shopping?
   a) went b) go c) going d) goes
6. They ..... hard to achieve their dreams.
   a) stop b) explain c) come d) work
7. Rami played against a strong ..... in the match.
   a) victory b) talent c) opponent d) tournament
8. My sister took a lovely ..... for her drawing in a school competition.
   a) journey b) award c) attention d) ranking
9. Amr has a ..... in reading, so he practices it a lot with his teacher.
   a) difficulty b) rest c) quality d) speed
10. Hana ..... Egypt's youngest ever national champion in 2019.
    a) become b) becomes c) became d) becoming

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When is the speaker back at school?
   a) This month. b) This week. c) This Friday. d) This hour.
2. How was the speaker's summer vacation?
   a) Great. b) Bad. c) Boring. d) Nervous.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The team celebrated their ..... after winning the game.
   a) price b) equipment c) victory d) focus
2. My parents were born ..... a village.
   a) at b) on c) in d) from
3. Mazen has online courses to ..... his skills.
   a) improve b) lower c) win d) break
4. My family ..... stayed home on weekends. They always went out.
   a) usually b) ever c) never d) often
5. We ..... our last dinner at a nice restaurant.
   a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eating

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. are – for – dreams – **What** – your – the future?

   .....

2. in – 2007 – was- in – **Hana** – born – December.

   .....

3. true – possible – **It's** – come – your dreams – make – to.

   .....

4. did – study – **How often** – your – French – brother?

   .....

Listening Text:

I'm happy to be back at school this week after the summer vacation. It was great. I learned quite a lot that summer.

Unit 1 Mini-Tests

General

1 Complete the following dialog:

Khaled and Omar are talking about the activities they did.

Khaled : Hi Omar, what did you do yesterday?
Omar : Hi Khaled! (1)..... .
Khaled : Football! Did you win the game?
Omar : (2)..... . We lost.
Khaled : Did you watch a film last night?
Omar : (3)..... .
Khaled : (4)..... ?
Omar : I watched "Toy Story".
Khaled : (5)..... ?
Omar : Yes, I enjoyed it.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The teacher ..... (explain) the lesson clearly, so we all understood well.
2. Grandparents ..... (always) watched online videos. They didn't have internet.
3. Why did you ..... (came) late?
4. I ..... (didn't) happy yesterday.

3 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Summer vacation"

.....
.....
.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Khaled and Omar are talking about their last dinner.

Omar : Did you eat pizza for dinner?
Khaled : (1)..... . I had spaghetti.
Omar : Yum! (2)..... ?
Khaled : My mom cooked it.
Omar : Was it delicious?
Khaled : (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She talked to the ..... about joining the basketball team.
   a) community b) coach c) member d) recycling
2. People used to put their dead in ..... long ago.
   a) religion b) structure c) catacombs d) statues
3. Today, the park is open to the ..... for free.
   a) smart b) talented c) special d) public
4. We ..... made cake in our birthday parties. We liked it so much.
   a) always b) never c) hardly ever d) ever
5. Where ..... you go last Friday?
   a) did b) were c) do d) are

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I – my parents – at – helped – work.
   .....
2. the morning – with – played – my neighbours – I – in.
   .....
3. is – on – of – the River Nile – the West Bank – Edfu.
   .....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

relatives	.....	.....	يوقع
bride	.....	.....	عقد/قِلادة
necklace	.....	.....	حفلة استقبال
gift	.....	.....	لذيذ
soup	.....	.....	رسالة
outfit	.....	.....	زواج

Language Expressions & Prepositions

get married to	.....	.....	يلتقط صورة
ask for	.....	.....	خطة لـ
time for	.....	.....	يصل لحضور

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يقف	.....	
.....	يبيع	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	ضخم	.....	صغير
amazing	.....	ordinary	.....

Definitions

.....: the paper that the people who are getting married sign

.....: a woman who gets married

.....: something sweet that people at a wedding eat

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali and Nariman celebrated their ..... with a big party.
   a) service b) outfit c) marriage d) shopping
2. The computer ..... helps us share files.
   a) network b) media c) message d) reception
3. The ..... asked us to smile to take good photos.
   a) paper b) wedding c) contract d) photographer
4. The ..... wore a classic black suit for the wedding.
   a) guest b) groom c) outfit d) event
5. My dog moves ..... tail when it is happy.
   a) its b) her c) their d) my
6. This car belongs to Sami and Hani. It's ..... .
   a) Sami and Hani b) Sami's and Hani's
   c) Sami's and Hani d) Sami and Hani's
7. Women like to wear things made of ..... .
   a) plastic b) gold c) gift d) soup
8. My mom don't have much time ..... her hobbies.
   a) at b) in c) by d) for
9. We met the teacher in the ..... room.
   a) teacher b) teachers c) teacher's d) teachers'
10. I used to visit my ..... at the weekend when I was in Egypt.
    a) relatives b) gifts c) contracts d) windows

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Men) toilets are over there.
2. My ..... (mom) name is Feryal.
3. I don't like ..... (me) new job. I'll look for another one.
4. The family enjoyed ..... (its) vacation on the beach.
5. ..... (Ziad and Amir) father is in hospital.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hussein's sister got married last Friday.

Abdullah : Hi, Hussein! How are you?

Hussein : Hi, Abdullah! My sister got married.

Abdullah : That's wonderful! (1)..... ?

Hussein : She got married last Friday.

Abdullah : How was the wedding?

Hussein : (2)..... . We had a lot of fun.

Abdullah : (3)..... ?

Hussein : Yes, she was very happy. Everyone had a good time.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We will ..... my birthday tomorrow.
   a) hug b) suggest c) celebrate d) sign
2. My uncle bought a new house and ..... the contract.
   a) sent b) laughed c) hugged d) signed
3. All the ..... stood up when the bride came.
   a) guests b) necklaces c) bracelet d) cakes
4. This shop sells ..... clothes.
   a) girl b) girl's c) girls' d) girls
5. **A:** Is this Peter's book? **B:** No, ... book is in the schoolbag.
   a) my b) his c) her d) its

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your friend's wedding"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

explore	.....	.....	حالة/ظرف
fetch	.....	.....	الريف
remember	.....	.....	أثاث
details	.....	.....	قاعة/صالة
coast	.....	.....	ملف شخصي
address	.....	.....	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

do the housework	.....	.....	يذهب للتزلج
help with	.....	.....	شخصيًا (بنفسك)
hang out	.....	.....	يتبع القواعد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يطير	.....	
.....	يطعم	.....	
.....	يعرض	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	أمين	.....	غير أمين
well-known	.....	unknown	.....
.....	مؤدب	.....	غير مؤدب
sell	.....	buy	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Being ..... is a very good behavior سلوك.
   a) unkind b) horrible c) honest d) useless
2. Maha politely ..... more ice cream after dinner.
   a) studied b) illustrated c) fetched d) requested
3. I always ..... the phone when it rings at home.
   a) answer b) pay c) buzz d) fly
4. My sister kept her books ..... good condition by using a cover.
   a) at b) for c) on d) in
5. ..... teacher gave us homework to do over the weekend.
   a) His b) Her c) Their d) Our
6. The ..... bowl is empty; it needs food.
   a) dog b) dog's c) dogs d) dogs'
7. Scientists like to travel to ..... new places.
   a) explain b) explore c) fetch d) carry
8. We should use ..... transport to help the environment.
   a) true b) polite c) honest d) public
9. I met and talked to Adel Emam ..... person.
   a) in b) at c) for d) from
10. Will you ..... these books for me, please?
    a) carried b) carrying c) carries d) carry

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (I) sister and I like to read books together.
2. ..... (His) friends are coming over for a party. She will meet them.
3. The ..... (teacher) desk is at the front of the classroom.
4. Can you ..... (switching) on the lights?
5. Mona goes to a good ..... (girl) school.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I ..... my art project to my classmates today.
   a) presented b) gave c) fed d) made
2. My little sister always says "please" and "thank you" to be ..... .
   a) impolite b) polite c) busy d) free
3. We are looking for a new ..... to move into.
   a) hometown b) website c) rule d) apartment
4. ..... new puppy is so cute. They like it so much.
   a) Ours b) Their c) Its d) Him
5. ..... car is outside the house.
   a) Dad b) Dads' c) Dads d) Dad's

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I live with my mom, dad, and my younger sister. We live in a nice house with a garden where we play together. Every morning, my mom makes delicious breakfast for us. My dad goes to work, and my mom looks after our home. In the evenings, we all come together for dinner. We talk about our day and share funny stories. Sometimes, at weekends, we visit our grandparents. They live nearby, and we love spending time with them. My sister and I do our homework together. I enjoy playing games with my dad and helping my mom in the kitchen. Our family likes watching films on Friday nights, and we laugh a lot. I feel happy and loved in my family.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How does your family spend time together in the evenings?

.....

2. Why do you enjoy visiting your grandparents at weekends?

.....

3. What activities do you like to do with your dad and mom?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. ..... makes breakfast for the family every morning.
   a) Mom b) Dad c) Both a and b d) Sister
5. The family enjoys ..... on Friday nights.
   a) going to the park b) playing games
   c) watching films d) cooking together

Unit 2
Lessons 5 & 6

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

handle	.....	.....	التصوير
emoji	.....	.....	يدردش
celebration	.....	.....	ينقضي/يمر/ينجح/يمرر
ability	.....	.....	هواية
practice	.....	.....	عديد
challenge	.....	.....	محدد/معين

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make a friend	.....	.....	يقوم بعمل مشروع
focus on	.....	.....	موسم لـ
proud of	.....	.....	مهتم بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يشعر	.....	
.....	يتعامل	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	غير رسمي	.....	رسمي
difficult	.....	easy	.....

Definitions

..... : talking to someone in a friendly way, often online

..... : a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities

..... : the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialog:

Nadi wants to go to the beach.

Nadi : Hi Mustafa, what do you want to do today?
Mustafa : Hi Nadi! I'm not sure. Where do you want to go?
Nadi : (1)..... .
Mustafa : When should we go to the beach?
Nadi : (2)..... . Can you ask Ahmed to join us?
Mustafa : (3)..... . What should we bring with us?
Nadi : We should bring towels, sunscreen, and some food.
Mustafa : (4).....?
Nadi : I want to stay until the evening. (5).....?
Mustafa : We can play volleyball.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The test was ..... but I did my best.
   a) impolite b) polite c) difficult d) easy
2. Najwa dealt ..... the problem quickly.
   a) with b) at c) make d) for
3. Please, ... to the message soon.
   a) chat b) reply c) test d) deal
4. The ..... car had an accident.
   a) policemen of b) policemen c) policemen' d) policemen's
5. Happy birthday to me. It's ..... birthday.
   a) my b) your c) his d) her
6. The puzzle was a fun .....for the whole family.
   a) nature b) challenge c) forum d) ability
7. Many people came to ..... my sister because she passed her exams.
   a) congratulate b) chat c) continue d) test
8. We ..... with people who can't talk in sign language لغة الاشارة.
   a) share b) focus c) pass d) communicate
9. My best friend and I have many things ..... common.
   a) at b) on c) in d) for
10. Salma and Ashly knew that ..... friendship was real and meaningful.
    a) her b) their c) my d) his

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1. What sport does the speaker's brother play?
   a) Football. b) Volleyball. c) Tennis. d) Handball.
2. How many goals/points did he score?
   a) Thirteen. b) Thirty. c) Sixteen. d) Sixty.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They ..... a challenge to see who could run the fastest.
   a) made b) did c) presented d) tested
2. We saw each other ..... for the first time.
   a) face-to-face b) polite c) informal d) formal
3. Maria had a ..... time at the party. She had a lot of fun.
   a) ugly b) difficult c) fantastic d) hard
4. Hurry up, Heba. That's ..... train.
   a) it b) we c) its d) our
5. The school is building a new ..... playground.
   a) children b) children's c) children' d) children of

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. to – birthday – my – **Happy** – brother.

   .....

2. so – my – proud – **I'm** – family – of.

   .....

3. **I** – some family – deal – problems – sometimes – with.

   .....

4. you – fetch – a – water – **Will** – me – of – glass?

   .....

Listening Text:

My brother is a top student and also an amazing football player. He scored 16 goals last season for our school team!

Unit 2 Mini-Tests

General

1 Complete the following dialog:

Rose is asking Rana for some help.

Rose: Can you help me with my homework?

Rana: Yes, of course. (1)……?

Rose: I need help with this math problem.

Rana: (2)…….

Rose: (3)……?

Rana: You can start doing it by adding these two numbers.

Rose: Can you check if I did it right?

Rana: (4)…….

Rose: Thank you.

Rana: (5)…….

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Men's clothes are often cheaper than …… (women).
2. These are …… (Nelly and Sally) pencil cases.
3. You're sitting on the …… (teachers') keys. He wants them.
4. I need to find Manal. I took …… (his) jacket by mistake.

3 Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Omar about a birthday party. Your name is Mai.

……

……

……

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Zeinab : Hi Aisha, can you help me with my project?

Aisha : (1)…….

Zeinab : Can you help me find some pictures for it?

Aisha : Sure. (2)……?

Zeinab : Yes, I need special pictures of animals.

Aisha : (3)……. The internet has many pictures.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Grandma and Grandpa are my …… .
   a) events b) meals c) relatives d) services
2. Dad …… the intercom to let our friends in.
   a) buzzed b) carried c) requested d) typed
3. Climbing the highest mountain was a big …… .
   a) control b) challenge c) friendship d) chatting
4. Is that your …… car?
   a) mother b) mothers c) mothers' d) mother's
5. We gave them …… telephone number to call us.
   a) your b) their c) our d) her

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. you – **I'm** – me – a photo – sending – of.

……

2. a lot of – **We all** – fun – had – together.

……

3. time – you – **Do** – to – meet up with – have – me?

……

Monthly Model (1) on Units 1 & 2

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He asked a swimming ..... to teach him how to swim better.
   a) partner b) coach c) technology d) member
2. She ..... the litter on the beach to keep it clean.
   a) got up b) waited for c) joined in d) picked up
3. They discovered ancient ..... under the city.
   a) catacombs b) volunteers c) obelisks d) pyramids
4. Her amazing paintings ..... the world.
   a) achieved b) brought c) wowed d) won
5. Her ..... was good for the rainy day.
   a) bride b) outfit c) reception d) guest
6. The clock ..... me it was time for lunch.
   a) reminded b) fetched c) posted d) typed
7. She was ..... to hear that her friend was safe.
   a) meaningful b) anxious c) specific d) relieved
8. Don't take ..... books. I want them.
   a) mine b) me c) my d) I
9. My ..... car is black. They had it a long time ago.
   a) grandparent b) grandparents
   c) grandparents' d) grandparent's
10. The children ..... to visit the park, but their parents didn't agree.
    a) want b) wanted c) wants d) wanting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mazen wants ..... (her) ball. Give it to him.
2. My father like to buy his clothes from big ..... (men) clothes shops.
3. She ..... (not/happy) yesterday. She lost her watch.
4. I ..... (looked always) after my little sister.
5. How did you ..... (went) to school yesterday?

Monthly Model (2) on Units 1 & 2

Al-Azhar

1 Complete the following dialog:

Kareem is asking Waleed about his last vacation.

Kareem : Hi Waleed! How was your vacation?

Waleed : Hi Kareem! (1)..... I went to the beach.

Kareem : Who did you go with?

Waleed : (2)..... .

Kareem : Did you and your sister swim in the sea?

Waleed : (3)..... . The water was very warm.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My sister's wedding was a very special day. It happened last month on a sunny Saturday. Many people came to celebrate with us. My sister wore a beautiful white dress, and she looked very happy. The **celebration** was in a big garden with flowers everywhere. We had a big party. There was a lot of delicious food, and everyone danced and laughed. My favorite part was the wedding cake. It was huge and tasted so good! I also gave a small speech to wish my sister and her groom a happy life together. Everyone cheered and clapped. It was a day I will always remember because it was full of love and joy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What did the writer's sister wear at the wedding?

.....

3. Why will the writer always remember the day of the wedding?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The wedding happened last ..... .

a) year b) week c) month d) Friday

5. The word "huge" is similar in meaning to very ..... .

a) big b) small c) colorful d) simple

6. The underlined word "**celebration**" refers to the ..... .

a) sister's dress b) wedding cake

c) speech d) party in the garden

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

first aid	.....	.....	طاهٍ
captain	.....	.....	ملعب تنس
restaurant	.....	.....	ينتظر
lovely	.....	.....	يتخيل
organize	.....	.....	مهارة
journal	.....	.....	وقت فراغ

Language Expressions & Prepositions

get ready for	.....	.....	يأخذ دورات
at a sports day	.....	.....	شكرًا على
do activities	.....	.....	يرتب المنزل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يقضى	.....	
.....	ينام	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	منتظم	.....	غير منتظم
hungry	.....	full	.....
.....	صحى	.....	غير صحى
different	.....	the same	.....
.....	يبدأ	.....	ينهى

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People like to go to parks because they enjoy green ..... .
   a) captains b) cooks c) spaces d) chefs
2. They ..... in line for long to take the bus.
   a) waited b) focused c) described d) got
3. My mother ..... tasty food for us for the picnic.
   a) went b) drank c) ate d) made
4. Last summer vacation, we liked to ..... for walks along the beach.
   a) do b) go c) make d) get
5. Samir ..... down his thoughts in his journal right now.
   a) writes b) wrote c) is writing d) was writing
6. My daughter ..... to play the piano these days.
   a) is learning b) learns c) learned d) learn
7. I don't have ..... because I have too much work every day.
   a) free time b) a tennis court
   c) green spaces d) a table tennis
8. Zaina wore a ..... dress. She was very beautiful.
   a) irregular b) lovely c) full d) unhealthy
9. We practice football on the sports ..... every day.
   a) field b) community c) classes d) pool
10. My friend helped me when I had a cut because he learnt ..... .
    a) first aid b) to do lists c) thoughts d) restaurants

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Kady is ..... (studies) English grammar online.
2. They ..... (not/ play) games together at the moment.
3. The students ..... (do) a quiz in the classroom. They are quiet now.
4. ..... (Do) you studying for your exam now?
5. I ..... (tidy) my room. I am cleaning the windows.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Taha likes to play chess with his father. Sayed likes to read books.

Taha : Hi, Sayed! What do you do in your free time?

Sayed : Hi, Taha! (1)..... . What about you?

Taha : (2)..... .

Sayed : Do you play computer games every day?

Taha : No, I don't. I play at weekends. (3).....?

Sayed : I read every day.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They ..... time with their family at weekends.
   a) spend b) send c) focus d) wait
2. Rola often thinks ..... her future.
   a) on b) for c) at d) about
3. The train will arrive in five ..... .
   a) thoughts b) minutes c) classes d) spaces
4. Mom ..... her younger daughter how to draw at present.
   a) is teaching b) teaches c) teaching d) taught
5. ..... the scientists doing experiments in the lab now?
   a) Were b) Did c) Are d) Do

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your free time"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

decorate	.....	.....	إضافى
relaxed	.....	.....	مدير مدرسة
bazaar	.....	.....	خيط
vote	.....	.....	استراحة/فاصل
homemade	.....	.....	خبير
stall	.....	.....	مضغوط

Language Expressions & Prepositions

after-school classes	.....	.....	يؤدى جيدًا
worried about	.....	.....	فى وقت الاستراحة
present an idea to	.....	.....	يعمل بجد
on a stall	.....	.....	يعد خطة لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يفهم	.....	
.....	يشرب	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	لا يوافق	.....	يوافق
clear	.....	unclear	.....
.....	رائع	.....	فظيع/سيئ جدًا

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Alya loves wearing expensive ..... to special events.
   a) stalls b) string c) jewelry d) lemonade
2. Let's find healthy ..... to make pizza.
   a) principals b) ingredients c) jewelry d) cupcakes
3. After a 5-hour meeting, they felt ..... and tired.
   a) easy b) relaxed c) calm d) stressed
4. My daughter added colorful ..... to her bracelet.
   a) beads b) stalls c) experts d) persons
5. We need help. Can you help .....?
   a) we b) us c) she d) him
6. I miss my parents. I want to make a video call with ..... .
   a) they b) them c) theirs d) their
7. My uncle is always ..... . He doesn't like loud sounds.
   a) homemade b) stressed c) calm d) surprised
8. We should have a ..... after studying for hours.
   a) stall b) bead c) break d) letter
9. My mother was ..... when we had a party for her birthday. She didn't know.
   a) clear b) surprised c) terrible d) lazy
10. My friends and ..... are really worried about exams.
    a) I b) me c) my d) him

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I hate crisps. ..... (It) taste horrible!
2. Look, Sally is there. I want to see ..... (she).
3. You can ask Fareed for money. ..... (His) is very helpful.
4. I can't use the mobile phone. I think ..... (he) is broken.
5. This is ..... (you) cupcake. You can eat it anytime you want.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My mom ..... by the pool with a good book.
   a) homemade b) surprised c) relaxed d) stressed
2. We visited a ..... at the market that sold fresh vegetables.
   a) stall b) phrase c) text d) break
3. There is a shop in the ..... that sells handmade bracelets.
   a) bead b) jewelry c) string d) bazaar
4. My sister is very happy because I gave ..... a special present.
   a) her b) him c) they d) she
5. ..... need to talk to her. She has a misunderstanding.
   a) You b) Your c) Him d) Me

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My friend, Sara, has a problem. She seems sad and doesn't want to play with us at break. I asked her why she stays alone, but she didn't say. I feel worried about her, but I want to help.

First, I tried to talk to Sara again. I asked if she wanted to join our game or sit with us at lunch. She said no and walked away. I told her we missed her and wanted her to be happy with us.

Next, I decided to ask our teacher for advice. The teacher advised me to keep inviting Sara but also give her space if she needs it. The teacher promised to talk to Sara too. I hope Sara feels better soon and knows we care about her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Sara doesn't want to play with her friends at break? .....
2. What did the writer do to try and help Sara feel better? .....
3. What advice did the teacher give to help Sara? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Sara ..... when the writer asked her to join their game.
   a) said yes b) said no c) smiled d) accepted
5. The writer asked ..... for advice about Sara.
   a) a friend b) a parent c) the teacher d) a brother

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

geocacher	.....	.....	يستكشف
treasure	.....	.....	يصطاد/يطارد/يلاحق
logbook	.....	.....	مُتضمِّن/مُدرَج/مشمول
summary	.....	.....	سجل
particular	.....	.....	مخفى/مخبئ
geeky	.....	.....	زميل دراسة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

do geocaching	.....	.....	يحل الألغاز
add to	.....	.....	ينتقل إلى
work out	.....	.....	زوج من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يؤسس/ينشئ	.....	
.....	يقود	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	ممكن	.....	مستحيل
positive	.....	negative	.....

Definitions

.....: a sort of outdoor treasure hunt

.....: information that helps you solve a problem or find something

.....: a written record of events

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialog:

Andro and Kirolos are talking about their free time. Kirolos likes to play the guitar.

Andro : Hi Kirolos! What do you like to do in your free time?
Kirolos : Hi Andro! (1)..... . What about you?
Andro : I like to paint. Do you paint, too?
Kirolos : No, but I think it's cool. (2).....?
Andro : Yes, I play sports. I play basketball.
Kirolos : (3)..... .
Andro : What kind of films do you like?
Kirolos : I like action films. What about you?
Andro : I like comedy ones. (4).....?
Kirolos : (5)..... . Playing video games is fun!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yassin ..... the team to winning with his great skills.
   a) explored b) led c) missed d) hunted
2. The teacher ..... the math problem on the board.
   a) set up b) improved c) worked out d) counted
3. Maged ..... the book back on the shelf after reading it.
   a) put b) hunt c) relax d) explore
4. The runners are very tired. We'll give ..... some water.
   a) us b) her c) him d) them
5. Some people ..... to talk to you right now.
   a) waited b) wait c) are waiting d) were waiting
6. ..... is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt.
   a) Classmate b) Geocaching c) Hometown d) Relaxing
7. My father was ill and he needed time to return to his ..... life.
   a) normal b) included c) relaxing d) hidden
8. This is my friend at school. He's my ..... .
   a) message b) record c) geocacher d) classmate
9. We didn't decide ..... the place we'll go to next weekend.
   a) in b) at c) on d) for
10. Take the book to the teacher. He wants ..... .
    a) he b) him c) it d) its

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nermin's family moved to ..... .
   a) Alexandria b) Oxford c) Paris d) Giza
2. Nermin's hobby is ..... .
   a) hiking b) painting c) drawing d) geocaching

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He ate half of the pizza, and I ate the ..... of it.
   a) rest b) tip c) pin d) bin
2. Mom likes to ..... more vegetables to our diet for better health.
   a) suggest b) decide c) move d) add
3. Learning a new language can be a challenge ..... some people.
   a) with b) on c) for d) at
4. My mother ..... today. We have much food.
   a) is cooking b) isn't cooking c) cook d) cooking
5. Would you like to play with ..... ? We need another player.
   a) our b) us c) them d) their

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. her family – **Nermin** – to – moved – the UK – with.

   .....

2. an app – to do – **You** – geocaching – need.

   .....

3. to – after – enjoy – art club – **I really** – school – going.

   .....

4. can – a group – **We** – to draw – together – set up.

   .....

Listening Text:

Nermin and her family moved from Alexandria to Oxford. She explored her new city through her favorite hobby, geocaching.

Unit 3 Mini-Tests

General

1 Complete the following dialog:

Salem wants to meet and have a snack with Mayar.

Mayar : What are you doing, Salem?
Salem : (1)..... . What about you?
Mayar : I am drawing a picture. Are you enjoying your book?
Salem : (2)..... . It's fantastic.
Mayar : What are you reading about?
Salem : I am reading about animals.
Mayar : (3).....?
Salem : No, I am not. I'm sitting in my room.
Mayar : (4).....?
Salem : Yes, I am hungry. (5).....!

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Lama and I ..... (paint) some pictures at present.
2. My children ..... (not/listen) to the radio now.
3. My aunt's visiting me next week. I hope ..... (her) brings me a present.
4. Peter asked me for your email address. Can I give it to ..... (he)?

3 Write a blog post of (80-90) words on:

"Your free time"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Khadeja is studying for her English test and Zeinab is watching TV.

Khadeja : What are you doing?
Zeinab : (1)..... .
Khadeja : Are you enjoying the show?
Zeinab : Yes, I am. (2).....?
Khadeja : I am studying for my English test.
Zeinab : Are you studying alone?
Khadeja : (3)..... . My sister is helping me.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I sent a ..... invitation to all my relatives.
   a) written b) relaxing c) hidden d) geeky
2. My cousins bought some colorful clothes at the ..... .
   a) phrase b) bazaar c) string d) text
3. They were so ..... that they ate quickly.
   a) cool b) full c) hungry d) thirsty
4. We're going to the cinema. Do ..... want to come?
   a) you b) your c) them d) him
5. What ..... Ghada doing right now?
   a) did b) has c) does d) is

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. free – much – have – I – time – don't.
   .....
2. like – walks – go – We – in – to – for – nature.
   .....
3. aren't – this – lessons – Our students – afternoon – having.
   .....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

airplane	.....	.....	جمعية خيرية
invention	.....	.....	يضغط
take care of	.....	.....	اللياقة البدنية
collect	.....	.....	يواجه
infographic	.....	.....	يتعرف على
click	.....	.....	محرك بحث

Language Expressions & Prepositions

save a photo	.....	.....	يولد كهرباء
take ... out	.....	.....	ممتلئ بـ
better for	.....	.....	يضع فى داخل
take away	.....	.....	يسترد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	تسطع	.....	
.....	يحتفظ بـ	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	معتاد	.....	غير معتاد
switch on	.....	switch off	.....
.....	مثير	.....	ممل

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They ..... many challenges in their new job.
   a) fix b) develop c) face d) collect
2. My cousin wants to become a ..... and study space.
   a) device b) scientist c) material d) charity
3. I ..... online to check my email.
   a) go b) make c) take d) get
4. Solar panels ..... electricity from sunlight.
   a) develop b) face c) do d) make
5. Ziad is very kind. He gave some of his money to a ..... .
   a) folder b) device c) battery d) charity
6. If you want to open this folder, ... on it twice.
   a) insert b) click c) produce d) press
7. Jamal has good ..... . He does sports every day.
   a) technology b) invention
   c) fitness d) advertisement
8. ..... shout at your friends.
   a) Not b) Doesn't c) Don't d) Always
9. Omar, ... down everything the teacher says to help you study later.
   a) not write b) writes
   c) write d) doesn't write
10. Don't ..... your bicycle outside overnight.
    a) leaves b) leaving c) leave d) left

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Always) talk on your phone while driving.
2. ..... (Cleaning) up your room by putting your clothes away.
3. Don't ..... (stayed) up too late playing video games.
4. Nancy, ... (takes) a break from your work every hour to relax your eyes.
5. ..... (Always) leave the tap open.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hadeer and Dalia are talking about their habits at weekends.

Hadeer : What do you usually do at the weekend?

Dalia : (1)..... .

Hadeer : What do you do on your grandpa's farm?

Dalia : (2)..... .

Hadeer : (3).....?

Dalia : Yes, I enjoy a lot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We saw many new places ..... our trip to the beach.
   a) at b) on c) in d) for
2. The weather is ..... in the morning. We will go out.
   a) cool b) busy c) boring d) ugly
3. Solar power is a/an ..... way to get energy.
   a) regular b) electric c) sustainable d) electronic
4. Don't ..... this book. It's horrible.
   a) read b) reads c) reading d) to read
5. ..... your homework before going to bed.
   a) Finish b) To finish c) Finishes d) Finishing

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"An eco-friendly invention"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

link	.....	.....	يطلب/طلب
bullying	.....	.....	يبرد
account	.....	.....	يمسح/يحذف
freeze	.....	.....	كلمة السر/المرور
prove	.....	.....	مخترق/متسلل إلكتروني
position	.....	.....	يغضب/ غاضب

Language Expressions & Prepositions

press a button	.....	.....	يعد قائمة
turn into	.....	.....	خليط/مزيج من
get hold of	.....	.....	يؤدى وظيفة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يرسل	.....	
.....	يختبئ/يختفى	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	بسيط	.....	معقد
careful	.....	careless	.....

Definitions

..... : to put yourself in a position where you cannot be seen

..... : quickly and with good results

..... : what you want to achieve when you do something

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The new smartphone app is very ..... . It helps me a lot.
   a) useless b) useful c) difficult d) hard
2. The cat likes to ..... under the bed when it's scared.
   a) hide b) lose c) appear d) choose
3. Asma missed the bus as a ..... of waking up late.
   a) mix b) position c) result d) record
4. ..... means quickly and with good results.
   a) Efficiently b) Lately c) Politely d) Sadly
5. If I ..... tired, I go to bed early.
   a) was b) am c) have d) will be
6. Teachers should know different ways to ..... the students in classes.
   a) request b) freeze c) control d) cool
7. We should ..... each other politely.
   a) download b) treat c) delete d) cycle
8. To ..... is to turn water into ice.
   a) freeze b) press c) accept d) hide
9. If you ..... exercise, you don't stay fit.
   a) aren't b) didn't c) haven't d) don't
10. What ..... if you freeze water?
    a) do you get c) you get
    c) you got d) did you get

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you put food into the freezer, it ..... (cool).
2. If we ..... (has) time, we go to the park for a walk.
3. What ..... (happen) if you mix yellow and blue?
4. If you ..... (not/water) plants, they die.
5. If you press the brake, the car ..... (slow) down.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The ..... stole my personal information.
   a) hacker b) post c) password d) message
2. Electronic ..... allows us to send emails quickly.
   a) messaging b) bullying c) chatting d) treating
3. Lina likes to ..... clothes in her free time.
   a) delete b) prove c) offend d) design
4. If you ..... the window, fresh air enters the room.
   a) are opening b) open c) opened d) opens
5. Teachers ..... angry if students don't do their homework.
   a) would get b) got c) get d) gets

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

People use many devices every day to help them with different tasks. One of the most important devices is the computer. Computers are used for work, school, and entertainment. They help us write documents, search the internet, and play games. Another important device is the tablet. Tablets are easy to carry and great for reading books, watching movies, and going online. Headphones are also important for many people. They allow us to listen to music, watch videos, and make calls. These devices make our lives more comfortable and enjoyable. They help us learn, communicate, and relax.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How do computers help us in daily life?

   .....

2. What do we use headphones for?

   .....

3. In what ways are tablets useful devices?

   .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Tablets are useful for ..... .
   a) listening to music b) reading
   c) watching movies d) b & c
5. Computers are used to ..... .
   a) play outdoors b) make phone calls
   c) search the internet d) watching television

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

participate	.....	.....	ينقذ
awesome	.....	.....	محرج/مرتبك/مضطرب
realize	.....	.....	يثق فى
respond	.....	.....	جائزة
seller	.....	.....	عنوان جذاب
scientific	.....	.....	لاعب ألعاب الفيديو

Language Expressions & Prepositions

save up	.....	.....	سعيد بشأن
make the payment	.....	.....	يقود المسيرة
on your own	.....	.....	للبيع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يؤذى/يضر	.....	
.....	يقود	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	إيجابى	.....	سلبى
expensive	.....	cheap	.....

Definitions

..... : someone who feels ashamed by something they did

..... : something really good or amazing

..... : something that costs a lot of money

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialog:

Samira participated in a technology competition and won third place.

Samira : Hi Randa, what did you do last week?

Randa : Hi Samira! Nothing important. What about you?

Samira : (1)..... .

Randa : That's great! (2).....?

Samira : I designed a smart plant pot that waters itself.

Randa : Wow! What did you win?

Samira : (3)..... .

Randa : (4).....?

Samira : Meeting other people and seeing their projects was the best part.

Randa : Do you plan to join more competitions?

Samira : (5)..... . I want to do it again.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They were ..... by their mistake.
   a) embarrassed b) part-time c) international d) talented
2. Ahmed read the movie ..... before watching it.
   a) scams b) skills c) links d) reviews
3. Hassan placed an ..... in the newspaper to sell his car.
   a) scam b) advertisement c) event d) seller
4. If you ..... sunscreen, your skin gets sunburned.
   a) put b) don't put c) doesn't put d) puts
5. ..... the main door as it is raining heavily outside.
   a) Closing b) Will close c) Close d) To close
6. Heba didn't ..... she was wrong.
   a) rescue b) realize c) participate d) reply
7. Don't ..... any website without knowing much about it.
   a) trust b) respond c) worry d) catch
8. My little brother always makes noise to ..... attention.
   a) add b) lead c) make d) get
9. Doaa likes to ..... in many activities at school.
   a) hurt b) cost c) participate d) explain
10. If we ..... time, we always go to the park.
    a) has b) have c) had d) are having

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1. What did Ali buy?
   a) A game. b) A camera. c) A console. d) A radio.
2. When did the scam happen?
   a) Last month. b) Last week.
   c) Last weekend. d) Last year.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Be cautious when you go online. "Cautious" means ..... .
   a) useless b) careful c) boring d) included
2. They were ..... by the talented singer.
   a) worried b) amazed c) bored d) broken
3. Fareeda ..... her friend about the date of her wedding.
   a) relaxed b) trusted c) messaged d) seemed
4. If it ..... rain for a long time, the earth gets very dry.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) won't
5. ..... forget your lunch.
   a) Won't b) Didn't c) Doesn't d) Don't

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. hard – month – **Ali** – last – worked – at – the café.

   .....

2. platform – great – **This** – sharing – is – for – photos.

   .....

3. participated in – the – **Many** – students – competition.

   .....

4. students – inventions – **Egyptian** – won – their – many – prizes for.

   .....

Listening Text:

Ali bought a games console last month. He made the payment, but it was a scam. He felt terrible.

Unit 4 Mini-Tests

General

1 Complete the following dialog:

Sayed and Magdy are taking about staying safe online.

Sayed : I'm thinking about staying safe online. Do you have any tips?

Magdy : (1)..... . Always use strong passwords for your accounts

Sayed : That's a good idea. (2).....?

Magdy : You should be careful about the information you share.

Sayed : Should I avoid clicking on unknown links?

Magdy : (3)..... . They can be dangerous.

Sayed : What about emails from unknown people?

Magdy : It's best to delete them. (4).....?

Sayed : No, thanks, Magdy. I'll be more careful online.

Magdy : (5)....., Sayed. Stay safe!

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we ..... (goes) out with friends, we normally go to a restaurant.
2. ..... (Speaking) in English, please.
3. ..... (Not) leave your jacket on the floor.
4. If you touch a flame, it ..... (burn) you.

3 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"A competition you participated in"

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hana and Jana are taking about using technologies.

Hana : Do you use any electronic devices?

Jana : (1)..... . I use a tablet.

Hana : (2).....?

Jana : I use it for reading and watching videos. (3).....?

Hana : I use it for reading e-books. What about a smart TV?

Jana : A smart TV is nice.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eating fruits and vegetables is better ..... your health.
   a) at b) for c) by d) on
2. Good ..... is important in school.
   a) behavior b) bully c) link d) platform
3. Nourhan wants to ..... for a new phone.
   a) prove b) face c) rescue d) save up
4. Don't ..... to water the plants every few days.
   a) forgot b) forget
   c) forgets d) forgetting
5. If you press the button, the light ..... on.
   a) turned b) turning c) turns d) turn

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. problems – world – many – has – **Our**.

   .....

2. password – very – **Your** – strong – be – should.

   .....

3. stays – careful, – on – forever – social media – **Be** – your comments.

   .....

Monthly Model (1) on Units 3 & 4

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We played on the tennis ..... yesterday.
   a) space b) pool c) recipe d) court
2. He likes to go ..... a walk in the park every evening.
   a) at b) for c) on d) by
3. He looked ..... as he sat in his favorite chair.
   a) relaxed b) extra c) worried d) bored
4. She ..... her friends from her old school.
   a) counts b) records c) misses d) improves
5. She learned how to use a search ..... for research.
   a) review b) charity c) technology d) engine
6. They ..... rubbish on the beach to make it clean.
   a) faced b) collected c) fixed d) guessed
7. We need to ..... steps to solve our problem.
   a) take b) do c) make d) get
8. I think it ..... hot tomorrow.
   a) going to be b) is c) will be d) must be
9. Look over there! A tree ..... .
   a) fell b) falls c) will fall d) is going to fall
10. My mother ..... right now.
    a) cooks b) is cooking c) cooked d) cook

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Can you help ..... (my)?
2. My friends and I are happy. ..... (They) aren't sad.
3. Be quiet! Your father ..... (works).
4. He likes studying. He ..... (is going to) be a doctor.
5. There are lots of clouds. It ..... (going/rain).

Monthly Model (2) on Units 3 & 4

Al-Azhar

1 Complete the following dialog:

Maya suggests going to the park and Sandy agrees.

Maya : Hi, Sandy! I have a plan for the weekend.

Sandy : Hi, Maya! (1)..... ?

Maya : I think we should go on a picnic.

Sandy : (2)..... . Where can we go?

Maya : (3)..... .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Green technology is really important. It focuses on producing things that do not harm nature. For example, solar panels use the sun's energy to make electricity without pollution. Electric cars are another example; they run on batteries, reducing air pollution. Green technology also includes recycling, where we re-use materials like paper and plastic instead of throwing **them** away. These technologies help reduce our impact on the planet and make a more sustainable future. Using green technology is important for keeping the Earth clean and healthy for the future.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What are two examples of green technology?

.....

3. Why is using green technology important for the future?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Solar panels use ..... to produce electricity.

a) wind b) water c) sun d) batteries

5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ..... .

a) batteries b) solar panels

c) cars d) paper and plastic

6. We should use green technology to ..... .

a) make new cars b) build factories

c) reduce pollution d) create waste

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

crops	.....	.....	مستوى
scarcity	.....	.....	فيضان
wildfires	.....	.....	درجة حرارة
source	.....	.....	يسبب/سبب
fortunately	.....	.....	بكتيريا
fever	.....	.....	يعانى من

Language Expressions & Prepositions

earn money	.....	.....	يحارب المرض
on a farm	.....	.....	يبقى فى السرير
plenty of	.....	.....	فى المتوسط/المعدل
take action	.....	.....	يبحث عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يحرق/يحترق	.....	
.....	يدفع ثمن	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	عادى	.....	غير عادى
dangerous	.....	safe	.....
.....	جاف	.....	مبلل/رطب

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... of sleep makes people feel tired.
   a) Surface b) Scale c) Lack d) Level
2. The police didn't know what ..... the fire.
   a) faced b) caused c) fell d) felt
3. Climate change has a great effect ..... growing crops.
   a) on b) at c) of d) in
4. The house ..... down last night. There was fire everywhere.
   a) fought b) covered c) faced d) burned
5. A lion is ..... dangerous than a giraffe.
   a) most b) more c) less d) least
6. She's got ..... money than you, but she doesn't care.
   a) less b) fewer c) much d) many
7. This summer, the highest ..... was 46°C.
   a) temperature b) drought c) heatstroke d) fever
8. There's a ..... in some countries because of the hot weather.
   a) crop b) surface c) degree d) drought
9. A child should have healthy food to ..... illnesses.
   a) have b) fight c) feel d) earn
10. The dangerous bacteria in dirty water can be ..... dangerous for children than for adults.
    a) least b) as c) more d) most

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Today you look ..... (nicer) you did yesterday.
2. Mohamed thinks Chinese is ..... (most) difficult language in the world.
3. Show me the ..... (better) restaurant downtown.
4. This exam was ..... (easy) than the last one.
5. Nowadays, temperatures are ..... (high) than they were in the past.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nawal and Fatema are talking about water scarcity.

Nawal : Do you hear about water scarcity?

Fatema : (1)..... .

Nawal : It's found all over the world.

Fatema : (2).....?

Nawal : It means there isn't enough water for everyone.

Fatema : (3).....?

Nawal : It's happening because of droughts.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Climate change ..... the Earth's weather.

a) fights b) covers c) faces d) affects

2. The water ..... in the river rose after the rain.

a) level b) scarcity c) skill d) crop

3. They ..... vegetables in their garden.

a) cover b) grow c) develop d) wash

4. Sama thinks math is more interesting ..... history.

a) this b) that c) then d) than

5. It was the ..... storm we had this year.

a) worst b) worse c) bad d) badly

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Lack of water"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

statue	.....	.....	يعيد استخدام
games consoles	.....	.....	يستهلك
bird feeder	.....	.....	موارد
recycling bin	.....	.....	يهدر/يبدد
Earth's crust	.....	.....	وعاء/حاوية
ideal	.....	.....	طبقة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make a difference to	.....	.....	يضبط المنبه
on stand-by	.....	.....	قيد الاستخدام
agree on	.....	.....	يستحم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	تغرب	.....	
.....	يقلع عن/ييأس	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	صلب	.....	سائل
possible	.....	impossible	.....

Definitions

..... : the study of rocks

..... : a machine to cool your home

..... : a container for plants

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The flowers look pretty in the ..... .
   a) mind map b) recycling bin
   c) hanging basket d) bird feeder
2. Children mustn't ..... too much sugar because it is bad for their teeth.
   a) save b) consume c) recycle d) design
3. When we put ice in the sun, it ..... .
   a) boils b) adds c) freezes d) melts
4. The sun is a good ..... of light.
   a) map b) fuel c) source d) result
5. Would you like ..... of coffee?
   a) a cup b) cup c) the cup d) an cup
6. Mido enjoys reading ..... in his free time.
   a) an books b) the books c) a books d) books
7. The Earth's surface is made up of ..... of rocks.
   a) features b) layers c) resources d) statues
8. If rock becomes very, very hot, it melts into ..... .
   a) fuel b) light c) solid d) liquid
9. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's ..... .
   a) resources b) features c) tips d) layers
10. Basalt is ..... of rock that forms when liquid rock cools again and becomes solid.
    a) types b) the type c) a type d) type

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is ..... (more) boring movie I've ever watched.
2. We are going to eat ..... (a pasta) for lunch.
3. ..... (The women) live longer than men.
4. This is ..... (latest) technology.
5. Sandstone is usually found near ..... (an) Earth's surface.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please turn on the ....., I can't see anything.
   a) night b) fight c) lights d) bright
2. This machine uses a lot of ..... to work.
   a) shower b) waste c) power d) resources
3. Kenzy doesn't want to ..... her time because she has a test tomorrow.
   a) save b) organize c) set d) waste
4. ..... sleep a lot during the day.
   a) Cats b) The cats c) A cats d) An cats
5. That's ..... school where I studied.
   a) a b) the c) an d) no article

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Saving energy is important for our planet. We could follow some ways to save energy at home. First, turn off the lights when you leave a room. This helps save electricity, like TVs, when we are not using them. Even when they are off, they can still use energy. Try to turn off the computer when you are not using it. Computers use a lot of energy. We should consume less hot water. Heating water uses a lot of energy. Take shorter showers and wash clothes in cold water. In summer, close doors and windows to keep cool air inside and avoid using air conditioning for long hours.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to save energy for our planet?.....
2. What are some ways to save energy at home?.....
3. How can we reduce the use of hot water to save energy?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. We should ..... lights when we leave a room.
   a) leave b) turn off c) change d) break
5. We should close doors and windows in summer to ..... .
   a) let in fresh air b) keep it warm
   c) cool air inside d) invite in the sun

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

save	.....	.....	فيضان
documentary	.....	.....	قابلة لإعادة التدوير
poem	.....	.....	جفاف
tap	.....	.....	رسالة نصية
cycle	.....	.....	إنسان/بشر
worth	.....	.....	أضواء/مصابيح

Language Expressions & Prepositions

grow hotter	.....	.....	يحدث تغييرات
decide to	.....	.....	يبحث عن
take a shower	.....	.....	جيد لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يزرع/ينمو	.....	
.....	يرمى/يلقى	.....	

Definitions

.....: jump into the water

.....: to take care of

.....: the planet we live on

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialog:

Eman and Rana are talking about saving energy.

Eman : Do you know how to save energy?

Rana : (1)..... .

Eman : Great! Can you tell me how to save it?

Rana : That sounds easy. (2)..... .

Eman : OK. I should turn off devices when I'm not using them.

Rana : (3).....?

Eman : No, I don't close windows in the hot sun. (4).....?

Rana : You should close them so that you don't use the air conditioning a lot.

Eman : Great idea! Is there anything else?

Rana : Yes, try to use less water when you take shower.

Eman : (5)..... . I will start saving energy today.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eslam works in the ..... industry developing new software.
   a) message b) documentary c) tech d) knowledge
2. We watched a ..... about the effects of climate change.
   a) drought b) rhyme c) documentary d) structure
3. I also try to ..... all my tech devices when I'm not using them.
   a) look after b) look for c) switch on d) switch off
4. Sarah listens to music ..... reads books in her free time.
   a) because b) so c) but d) and
5. Amr is tall, ... his brother is even taller.
   a) so b) but c) because d) and

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1. I try to ..... my devices.
   a) break down b) use up c) switch on d) switch off
2. That's good for our ..... .
   a) planet b) games c) laptop d) devices

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should ..... a shower more often in summer.
   a) take b) grow c) make d) decide
2. I always look ..... the right type of recycling bin and put my trash in it.
   a) up b) for c) after d) at
3. We'd like to go to Hurghada and ..... in the Red Sea.
   a) sleep b) dive c) drive d) walk
4. Mona enjoys painting ..... singing.
   a) so b) and c) but d) because
5. Reda bought flowers ..... he loves gardening.
   a) because b) so c) and d) before

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. eco-friendly – I – be – more – to – wanted.

   .....

2. put – recycling – always – trash – in – the – I – my – bins.

   .....

3. energy – planet – good – our – is – for – **Saving**.

   .....

4. always – by – traveled – bus – to – school – I.

   .....

Listening Text:

I try to switch off all my tech devices, like my laptop and my games console when I'm not using them, because I know that this saves energy and that's good for the planet, too.

Unit 5 Mini-Tests

General

1 Complete the following dialog:

Nada and Sara are discussing climate change.

Nada : Hi, Sara. How are you?
Sara : (1)..... .
Nada : (2).....?
Sara : I think climate change is a very big problem.
Nada : (3).....?
Sara : Because high temperatures have a great effect on the crops.
Nada : You are right. What should we do?
Sara : (4)..... .
Nada : OK. I'll try to save energy. Thanks, Sara.
Sara : (5)..... .

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They won the game ..... (but) they played well.
2. What's ..... (a) longest river in the world?.
3. He is ..... (happy) now than he was last Monday.
4. Lobna cooked dinner ..... (so) washed the dishes.

3 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Saving energy"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hala is talking to Fatma about the summer holiday.

Hala : Where are you going next summer?
Fatma: To my grandfather's farm.
Hala : (1).....?
Fatma: It's near Tanta.
Hala : (2).....?
Fatma: We went by train.
Hala : Does he keep animals?
Fatma: (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To ..... is to use and finish something.
   a) re-use b) recycle c) consume d) save
2. There was a big ..... at the concert.
   a) source b) audience c) console d) planet
3. The computer is ..... use right now.
   a) in b) at c) on d) by
4. Tarek missed the bus ..... he got up late.
   a) but b) so c) because d) and
5. My hair is ..... than yours.
   a) the shortest b) the shorter c) short d) shorter

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. into – the – from – is – **Water** – river – coming – our house.
   .....
2. uses – planet's – a lot of – electricity – the – **Making** – resources.
   .....
3. the class – your – present – could – poster – to – **You**.
   .....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

menu	.....	.....	شعبي/محبوب/شائع
main course	.....	.....	زبون
waiter	.....	.....	خدمة
ingredients	.....	.....	يحتفل
boil	.....	.....	يقلى
invite	.....	.....	خاص/مميز

Language Expressions & Prepositions

enjoy the meal	.....	.....	يطلب طعامًا
easy to make	.....	.....	يتحول إلى
at that point	.....	.....	يحضر المقبلات

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	لحسن الحظ	.....	لسوء الحظ
comfortable	.....	uncomfortable	.....

Foods

onion	.....	.....	سمك مشوى فى الفرن
spices	.....	.....	فلفل
chickpea paste	.....	.....	خيار

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The soup is ..... and tasty. It isn't cold.
   a) comfortable b) warm c) soft d) simple
2. Roaa will make the old dress ..... a new one.
   a) for b) on c) at d) into
3. I felt ..... in my new shoes. It was good.
   a) terrible b) boring c) comfortable d) uncomfortable
4. ....., it started to rain heavily during the game. We didn't complete it.
   a) Fortunately b) Unfortunately c) Happily d) Luckily
5. How ..... your day, Eman?
   a) was b) did c) does d) will
6. What did Sarah ..... in the lunch break?
   a) to read b) reading c) reads d) read
7. We bake hawawshi in the ..... and eat it warm.
   a) service b) waiter c) oven d) menu
8. Chipsi mayai is very ..... traditional food in Tanzania.
   a) comfortable b) popular c) definite d) ugly
9. I don't think chips are a very healthy ....., so I don't eat them very often.
   a) snack b) service c) customer d) course
10. Why did your cook ..... no tomatoes on our plates?
    a) is putting b) putting c) puts d) put

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Where did you ..... (went) after the meeting?
2. What ..... (did) your favorite games when you were young?
3. How ..... (do) you feel at school on your first day?
4. When ..... (he/arrive) at school yesterday?
5. What ..... (do) you order for dessert last night?

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sally and Samar are talking about their favorite food.

Sally :What's your favorite traditional food?

Samar : My favorite traditional food is falafel. (1)..... ?

Sally :I love fish and chips. It's a popular dish in England.

Samar : Do you eat it often?

Sally :(2)..... . We usually have it on Fridays. When do you eat falafel?

Samar : (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The ..... enjoyed the new story.
   a) cook b) waiter c) reader d) customer
2. The waiter brought the ..... to choose our food.
   a) table b) journal c) menu d) diary
3. I had basbousa and kunafa for ..... .
   a) desert b) diet c) list d) dessert
4. What ..... Selim have for dinner last night?
   a) is b) does c) did d) do
5. Where did you ..... for your last holiday?
   a) go b) went c) going d) goes

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favorite traditional food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
syrup	.....	.....	وصفة طهى
grilled	.....	.....	أصل
pick	.....	.....	مهمة
check	.....	.....	موقع إلكترونى
large-scaled	.....	.....	مهرجان
describe	.....	.....	يتضمن
native	.....	.....	احتفال
research	.....	.....	مشروع
famous	.....	.....	يصب/يسكب
select	.....	.....	لذيذ
Language Expressions & Prepositions			
make a card	.....	.....	يدون ملاحظات
decide on	.....	.....	يملأ بـ
go on the internet	.....	.....	يؤدى بحثًا

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I like my mom's food. It's really ..... .
   a) tasty b) nasty c) terrible d) horrible
2. My dad usually ..... his email in the evening.
   a) describes b) selects c) picks d) checks
3. My grandpa is a ..... doctor. All people know him.
   a) famous b) tasty c) weak d) large
4. Samy wanted to ..... research for his history class.
   a) get b) take c) do d) make
5. The rain will start ..... .
   a) near b) soon c) away d) last
6. The cat is ..... the house. It's in the living room.
   a) here b) over c) outside d) inside
7. If you want to speak a language well, speak with the ..... people of this language.
   a) grilled b) native c) famous d) tasty
8. I prefer my fish ..... .
   a) weak b) lazy c) grilled d) nasty
9. We have a big ..... at New Year.
   a) recipe b) origin c) task d) festival
10. My cousins went to Paris ..... week.
    a) last b) ago c) soon d) tomorrow

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The car is parked ..... (front) the house.
2. They talked ..... (break).
3. My aunt is cooking ..... (kitchen).
4. Reem and Huda will start their vacation ..... (yesterday).
5. I like to sit ..... (next) my best friend.

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister followed the ..... step by step to make a delicious pizza.
   a) recipe b) rule c) receipt d) list
2. My father needs to ..... his task before dinner.
   a) do b) make c) get d) talk
3. Be careful, the basket is filled ..... eggs.
   a) at b) with c) of d) for
4. Jack enjoys reading ..... before sleeping.
   a) in the morning b) away c) is in the evening d) near
5. The school is ..... the park.
   a) near b) here c) then d) over

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Bibimbap is a famous dish from Korea. It is made with a bowl of warm rice topped with different ingredients like vegetables, meat (usually beef), a fried egg, and spicy sauce. The vegetables often include spinach, beans, carrots, and mushrooms. Before eating, people mix everything together. Bibimbap is usually eaten for lunch or dinner and is popular in Korean restaurants. It offers a balance of flavors, from the meat and vegetables to the spicy and sweet sauce. This colorful dish is enjoyed by people all around the world for its taste.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is bibimbap made with?

   .....

2. When do people usually eat bibimbap?

   .....

3. Why do you think people like bibimbap?

   .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. ..... are often included in bibimbap.
   a) Beans b) Carrots c) Mushrooms d) All of these
5. Bibimbap is popular in ..... restaurants.
   a) Japanese b) Korean c) Italian d) Mexican

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

summarize	.....	.....	شفاطة/عود شراب
ceiling	.....	.....	سماد
set up	.....	.....	ناجح
reusable	.....	.....	مستعمل/مستخدم
soft	.....	.....	يلتقط
leftover	.....	.....	كريمى

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make a difference	.....	.....	على السطح
all the way home	.....	.....	فى المقابل
hear about	.....	.....	مزهر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يضىء/يتوهج	.....	
.....	يعلق	.....	

Words and Opposites

Words		Opposites	
.....	ساطع	.....	داكن/قاتم
salty	.....	salty	.....

Definitions

.....: used again in a different way

.....: the leftover part of coffee beans

.....: a thin paper or plastic tube you drink through

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialog:

Anna and Fatema are talking about traditional foods from other countries.

Anna : Hi, Fatema! How are you today?

Fatema : Hi, Anna! (1)..... .

Anna : Do you know any traditional foods from other countries?

Fatema : (2)..... . For example, Italy has pizza, and Japan has sushi.

Anna : That's interesting! (3).....?

Fatema : In Egypt, we have ful medames.

Anna : (4).....?

Fatema : It's made from fava beans.

Anna : When do you usually eat it?

Fatema : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Basma ..... her finger with the knife.
   a) hurt b) hung c) picked d) bit
2. They ..... their own lunch to work yesterday.
   a) paid b) brought c) heard d) picked
3. Did you hear ..... the new restaurant?
   a) in b) by c) about d) at
4. When ..... you see your best friend?
   a) does b) did c) are d) have
5. My family went ..... the village yesterday.
   a) here b) there c) back d) back to

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1. What type of food does the speaker like?
   a) Burger. b) Salad. c) Fries. d) Strawberry.
2. Where is it eaten?
   a) In Egypt. b) In Japan.
   c) In a few cities. d) All over the world.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They offered to help us ..... return for our help.
   a) on b) for c) in d) at
2. Small changes can ..... a big difference.
   a) make b) do c) get d) take
3. The teacher explained the ..... of the story.
   a) tube b) moral c) act d) herbs
4. Where ..... they last evening?
   a) did b) do c) are d) were
5. Nada likes to drink milk ..... .
   a) in the evening b) afternoon c) over d) across

3 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. school – enjoyed – hearing – new – about – **I** – your.

   .....

2. strawberry cheesecake – favorite – **My** – is – dessert.

   .....

3. your – are – favorite – **What** – dishes?

   .....

4. in – local – Samy – were – and – **Magdy** – their – park.

   .....

Listening Text:

I really like salad. It's healthy. I know it is eaten all over the world. There are many types of salad.

Guiding Models

Model (1)

(A) Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. How was the summer vacation?
   a) Boring. b) Great. c) Bad. d) Ugly.
2. When did the speaker play with the neighbors?
   a) At night. b) In the afternoon.
   c) In the morning. d) In the evening.
3. Who did the speaker play with at the club?
   a) The family. b) The neighbors. c) The friends. d) The team.
4. Did the speaker enjoy his summer vacation?
   a) Yes. b) No. c) I don't know. d) Maybe.

(B) Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Maya is asking Sandy for some help.

Maya : Can you help me with something?
Sandy : Yes, of course. (1)..... ?
Maya : Can you explain this lesson for me?
Sandy : (2)..... .
Maya : Thanks, Sandy. You're always helpful.
Sandy : You're welcome. (3)..... ?
Maya : Yes, Sandy. Here's a pen and a notebook.
Sandy : Will you switch off your computer?
Maya : (4)..... . I am sending the homework to the teacher.
Sandy : (5)..... . I'll wait you.

(B) Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

hunt – Its – It's – explore – hidden

Geocaching is an outdoor activity where people use smartphones to find (1)..... treasures. It is like a treasure (2)..... that you can do almost anywhere. Geocachers (3)..... different places, using clues and coordinates to find these treasures. (4)..... a great way to have fun and enjoy your time.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last week, Ali received an email. The email said that he had won a big prize, like a new smartphone or a large sum of money. The message looked official, so Ali was excited. The email asked him to type his personal information, including his full name, address, and phone number. Without thinking carefully, Ali quickly sent all the information. A few days later, Ali checked his bank account and was shocked to see that a lot of money was missing. He knew that he had been **scammed**. The email was a fake. Ali felt very embarrassed. He learned an important lesson: always be careful online and never share personal information without checking if the source is real. Now, Ali is more cautious.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What lesson did Ali learn after being scammed?

.....

3. If you were Ali, what would you do after receiving the email?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The email asked Ali to ..... .
   a) buy a new smartphone b) send his personal information
   c) delete the email d) check his account
5. The word "**scammed**" most likely means ..... .
   a) helped b) tricked c) rewarded d) ignored
6. At first, Ali was ..... .
   a) worried b) embarrassed c) excited d) angry

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Marwan became a ..... of the gym to get in shape.
   a) member b) coach c) vacation d) neighbor
2. ..... can happen on social media or through text messages.
   a) Freezing b) Cyberbullying c) Information d) Platforms
3. The football team played on the sports ..... for practice.
   a) field b) class c) list d) pool
4. I created a new email ..... .
   a) platform b) aim c) address d) rule

5. The teacher asked us to focus ..... the main vocabulary.
   a) in b) at c) on d) for
6. Nawal ..... the main important points of the meeting in her notes.
   a) summarized b) painted c) noticed d) paid
7. My mum ..... changes to the recipe to make it healthier.
   a) made b) achieved c) proved d) practiced
8. I ..... breakfast this morning.
   a) eats b) eating c) eat d) ate
9. The cat is playing with ..... ball in the garden.
   a) her b) his c) its d) their
10. My dad decided to leave early ..... he had a long journey.
    a) and b) but c) so d) because

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I found ..... (Sarah) keys on the table.
2. Manal is the ..... (kind) person I know.
3. If you mix red and blue, you ..... (got) purple.
4. I saw ..... (old man) yesterday.

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Saving electricity"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (2)

(A) Listening

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where did the wedding take place?
   a) Cairo. b) Luxor. c) Alexandria. d) Aswan.
2. Who got married?
   a) Friends. b) The speaker.
   c) Aunts and uncles. d) Amira and Ayman.
3. How was the day described?
   a) Boring. b) Sad. c) Fun. d) Long.
4. Who did the speaker see at the wedding?
   a) Friends. b) Neighbors. c) Teachers. d) Aunts and uncles.

(B) Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Safaa is asking Esraa about her summer vacation.

Safaa : Hi, Esraa! How was your summer vacation?
Esraa : Hi, Safaa! (1)..... . How was yours?
Safaa : It was good, too. (2).....?
Esraa : I went hiking in the mountains.
Safaa : Great! (3).....?
Esraa : My best friends went with me.
Safaa : How was the weather?
Esraa : (4)..... . We really enjoyed it.
Safaa : Did you see any interesting animals?
Esraa : (5)..... . We saw some beautiful birds.

(B) Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

have – waiter – dessert – meal – having

Having lunch at a restaurant is fun. You can (1)..... many different dishes, like salads, sandwiches, or pasta. The (2)..... takes your order and brings your food to the table. You can enjoy your (3)..... with friends or family while talking. After eating, you can have a (4)....., like ice cream or cake. It's a nice way to relax and enjoy good food.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Saving electricity is important for both yourself and the environment. One simple way to save electricity is by turning off lights when you leave a room. Also, use energy-efficient light bulbs that consume less power. Unplug devices like phone chargers and other electronics when you are not using them, as **they** can still use energy when plugged in. Another way to save electricity is by changing your habits. In the winter, wear warm clothes instead of using the heater. In the summer, set the air conditioner to 24°C and use fans to help cool down. Lastly, try to use natural light during the day instead of turning on lamps. By following these easy steps, you can **reduce** your electricity use and help the environment.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

2. Why is it important to save electricity?

.....

3. What other habits can we change to save electricity?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. To save electricity, we should ..... when you leave a room.
   a) use more lamps b) leave devices
   c) turn off lights d) sleep early
5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a) chargers b) lights c) devices d) clothes
6. The text suggests you use ..... instead of lamps during the day.
   a) fans b) natural light
   c) extra lamps d) air conditioning

(D) Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Although they have grown up in different countries, they have many interests ..... common.
   a) in b) on c) at d) for
2. Mohamed is a very ..... musician. He plays many instruments.
   a) noisy b) empty c) talented d) boring
3. My brother is a ..... and cooks amazing food at his restaurant.
   a) chef b) captain c) player d) teacher

4. My ..... is to become a teacher.
   a) rule b) account c) link d) aim
5. She threw the paper in the ..... bin.
   a) dialog b) recycling c) used d) energy
6. ..... bags are good for the environment.
   a) Successful b) Reusable c) Used d) Creamy
7. He added a/an ..... to make his comment more fun.
   a) challenge b) emoji c) shape d) theme
8. Sara ..... write any emails last night.
   a) didn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) hasn't
9. My kids are ..... their bikes in the park.
   a) rode b) ride c) riding d) rides
10. Ali's friends want to know what time they can visit ..... .
   a) she b) he c) him d) his

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Never ..... (giving) your account password to any one.
2. The red dress is ..... (beautiful) than the blue one.
3. How often ..... (do) you visit the park when you were young?
4. We go for a walk ..... (at) the evening.

E Writing

7 Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Sally to tell her about your sister's wedding. Your name is Laila.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (3)

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What does the speaker do at the weekends?
   a) Go to work. b) Study at home.
   c) Watch TV. d) Spend time with family.
2. Where does the speaker like to go?
   a) To the mall. b) For walks. c) To the movies. d) To a restaurant.
3. What does the speaker avoid taking on walks?
   a) Books. b) Phones. c) Food. d) Maps.
4. What can you find in the places the speaker visits?
   a) Shopping centers. b) Parks. c) Gardens. d) b & c.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is telling Heba about Sushi, a dish which he tried in a Japanese restaurant.

Ali : Did you taste anything from another country?
Heba : (1)..... . I tried Feijoada in Brazil. What about you?
Ali : (2)..... .
Heba : Really? (3).....?
Ali : It tasted a bit different, but I enjoyed it.
Heba : (4).....?
Ali : It's made with rice and raw fish.
Heba : Where did you have it?
Ali : (5)..... .
Heba : I think I'll try it one day.

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

won – successful – was – were – achievements

Hana Goda is a young table tennis player. She started playing when she (1)..... very young. Hana practices every day and works hard to improve her skills. She has (2)..... many medals in many tournaments. Hana made great (3)..... . Hana's story shows that with hard work, you can be (4)..... .

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many people today are very busy and don't have time to sit down for a meal. Instead, they choose to eat "food on the go". This means they eat food while they are traveling or working. Some common examples of food on the go are sandwiches, wraps, and fruit. **These** foods are easy to carry and quick to eat. Fast food restaurants also offer meals that are **ideal** for busy people. However, eating on the go is not always healthy. It's important to choose healthy options, like fruits, nuts, and whole-grain snacks. While eating on the go can be handy, taking time to eat slowly and enjoy your meal is better for your health. Eating balanced meals will help you stay strong throughout the day.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**These**" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think it is better to take time to eat slowly instead of eating on the go?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. ..... are some examples of food on the go.
   a) Fish and rice b) Sandwiches
   c) Meatballs and pasta d) Rice and beans
5. People eat food on the go because they ..... .
   a) are busy b) don't like it c) don't enjoy it d) are poor
6. The word "**ideal**" in the passage most likely means ..... .
   a) expensive b) unhealthy c) complicated d) perfect

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. English is her ..... language, but she also speaks French well.
   a) talented b) successful c) large-scaled d) native
2. He waited ..... his turn to speak during the meeting.
   a) on b) at c) for d) in
3. Rawan volunteers at a ..... to help the poor.
   a) material b) device c) battery d) charity

4. They decided to ..... their house with colorful lights for the festival.
   a) repair b) read c) decorate d) clean
5. Please, ... your favorite color.
   a) pour b) select c) include d) taste
6. My daughter sent a quick ..... message to ask about the tickets.
   a) wisdom b) harmony c) cricket d) text
7. We wrote our names in the ..... .
   a) logbook b) treasure c) clue d) geocaching
8. **A:** Whose book is this? **B:** It is ..... book.
   a) my b) them c) us d) they
9. **A:** How ..... did you go to the gym? **B:** I always went to the gym.
   a) often b) much c) many d) long
10. ..... your hands before you eat.
   a) Washes b) Washing c) Wash d) Washed

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (do) our homework right now.
2. Who ..... (is) at the party last night?
3. I like ..... (rice) we ate together yesterday.
4. This is the ..... (cold) winter we've had in years.

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"How to stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (4)

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which one of these rules helps you to stay safe online?
   a) Use weak passwords.
   b) Post without thinking.
   c) Be careful of friend requests.
   d) Be unkind online.
2. What should you do before posting something online?
   a) Post immediately.
   b) Think before you post.
   c) Ignore the content.
   d) Share it with everyone.
3. How can you be safe online?
   a) Accept all requests.
   b) Post personal information.
   c) Ignore all requests.
   d) Choose strong passwords.
4. What is a polite way to go online?
   a) Be unkind.
   b) Post secrets.
   c) Be kind online.
   d) Share personal information.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Waleed advises Mohammed to eat healthier.

Waleed : Do you eat healthy food?

Mohammed : No, I don't, but I hope to be healthier. (1)……?

Waleed : You should begin by eating more fruits and vegetables.

Mohammed : (2)……?

Waleed : You should eat five pieces of them every day.

Mohammed : What about snacks?

Waleed : (3)…….

Mohammed : Nuts are good. What about drinking?

Waleed : (4)…….

Mohammed : (5)……. I'll give it a try!

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

planet – the – showers – a – off

Saving water is important to protect our (1) ..... . One way to save water is by turning (2) ..... the tap while brushing your teeth. You can also take shorter (3) ..... to use less water. Another good idea is to water your plants in the early morning or evening to reduce water loss. By doing these small things, we can all help save water for (4) ..... future.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Farida Osman is a famous Egyptian swimmer. She was born in 1995 in Cairo. Farida started swimming when she was five years old. She practices every day to become better. Farida is very fast in the water. She has won many medals in different **tournaments** around the world. In 2017, she won a bronze medal. This made her the first Egyptian woman to win a swimming medal at that level. Farida is an example for many young athletes in Egypt. She shows that with hard work, you can achieve great success. Farida loves her country and always wants to make Egypt proud. She dreams of winning more medals and helping other young swimmers to succeed.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "This" refer to? .....
3. In your opinion, what made Farida Osman famous? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Farida Osman was born in ..... .
   a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Giza d) Luxor
5. Farida Osman started swimming in ..... .
   a) 1995 b) 1998 c) 2000 d) 2002
6. What does the word "**tournaments**" most likely mean in this passage?
   a) Schools. b) Competitions. c) Books. d) Friends.

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I like to organize my day by making a "to do" ..... every morning.
   a) class b) list c) journal d) recipe
2. Planting trees helps create a ..... environment.
   a) traditional b) sustainable c) electronic d) busy

3. My uncle ..... his email before heading to work.
   a) kicked b) joined c) imagined d) checked
4. Waleed chose a casual ..... for the trip, including jeans and a comfortable T-shirt.
   a) contract b) outfit c) photographer d) relative
5. Nancy found the recipe on a ..... on the internet.
   a) website b) task c) festival d) syrup
6. Sohalia ..... the intercom to let her mum know that she arrives.
   a) buzzes b) publishes c) fits d) means
7. They discussed the ..... of the book in class.
   a) theme b) lunchtime c) message d) interest
8. Hany ..... his lunch at the moment.
   a) eats b) eat c) is eating d) was eating
9. Last winter was cold. I ..... hot chocolate every day.
   a) drink b) drank c) drinking d) drinks
10. The ..... advice was very helpful. They advised me a lot.
   a) doctor b) doctors c) doctor's d) doctors'

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This road is ..... (more long) than the other one.
2. Will you ..... (joining) us for dinner tonight?
3. She is wearing ..... (uniform).
4. If you heat water to 100°C, it ..... (boil).

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Online friendship"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (5)

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. How was this summer?
   a) Fun. b) Bad. c) Great. d) Exciting.
2. **A:** Why did the school close? **B:** Because of .....
   a) rain b) snow c) hot weather d) a holiday
3. How long was the school closed?
   a) For a day. b) For a week. c) For a month. d) For a year.
4. What did the speaker miss?
   a) The teachers. b) The school. c) The weather. d) The friends.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Rawan and Malak are discussing their favorite apps.

Rawan : Did you try any new apps?
Malak : (1)..... I started using a fitness app.
Rawan : (2).....?
Malak : It helps me follow my diet. (3).....?
Rawan : I am using a language learning app. It's great!
Malak : How often do you use it?
Rawan : (4)..... .
Malak : Why do you use it every day?
Rawan : (5)..... .
Malak : Practicing new words improves your language.

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

me – chat – in – I – website

I have an online friend named Sam. We met on a (1)..... for people who love books. Sam lives in another country, but we (2)..... every day. We talk about our favorite books, share pictures of our pets, and play online games together. Sam is very kind and always listens to (3)..... when I have a problem. We have many things (4)..... common.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Amal,

I'm writing to tell you about my brother, Ali. He is very funny and always makes everyone laugh. Ali loves playing football and is on a team with his friends. They play every weekend at the park, and sometimes I go to watch him. He is also really good at drawing. Last week, he drew a picture of our cat, and it looked just like **her**! Our parents are very proud of his talent. Besides playing football and drawing, Ali helps me a lot with my homework. When I don't understand something, he explains it to me. We also play games together in our free time. Ali is not just my brother, but also my best friend. I'm really lucky to have him in my life.

Your friend,

Sara

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the email?

.....

2. How does Ali help his sister with her homework?

.....

3. Why do you think Sara is lucky to have Ali as her brother?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Ali enjoys ..... with his friends.

a) walking b) playing football c) drawing d) eating

5. Ali's ..... are proud of his drawing talent.

a) friends b) teachers c) sister d) parents

6. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ..... .

a) Ali's friend b) the cat c) his sister d) the drawing

(D) Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister felt ..... when she fell down in the street.

a) talented b) official c) embarrassed d) scientific

2. He likes to learn new skills by attending evening ..... .

a) recipes b) courts c) fields d) classes

3. My dad bought me a ..... on my birthday.

a) research b) console c) competition d) winner

4. It was a ..... day because we won the championship.
   a) smart b) special c) useless d) bad
5. She is a regular ..... at the store. She goes every Sunday.
   a) oven b) customer c) service d) menu
6. The vacation was very ..... . We liked it.
   a) several b) geeky c) relaxing d) hidden
7. I always use my credit card to ..... the payment.
   a) get b) take c) make d) do
8. Why didn't you ..... to the party?
   a) come b) came c) comes d) coming
9. This is the ..... book in the library.
   a) interesting b) more interesting
   c) most interesting d) much interesting
10. ..... accept friend requests from people you don't know.
   a) Not b) Don't c) No d) Doesn't

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They ..... (cook) a new recipe for dinner tonight.
2. My sister and I play with ..... (we) toys every day.
3. She hardly ..... (never) watched TV.
4. She goes to a ..... (girls) school.

E Writing

7 Write a blog post of (80-90) words on your last summer vacation.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (6)

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **A:** What is a big problem in some countries around the world?
   B: Not enough ..... .
   a) food b) clean water c) electricity d) schools
2. How much of the world population faces water scarcity?
   a) One third. b) Half. c) Two thirds. d) Three quarters.
3. What does "water scarcity" refer to?
   a) Too much water. b) Lack of water.
   c) Dirty water. d) Expensive water.
4. What should we do to help save water?
   a) Take shorter showers. b) Turn on the taps for a long time.
   c) Take longer showers. d) All of these.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Saher lost his wallet while shopping.

Baher: How was your weekend?
Saher: It was quite good. (1)..... ?
Baher: It was good, too. I heard you had some trouble. What happened?
Saher: (2)..... .
Baher: Oh no! (3)..... ?
Saher: I lost it at the mall. I was in a hurry.
Baher: Did you report it to anyone?
Saher: (4)..... . I told the police.
Baher: I hope you find it soon.
Saher: (5)..... .

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

my – me – messages – on – miss

I have a problem with my friend, Basmala. She stopped answering my (1)..... . Now, we are not chatting to each other, and I (2)..... her. I want to solve this problem and be friends again. I plan to talk to Basmala and tell her I am sorry. I can't focus (3)..... my schoolwork. She's (4)..... best friend. I want us to laugh and have fun together again.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I enjoy reading books in my free time, especially stories about **adventures**. Every day after school, I go to the library to find new and exciting books. The library is quiet, and I can spend hours choosing the perfect book. At home, I love to sit in my favorite chair and dive into a story. I imagine the characters and all the exciting things they do. Sometimes, I share the stories with my friends. We talk about the best parts and guess what might happen next. Reading is not only fun, but **it** also helps me learn new things and discover different worlds. It feels like going on a new adventure every time I open a book.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?

.....

3. How do you think the quiet library helps people enjoy reading?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The speaker enjoys reading about ..... .
   a) nature b) adventures c) animals d) flowers
5. The speaker likes to sit ..... while reading at home.
   a) on the floor b) at a desk c) in a chair d) in bed
6. The word "**adventure**" means a/an ..... event.
   a) scary b) exciting c) boring d) funny

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You should drink a lot of water when it's hot outside to avoid ..... .
   a) fever b) heatstroke c) hygiene d) wisdom
2. Can you help ..... with organizing the event?
   a) out b) at c) about d) on
3. Salma likes to ..... online to play games.
   a) go b) take c) do d) make
4. He looked ..... while watching the movie.
   a) boring b) extra c) homemade d) relaxed

5. They served fruit salad as a ..... .
   a) dessert b) snack c) manager d) plate
6. The ..... clapped loudly at the end of the film.
   a) customers b) audience c) champions d) geocachers
7. He has years of ..... working in customer service.
   a) experience b) poem c) poet d) eclipse
8. This is the ..... book I have ever read.
   a) good b) better c) best d) more good
9. Who ..... you that present?
   a) send b) sent c) sending d) sends
10. **A:** Where are the kids? **B:** They ..... in the park.
   a) are playing b) played c) plays d) playing

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They are excited about ..... (them) new school year.
2. If it ..... (rain) a lot, the streets become wet.
3. ..... (Not/be) rude to your friends.
4. When we were kids, we ..... (played usually) outside.

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Your free time"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Model (7)

(A) Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **A:** Where is the Temple of Edfu? **B:** It's on the ..... bank of the River Nile.
   a) east b) west c) north d) south
2. **A:** How old is the Temple of Edfu? **B:** It's ..... years old.
   a) 1,500 b) 2,250 c) 3,000 d) 4,000
3. Between which two cities is Edfu?
   a) Cairo and Giza. b) Alex and Luxor.
   c) Giza and Aswan. d) Luxor and Aswan.
4. How is the Temple of Edfu?
   a) Horrible. b) Ugly. c) Wonderful. d) Terrible.

(B) Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Feryal and Lamyaa are talking about pollution.

Feryal : Did you realize how the traffic increased?
Lamyaa : (1)..... . There are so many cars now.
Feryal : (2).....?
Lamyaa : Because more people are moving to the city.
Feryal : How does this affect the air?
Lamyaa : The air is getting worse because of the pollution.
Feryal : (3).....?
Lamyaa : We could use public transport to reduce the traffic.
Feryal : (4).....! Walking or biking could help, too.
Lamyaa : (5)..... .

(B) Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

me – relaxing – for – first aid – my

In my free time, I enjoy doing different activities. On Thursdays, I play football with (1)..... friends. I also learn new (2)..... skills, so I go to evening classes. On weekends, I spend time with my family, and we go (3)..... walks in the park. It's (4)..... and helps me enjoy nature.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Hala,

How are you? Last weekend, my family and I went hiking in the mountains. It was amazing! We started early in the morning and the weather was perfect. The sky was clear and we could see the sun rising over the hills. We walked along the road and went through a beautiful forest. There were tall trees, colorful flowers and lots of birds singing. We **rested** and had a snack.

In the afternoon, we reached the top of the mountain. The view from there was amazing. We took many pictures to remember the day.

Have you ever tried hiking? I think you would enjoy **it**. It's a great way to see nature and spend time with family. Write back soon and tell me about your favorite outdoor activity.

Best wishes,

Emma

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the email?

.....

2. What did they see in the forest during their hike?

.....

3. Why do you think Emma enjoyed hiking with her family?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Emma and her family started hiking in/at ..... .

a) the afternoon b) night c) the morning d) the evening

5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .

a) the weather b) hiking c) the snack d) the mountains

6. The word "**rested**" most likely means ..... .

a) walked quickly b) took a break c) climbed d) took pictures

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dina writes in her ..... every night to remember her day.

a) pool b) journal c) court d) class

2. Be careful of ..... who send fake emails.

a) scammers b) audience c) requests d) customers

3. I don't like this meat dish because it has a spicy ..... .

a) waiter b) dish c) cook d) taste

4. We had a big ..... for her birthday.
   a) project b) syrup c) celebration d) recipe
5. Tourists gathered around the ..... to take pictures.
   a) repairs b) wind c) obelisk d) religion
6. You should ..... all the people with respect.
   a) treat b) remind c) install d) post
7. ..... can make school a scary place.
   a) Bullying b) Recycling c) Sharing d) Designing
8. What ..... your parents do last weekend?
   a) did b) was c) were d) do
9. We can't live without ..... internet.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
10. ..... dress is very colorful.
   a) Basmala's b) Basmalas' c) Basmalas d) Basmala

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Can you ..... (fetching) me a cup of water?
2. Is she ..... (watch) a movie with her friends?
3. That was the ..... (difficult) exam I've ever taken.
4. The library is between the restaurant ..... (or) the bank.

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"An event of being scammed"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (8)

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **A:** What was wrong with the food at the restaurant? **B:** It was ..... .
   a) spicy b) cold c) salty d) burnt
2. What did the speaker find in the soup?
   a) A spoon. b) A fly. c) A hair. d) A piece of plastic.
3. Who did the speaker tell about the problem?
   a) The chef. b) The manager. c) The friend. d) The waiter.
4. **A:** What did the waiter do after that? **B:** He ..... .
   a) brought a meal b) argued
   c) ignored d) offered money

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Anas and his sister visited their grandparents during the summer holiday.

Mazen : Where did you go during your summer holiday?
Anas : (1)..... .
Mazen : Who came with you?
Anas : (2)..... .
Mazen : (3).....?
Anas : We usually visited them every weekend.
Mazen : (4).....?
Anas : I played basketball with my cousins.
Mazen : Did you enjoy your time there?
Anas : (5)..... . It was a wonderful time.

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

share – shares – password – requests – characters

Staying safe online is very important. First, always choose strong (1)..... . It should be hard to guess. Use letters, numbers, and special (2)..... . Second, think before you post anything. If you (3)..... something online, it is hard to delete it. Third, be careful with friend (4)..... . These are the safety rules for staying online.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Being **eco-friendly** means taking care of the environment and making choices that help protect our planet. One simple way to be eco-friendly is by saving energy at home. You can do **this** by turning off lights when you're not using them. Another way is by using less water. Take shorter showers and turn off the tap while brushing your teeth. Recycling is also very important. Instead of throwing away plastic, paper, and glass, put them in recycling bins so they can be used again. Walking, biking, or using public transport instead of driving a car can reduce air pollution. Planting trees and growing your own vegetables are also great ways to help the environment. Being eco-friendly is about making small changes in your daily life that add up to a big difference.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. How can you save energy at home?

.....

3. Think of other ways that help reduce pollution.

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The underlined word "**this**" refers to ..... .
   a) saving energy b) walking or biking
   c) taking long showers d) throwing away plastic
5. You should ..... plastic, paper, and glass.
   a) burn b) keep
   c) recycle d) throw
6. The word "**eco-friendly**" means ..... .
   a) expensive b) difficult
   c) harmful d) good for the planet

D Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The organizer asks us to ..... our votes before the event ends.
   a) add b) realize c) delete d) install
2. Good ..... helps prevent illness.
   a) fever b) heatstroke c) hygiene d) scarcity
3. The ..... of our school is very kind. We all like him.
   a) string b) principal c) expert d) stall

4. He felt ..... by his mistake.
   a) excited b) ashamed c) cautious d) scientific
5. You should do regular exercises to improve your ..... .
   a) interest b) account c) fitness d) crop
6. We need to reduce our ..... to help our planet.
   a) herbs b) straws c) compost d) waste
7. ..... includes finding hidden treasures.
   a) Drawing b) Hunting c) Relaxing d) Geocaching
8. Maya gave ..... friend a beautiful gift for her birthday.
   a) his b) her c) our d) their
9. What ..... she doing in the kitchen?
   a) are b) were c) did d) is
10. You ..... ate vegetables. You didn't like them.
    a) always b) usually c) never d) often

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My new phone is ..... (expensive) than my old one.
2. ..... (Did) your sister at the party last night?
3. Nour enjoys swimming, ... (and) her brother prefers playing football.
4. Can you pass me ..... (a) salt, please?

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Your best friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where is the family having lunch?
   a) At a restaurant. b) At their house.
   c) At the park. d) At their grandparents' house.
2. Who was present with the family?
   a) Friends. b) Neighbors.
   c) Aunt Salwa and her kids. d) Teachers.
3. How was the food described?
   a) Bad. b) Delicious. c) Boring. d) Average.
4. What foods did they have for lunch?
   a) Fattah. b) salad. c) meat. d) All of these.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Hala and Mayar discuss their lunch preferences.

Hala : Hi Mayar! How was your day?
Mayar : Hi Hala! (1)..... . How about yours?
Hala : It was busy, but good. What did you have for lunch today?
Mayar : (2)..... .
Hala : (3).....?
Mayar : I prefer pasta with white sauce. It's so creamy!
Hala : Do you eat it with chicken?
Mayar : (4)..... . I like it so much.
Hala : (5).....?
Mayar : I usually eat it at home.

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

helpful – excited – make – made – equipment

My new school is big and beautiful. There are many classrooms that have modern (1)..... . The teachers are kind and (2)..... . I (3)..... new friends on my first day. We have interesting subjects. I like my new school because it is fun and I learn a lot. I am (4)..... to go to school every day.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Inventions for a sustainable future are ideas that help protect our planet. Scientists and engineers are creating new ways to use energy, like solar panels that **convert** sunlight into electricity. Electric cars are another invention that helps reduce pollution because they don't pollute the air. There are also machines designed to clean the ocean by removing plastic waste. These inventions are important because **they** help keep the Earth clean and safe for future generations. People are also working on ways to save water and grow more food using fewer resources. By using these new ideas, we can make sure that the world stays healthy and beautiful for everyone. Sustainable inventions are key to building a better future for all.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. How do solar panels help protect our planet?

.....

3. Why do you think sustainable inventions are important for the future?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Electric cars help to reduce ..... .

a) noise b) pollution c) traffic d) water use

5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .

a) people b) solar panels c) oceans d) inventions

6. The underlined word "**convert**" means ..... .

a) increase b) turn c) remain d) stay

(D) Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adel ..... a gold medal in the science fair.

a) grew b) felt c) gave up d) won

2. We are asked to think of a ..... for the article.

a) "to-do" list b) catchy title

c) easy-to-read d) limited-edition

3. My brother always tries to ..... on his studies to do well in exams.

a) describe b) focus c) wait d) organize

4. ..... of resources can lead to higher prices.
   a) Scam b) Scarcity c) Fitness d) Drought
5. The ..... of the storm was dangerous.
   a) flood b) crop c) impact d) hygiene
6. My grandparents enjoy ..... music. They like old music.
   a) traditional b) sweet c) special d) delicious
7. I plan to meet ..... with my cousins next weekend.
   a) up b) in c) for d) at
8. Which is ..... dangerous animal in the world?
   a) the most b) most c) the more d) more
9. My kids ..... a new game on the computer at the moment.
   a) plays b) playing c) played d) are playing
10. Sally practices ..... piano every Saturday.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They were good students. They ..... (never) studied together.
2. He doesn't like ..... (him) new shoes.
3. If the sun ..... (set), it gets dark.
4. The ..... (children) room is there.

E Writing

7 Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Amr to tell him about your favorite traditional dish.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (10)

A Listening

Scan & listen
نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Why did Nermine's family move to Oxford?
   a) For a job. b) For a travel.
   c) For a vacation. d) For school.
2. What does Nermine miss?
   a) Her new school. b) Her old friends.
   c) Her hometown. d) Her new house.
3. **A:** How does Nermine feel about Oxford? **B:** Everything is ..... .
   a) New. b) Different. c) Old. d) a and b.
4. How is their house in Oxford?
   a) Small. b) Large. c) Nice. d) Tiny.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Lena and Rana are discussing starting a study group for their class.

Lena : Hi, Rana! I was thinking about something.
Rana : Hi, Lena! (1).....?
Lena : It's about starting a study group for our class.
Rana : (2)..... . Where could we meet?
Lena : We could meet at the library after school.
Rana : What subjects should we focus on?
Lena : (3)..... .
Rana : I agree. (4).....?
Lena : We can have our first meeting this Friday.
Rana : (5)..... .

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

competition –entered - enters – aged – prizes

Last month, 20 talented students from Egypt, (1)..... 12-16, participated in a national art (2)..... to create paintings that show how to solve world problems. Students from different schools (3)..... the event. Winners received (4)..... and the chance to display their work in a famous gallery. Next year, many Egyptian students will join.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I went on vacation with my family. We traveled to the beach. The weather was sunny and warm. We stayed in a small hotel near the sea. Every day, we swam in the sea and played on the sand. My brother and I built sandcastles. We also **gathered** shells and took many photos. One day, we went on a boat ride and saw dolphins. At night, we ate at nice restaurants and tried different foods **there**. I loved the seafood! My favorite part of the vacation was spending time with my family and having fun together. We stayed for one week, and it was the best vacation ever. I hope we can go back again next summer. It was a wonderful holiday, and I will always remember it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What was the writer's favorite part of the vacation?

.....

3. Why do you think the writer enjoyed the vacation?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The writer's family stay at a ..... during the vacation.
   a) big hotel b) small hotel c) friend's house d) tent
5. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the ..... .
   a) beach b) boat c) restaurants d) hotel
6. The word "**gathered**" most likely means ..... .
   a) collected b) threw away c) lost d) sold

(D) Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. All the people clapped loudly when the bride and groom signed the ..... .
   a) payment b) contract c) religion d) wedding
2. The dog ran to ..... the ball.
   a) request b) illustrate c) fetch d) remind
3. She wore beautiful ..... at the party.
   a) stall b) jewelry c) person d) break

4. We should ..... care of our environment.
   a) look b) take c) make d) do
5. Marwa is the ..... person for the job. She is the best one.
   a) ideal b) friendly c) renewable d) electronic
6. My sister ..... her English by reading books.
   a) celebrated b) ordered c) invited d) improved
7. Uncle Ahmed knows how to ..... difficult situations.
   a) handle b) continue c) test d) appreciate
8. Who ..... your teacher last year?
   a) did b) was c) does d) is
9. My house is ..... than your house.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) more big
10. We plan to travel abroad ..... year.
   a) last b) next c) ago d) in

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sarah says that ..... (her) will come to the party.
2. Look at ..... (sky). It's beautiful.
3. ..... (Remembering) to water the plants every morning to keep them healthy and growing.
4. Why ..... (do) you not answering the phone yesterday?

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Scarcity of water"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Listening Texts

Model 1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

My summer vacation was great. I enjoyed it a lot. I played with my neighbors in the morning, then with the team at the football club in the afternoon. It was really fun.

Model 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira got married to Ayman. All the family attended the wedding party. I saw my aunts and uncles. It was a really fun day.

Model 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

At the weekends, I spend time with my family. We like to go for walks in nature. We don't take our phones to enjoy what is around us. There are lovely parks and gardens.

Model 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

When you go online, it's important to remember a few simple rules that can keep you safe. Choose strong passwords. Think before you post. Be careful of friend requests. Be kind online.

Model 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

This summer was very bad. Our school closed for a week. The teachers said it was very dangerous for us to travel to school because it was so hot. I missed my friends so much.

Model 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

In some countries around the world, not having enough clean water is a big problem. Almost two thirds of the world population face water scarcity. So, we should take short showers and turn off the tap while brushing our teeth, or washing your hands to save water.

Model 7

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The Temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple in Edfu. It is on the west bank of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The Temple is 2,250 years old. It is an amazing temple.

Model 8

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Yesterday, I went to a restaurant for lunch. The food was cold, and I found a hair in my soup. I told the waiter, and he quickly brought me a new meal.

Model 9

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

My family and I are having lunch at my grandparents' house. My aunt, Salwa and her kids were there. The food was delicious. We had Fattah, salad and meat.

Model 10

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Nermine's family moved to Oxford in the UK for her dad's job. She misses her hometown, Alexandria. They have a nice house in Oxford, but everything is new and different.

ALADWAA
Gem

اللغة الانجليزية

Model Answers

الصف 1 الاعدادي

الفصل الدراسى الأول

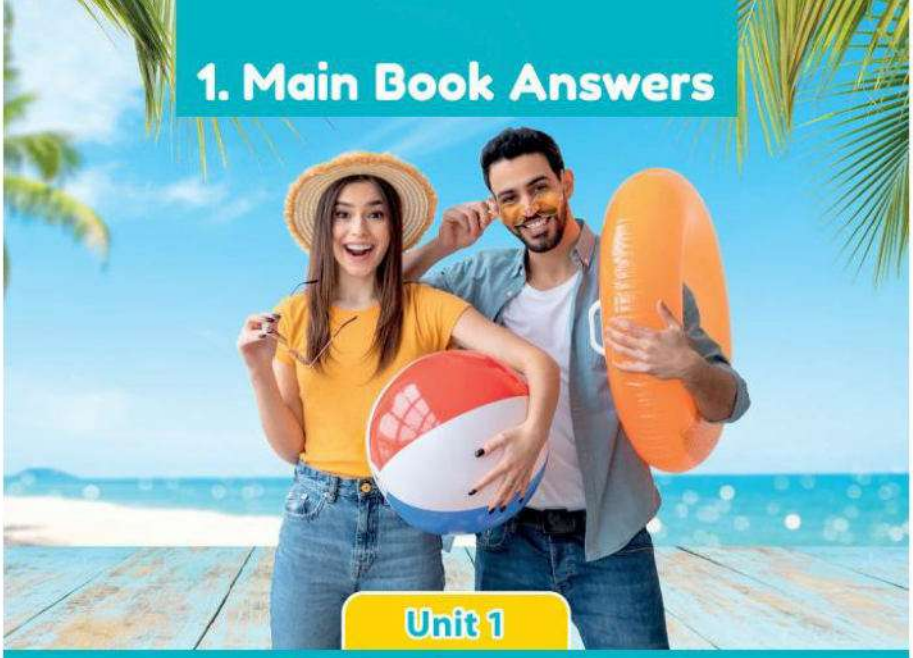
2024 25

Answers 100%

CONTENTS

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان
1. Main Book Answers
إجابات كتاب الشرح
2. Ongoing Assessment Booklet Answers
إجابات ملحق التقويم المستمر

1. Main Book Answers



Unit 1

A great summer

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) amazing
2. a) out
3. d) collect
4. d) won
5. d) volunteered
6. c) cleaned up
7. a) member
8. a) vacation
9. a) for
10. a) possible
11. b) adult
12. c) mention
13. c) im-

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) take
2. d) wrappers
3. b) tournament
4. a) teach
5. c) software
6. b) neighbors
7. a) tiring
8. c) talented
9. d) notice
10. b) mistakes
11. a) repeat
12. b) dangerous

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) walked
2. a) didn't
3. b) played
4. c) were
5. d) cook
6. b) wasn't
7. b) met
8. c) played
9. a) was
10. c) wrote

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. bought
2. last
3. didn't travel to
4. Did
5. didn't clean
6. was

Time to Practise

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) had
2. c) did
3. a) volunteered
4. b) did
5. b) learn
6. a) Was
7. d) taught
8. c) made
9. d) were

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was
2. ask
3. didn't have
4. weren't
5. decided
6. didn't stop

Speaking Exercise

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

Complete the following dialog:

1. It was great.
2. Where did you go?
3. I swam in the sea.
4. Yes, I did.
5. Who did you play with?

Unit 1 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) Great.
2. c) Football.
3. d) Neighbors.
4. d) Both b & c.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. I spent my summer vacation in Alexandria.
2. It was nice.
3. No, I didn't.
4. Why didn't you swim in the sea?
5. Did you have fun?

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. amazing
2. sports
3. take
4. had

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) center
2. a) community
3. b) imagine
4. d) kicked
5. b) vacation
6. d) does
7. a) at
8. a) cleaned
9. b) didn't
10. d) Was

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. drove
2. didn't
3. did
4. wasn't

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) special
2. b) tunnel
3. c) obelisk
4. c) solution
5. c) bank
6. a) statue
7. c) do
8. d) helpful
9. b) Catacombs
10. a) protect
11. a) active
12. d) modern
13. b) temple
14. b) effects

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) edit
2. d) religion
3. b) Tourists
4. b) archaeologist
5. d) for
6. a) buried
7. b) care
8. a) on
9. a) cut
10. d) understanding
11. b) useful
12. d) reason
13. c) pity

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) never
2. b) ever
3. c) cleaned
4. a) How often
5. d) usually
6. a) ate
7. b) always
8. c) usually studied
9. d) rode

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ever
2. never
3. played
4. did
5. always helped
6. hardly ever

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialog:

1. I visited my grandparents.
2. I went with my sister.
3. How often did you visit them?
4. What did you do there?
5. Yes, I did.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

Unit 1 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The passage is about why tourists like to visit Egypt.
2. Many tourists go to Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh to enjoy the sea.
3. Sam went to Luxor by plane.

B) 4. b) winter
5. c) helpful
6. b) Sam

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) boring
2. c) dead
3. b) stone
4. b) identify
5. a) walked
6. d) obelisks
7. b) smart
8. a) usually
9. d) never
10. d) usually

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. planted
2. always
3. hardly ever
4. was

4. Write a blog post of (80-90) words on your visit to the Pyramids:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) table tennis
2. c) award
3. d) amaze
4. b) for
5. a) improve
6. c) clearly
7. a) national
8. a) on
9. c) connected
10. a) speed
11. d) focus
12. c) -ment

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) champion
2. d) good
3. a) high
4. d) rising
5. a) journey
6. c) achievement
7. c) moral
8. b) talent
9. b) opponent
10. b) victory
11. c) ranking
12. b) qualities

Unit 1 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. great
2. went
3. Who
4. What
5. Yes, I did.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) low
2. a) in
3. c) However
4. a) Arab
5. b) came
6. d) achieve
7. a) amazed
8. b) never
9. c) How often
10. a) visited

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. repaired
2. didn't swim
3. never
4. was

4. Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. Hana is a great table tennis player.
2. They often went to Hurghada in summer.
3. How often did Mazin read a story?

5. Write an email of (80-90) words to tell your friend Amir about your summer school. Your name is Alaa.

Left to students.

General Exercises on Unit 1

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) Table tennis.
2. a) In 2007.
3. c) 4.
4. b) Al Ahly.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I did.
2. Where did you go?
3. I went to Hurghada.
4. I swan in the sea.
5. Did you ride a bike there?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is Maria's summer vacation at the beach with her family.
2. I would like to go to Alex next summer to swim in the sea.
3. Maria loved her summer vacation because she had a lot of fun and spent time with her family.

B) 4. c) small house
5. b) dolphins
6. d) Maria and her brother

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) help
2. d) volunteer
3. b) amazed
4. d) by
5. c) special
6. a) United Nations
7. b) reason
8. a) rode
9. d) never
10. b) weren't

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How
2. travel
3. hardly
4. read

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. c) I traveled last summer
2. a) Where did you travel
3. a) What about you
4. d) Which activities did you do there
5. b) Thank you

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) never
2. d) clean
3. b) often
4. a) did
5. c) stayed

Unit 2

My network

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) sign
2. a) bride
3. c) restaurant
4. b) gifts
5. d) for
6. b) network
7. b) relatives
8. d) guests
9. c) take
10. a) gold
11. b) meal
12. d) windows
13. c) meets up
14. a) traditional
15. d) -al

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) photographer
2. d) from
3. c) contract
4. b) sweet
5. a) take
6. c) groom
7. a) dress
8. b) to
9. c) celebrate
10. d) service
11. a) bracelets
12. c) for
13. b) cake
14. c) standing

Language Exercises (1)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) her
2. a) my
3. a) their
4. a) our
5. b) His
6. d) my
7. d) its
8. c) her
9. c) Your
10. b) your

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. our
2. their
3. its
4. our
5. your
6. his

Language Exercises (2)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) brother's
2. a) boys'
3. d) Anas'
4. d) sisters'
5. c) Mesbah's
6. a) Elephants'
7. c) friends'
8. c) men's
9. a) book
10. d) children's

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. guests'
2. women's
3. uncle's
4. daughter's
5. bride's
6. Susan and Zeinab's

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialog:

1. What time would you like to meet up?
2. Where would you like to go?
3. Do you have time to go shopping after that?
4. That sounds great!
5. We could have some chips.

Unit 2 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) Last weekend.
2. a) Many.
3. d) All.
4. d) a & b.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. It was great.
3. Did you have fun?
4. What did the bride wear?
5. Yes, I did.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. bride
2. guests
3. her
4. cake

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) bracelet
2. b) outfit
3. a) contract
4. d) service
5. c) media
6. b) suggested
7. a) hugged
8. d) their
9. b) Whose
10. c) Leila's

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Noha and Sami's
2. Sara's
3. their
4. Her

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) motorbike
2. c) well-known
3. b) date
4. c) account
5. a) hall
6. b) condition
7. c) fetch
8. d) furniture
9. c) safety
10. a) hometown
11. b) profile
12. d) go
13. c) share
14. c) to
15. a) countryside

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) hang out
2. a) solar panels
3. b) requested
4. a) explore
5. a) details
6. d) answer
7. c) feeds
8. a) explained
9. b) apartment
10. d) buzzed
11. a) honest
12. b) public
13. c) personal
14. d) address
15. a) downstairs

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialog:

1. Sure, no problem.
2. Yes, of course.
3. Can you also get me a glass of water, please?
4. Sure, Dad.
5. Can you call your sister to come downstairs?

Unit 2 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is that families around the world live in different ways.

2. Yes, it is a good idea that grandparents live with the family in the same house because grandparents can help look after the children.

3. Family traditions are important because these traditions help families celebrate special occasions together.

B) 4. b) eat meals

5. a) grandparents

6. c) show love

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) furniture
2. a) follow
3. c) account
4. b) apartment
5. c) island
6. b) with
7. c) polite
8. d) Can
9. c) teach
10. a) Her

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Their
2. can't
3. Whose
4. write

4. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) with
2. d) informal
3. b) do
4. d) congratulate
5. a) present
6. b) challenge
7. d) communication
8. c) experiences
9. d) Well done
10. d) worried
11. c) deal
12. d) communication
13. c) celebration
14. b) friendship

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Photography
2. a) hobbies
3. b) test
4. b) communicating
5. d) to
6. b) handling
7. c) face-to-face
8. b) misunderstanding
9. a) in
10. a) jokes
11. d) meaningful
12. b) for
13. a) specific

Speaking Exercise

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. Why was it a special day for you?
3. Happy birthday, Omar!
4. Did you have a great time?
5. Yes, I did.

Unit 2 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Thank
2. feel
3. Yes
4. What
5. I am 12 years old today.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) chat
2. c) communicate
3. b) nature
4. d) photography
5. a) emojis
6. c) website
7. b) practice
8. a) their
9. a) Will
10. d) boy's

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. come
2. friends'
3. children's
4. my

4. Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. Whose watch is that?
2. This jacket belongs to my father.
3. Why did Ashly stop answering Salma's messages?

5. Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Hady about your brother's birthday. Your name is Refaat.

Left to students.

General Exercises on Unit 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Grandma's
2. c) Last week
3. a) At the club
4. b) Had fun

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, of course.
2. How about going to the park?
3. We should go this afternoon.
4. Who should we invite?
5. We should meet them at the park entrance.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. meals
2. proud
3. sharing
4. my

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of Hany's email is to make plans with Samira for the weekend.

2. Hany suggests having lunch at a new café downtown or going for a walk in the park.

3. The underlined pronoun "**your**" refers to Samira.

B) 4. b) meet up

5. d) any day this week

6. b) two

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) schoolwork
2. b) share
3. a) in
4. d) on
5. a) celebrate
6. c) posted
7. c) go
8. a) their
9. c) children's
10. b) Its

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. help
2. Kamal's
3. Her
4. your

6. Write an email of (80-90) words to congratulate your friend on passing his exams. Your name is Tarek and your friend's name is Omar.

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. c) Thank you so much
2. a) Yes, I did
3. d) Did you get any presents
4. b) How old are you today
5. c) Yes, of course

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Whose
2. a) students'
3. c) father's
4. a) your
5. b) their

Module (1) Question Bank On Units 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialog:

A) 1. I went to New Alamein for my holiday.
2. Because it has beautiful beaches and good weather.
3. We stayed there for one week.
4. Who did you go with?
5. How did you go there?

B) 1. My favorite sports star is Hana Goda.
2. She plays table tennis.
3. Which team does she play for?
4. Did she win any prizes?
5. Yes, I do.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) coach
2. b) notice
3. d) repaired
4. a) catacomb
5. b) several
6. b) necklace
7. d) get
8. b) fetch
9. b) sang
10. c) Did
11. d) never
12. d) drive
13. a) school
14. b) Women's
15. a) her
16. d) Its

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. last
2. play
3. never
4. often took
5. twin's
6. help
7. her
8. your
9. Whose
10. Can you

Unit 3

My time

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) free
2. a) first aid
3. c) sports field
4. b) captain
5. a) community
6. d) recipe
7. a) skills
8. a) journal
9. b) takes
10. c) on
11. a) regular
12. b) hungry
13. d) cook
14. c) described

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) spend
2. b) nature
3. d) in
4. a) free time
5. c) list
6. d) classes
7. a) go
8. c) chef
9. d) court
10. a) have
11. c) at
12. b) get
13. d) waited
14. a) organize

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) is reading
2. c) is eating
3. a) are
4. b) sleeping
5. d) aren't cooking
6. c) am writing
7. a) singing
8. b) are painting
9. d) is studying
10. c) are

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is raining
2. explaining
3. aren't planting
4. is swimming
5. is
6. is sleeping

Time to Practice

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) are watching
2. d) swimming
3. b) are you
4. c) aren't going
5. a) is talking
6. c) are cleaning
7. b) We are
8. d) is making
9. c) are working
10. a) is taking

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. are playing
2. practicing
3. is shopping
4. aren't
5. is
6. are climbing

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialog:

1. Hi, Doaa! I'm fine, thank you.
2. How do you spend your free time?
3. Do you have other hobbies?
4. I help organize local events.
5. Yes, I do./ Yes, I think so.

Unit 3 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) A "To do" list.
2. a) Evening classes.
3. c) Takes exercise.
4. a) Football.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I do.
2. I enjoy playing video games.
3. What other hobbies do you have?
4. How often do you go to the park?
5. That's great!

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. field
2. go
3. Spending
4. activities

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) pool
2. a) thoughts
3. b) restaurant
4. c) for
5. d) healthy
6. a) tidies
7. c) had
8. d) are
9. a) celebrating
10. a) playing

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. are presenting
2. am
3. aren't climbing
4. doing

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) principal
2. a) relaxed
3. d) ingredients
4. a) string
5. a) includes
6. d) do
7. b) after-school
8. d) present
9. a) with
10. d) extra
11. a) decorated
12. c) bazaar
13. b) expert

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) homemade
2. b) of
3. c) break
4. a) beads
5. d) jewelry
6. c) text
7. b) about
8. c) stressed
9. d) go out
10. a) for
11. b) surprised
12. a) discussion
13. a) lemonade

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) We
2. a) It
3. d) They
4. d) him
5. a) you
6. b) them
7. c) me
8. d) them
9. d) We
10. b) her

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. us
2. them
3. I
4. it
5. me
6. They

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialog:

1. What is your idea?
2. That's a good idea.
3. What kind of books can we read?
4. We can start next week.
5. Yes, I am.

Unit 3 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Helping a Friend in Need

2. The writer tried to help Ahmed by asking him why he did not join them at breaktime and then inviting him to play a game or have a snack outside.
3. I think the teacher suggested giving Ahmed some space because Ahmed might need time to deal with his feelings or problems on his own before he is ready to join others.

B) 4. a) He stays in the classroom and looks sad.

5. c) Ahmed
6. a) moved

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) agreed
2. a) worried
3. c) make
4. d) discussion
5. b) cupcakes
6. a) break
7. c) surprised
8. a) We
9. c) he
10. b) me

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They
2. her
3. I
4. him

4. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) classmate
2. a) clue
3. b) explore
4. d) hometown
5. a) geocacher
6. c) included
7. b) app
8. d) coordinates
9. a) hidden
10. b) geeky
11. c) do
12. a) theme
13. b) record

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) moved
2. b) missed
3. a) Geocaching
4. c) lunchtime
5. b) interests
6. a) logbook
7. c) treasure
8. c) lead
9. a) work out
10. c) mind
11. d) in
12. c) set up

Unit 3 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. What
2. geocaching with my friends
3. is
4. Where
5. No, I don't.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) geocache
2. b) hunt
3. c) back
4. a) particular
5. a) improve
6. c) location
7. b) outdoor
8. a) isn't working
9. c) it
10. a) I

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is reading
2. her
3. they
4. are swimming

4. Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. My uncle bought me a new bike.
2. Nermine's favorite unusual hobby is geocaching.
3. What are the children doing now?

5. Write blog post of (80-90) words to your friend about your unusual hobby.

Left to students.

General Exercises on Unit 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) Both a & b
2. c) An art club
3. a) Animals
4. a) Relaxing

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. I like painting.
2. What kind of books do you like?
3. What do you like to paint?
4. Yes, I do.
5. I like to paint at home.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. me
2. organize
3. On
4. take

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is Sara's hobby of collecting rocks.

2. Sara loves her unusual hobby because it makes her happy and is fun and exciting for her.

3. Sara's hobby seems interesting and unusual.

B) 4. b) dad

5. d) book

6. c) rocks

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) cook
2. a) taking
3. b) treasure
4. c) principal
5. d) extra
6. a) logbook
7. b) on
8. d) is sleeping
9. c) them
10. a) She

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is
2. am working
3. I
4. me

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. c) I'm fine
2. a) What about you
3. b) How often do you paint
4. b) Yes, of course
5. a) Thanks a lot

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. c) is talking
2. a) working
3. d) We
4. b) them
5. b) her

Unit 4

Digital life

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) recycle
2. a) ATM
3. b) Green
4. c) develop
5. b) fixed
6. c) Charities
7. d) advertisement
8. a) battery
9. b) electronic
10. d) airplane
11. a) producing
12. c) infographics
13. b) takes care of
14. a) drag
15. b) digital

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) go
2. b) panels
3. b) Eco-friendly
4. d) tree-planting
5. b) of
6. c) faces
7. c) title
8. b) out
9. a) developing
10. c) Solar-powered
11. a) run
12. c) rubbish
13. a) review
14. a) tap
15. d) device

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) Don't be
2. a) wake
3. a) Turn
4. b) sit
5. d) Don't
6. b) don't wait
7. b) Always
8. b) Don't exercise
9. d) Don't
10. c) Never

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't tell
2. open
3. Do
4. walk
5. Brush
6. Don't talk

Unit 4 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) Plastic
2. b) Bad
3. a) Clean-up
4. c) For recycling

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I'd love to.
2. Is Jasmen going to come, too?
3. When/ What time does the film start?
4. He is going to pick us up home.
5. We will meet in front of my house.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. sustainable
2. recycle
3. charity
4. green

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) color bar
2. a) develop
3. a) Press
4. b) sustainable
5. c) land
6. d) effects
7. b) Drag
8. a) close
9. a) Call
10. c) don't be

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't
2. finish
3. remember
4. tap

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) personal
2. b) of
3. b) rules
4. c) accept
5. c) stay
6. b) Cyberbullying
7. d) behavior
8. a) nasty
9. c) download
10. a) efficiently
11. d) bullying
12. b) hackers
13. a) delete
14. d) behind

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) password
2. a) link
3. c) on
4. a) checked
5. b) control
6. a) bullying
7. d) account
8. c) horrible
9. d) platform
10. b) does
11. a) simple
12. b) give
13. c) false
14. c) upset

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) boils
2. b) becomes
3. d) is
4. d) don't
5. d) eat
6. c) Does
7. b) happens
8. a) don't
9. c) am
10. b) becomes

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is
2. eats
3. do you do
4. hides
5. shines
6. don't water

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, of course.
2. Which device do you think is the most important?
3. I think a mobile phone is the most important.
4. Why do you think that?
5. I think tablets are very important.

Unit 4 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of this text is that different devices make our lives easier and more enjoyable.

2. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to laptops.

3. I think a smart phone is the most important.

B) 4. c) four

5. d) Tablets

6. a) enjoy

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) downloaded
2. b) efficiently
3. c) treats
4. a) prove
5. d) freeze
6. d) temperature
7. c) comment
8. b) touch
9. d) are
10. a) feel

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. gets
2. don't do
3. break
4. press

4. Write a paragraph of about (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) console
2. a) profile
3. d) realized
4. b) ashamed
5. a) reported
6. c) detect
7. d) rescued
8. c) part-time
9. a) research
10. b) cautious
11. a) prize
12. c) embarrassed
13. d) awesome
14. b) difficulty
15. a) competition

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) reviews
2. b) engineering
3. d) scam
4. a) fair
5. d) participate
6. c) trusted
7. a) event
8. b) get
9. c) life jacket
10. a) talented
11. d) savings
12. b) in
13. a) made
14. c) limited-edition
15. b) gamers

Unit 4 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. What
2. scammed
3. Last
4. did
5. parents

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) half price
2. b) console
3. d) aged
4. c) winner
5. b) in
6. a) catchy
7. c) for
8. a) Close
9. c) don't
10. a) work

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. eat
2. Give
3. have
4. Don't be

4. Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. If you touch a hot pan, you burn.
2. Be quiet and listen carefully to your teachers.
3. What do you do if you are ill?

5. Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Hana to tell her about the scam you had. Your name is Esraa.

Left to students.

General Exercises on Unit 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) This month.
2. a) Aged 14-18.
3. d) In the US.
4. c) Both a & b.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. It was last month.
2. Where was it?
3. What did you invent?
4. Yes, I did.
5. Congratulations!

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. personal
2. prize
3. reported
4. go

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is about participating in an international technology competition.

2. The smart backpack is designed to charge devices with solar panels and use GPS to find it if lost.
3. The competition taught the writer a lot about technology and inventions.

B) 4. c) many countries

5. d) backpack
6. a) bag

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) invention
2. a) panels
3. d) material
4. c) accounts
5. b) request
6. a) on
7. c) votes
8. d) Don't make
9. a) hurt
10. a) Turn off

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't
2. are
3. Be quiet
4. freezes

6. Write a blog post of about (80-90) words on your review of a device you like.

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. d) Yes, I agree
2. a) Yes, I think so
3. b) Where do you think we will travel
4. c) I think phones are the most important
5. a) Why do you think that

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Do
2. a) Be
3. c) take
4. a) is
5. c) Don't

Module (2) Question Bank On Units 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialog:

A) 1. I like playing video games.
2. I enjoy drawing.
3. I play video games with my friends.
4. Which games do you play?
5. Can I play with you?

B) 1. Sure, Samar.
2. What should I do?
3. What about social media?
4. No, you shouldn't.
5. You should report it./ You shouldn't go on strange websites.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) organized
2. c) to-do list
3. c) beads
4. d) extra
5. b) inventions
6. c) engine
7. a) headphones
8. d) awesome
9. a) me
10. b) they
11. d) is running
12. b) isn't working
13. a) melts
14. a) Send
15. a) are
16. a) come

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. isn't using
2. her
3. are
4. We
5. are learning
6. exercise
7. They
8. isn't reading
9. be
10. have

Unit 5

In nature

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) scarcity
2. a) heatstroke
3. d) drought
4. b) temperature
5. a) transportation
6. d) about
7. d) earn
8. b) On
9. a) bacteria
10. c) level
11. d) storm
12. a) paid
13. b) on

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) fight
2. c) degrees
3. a) rain
4. b) fresh
5. d) for
6. a) climate
7. a) fall
8. d) Wildfires
9. b) in
10. c) suffered
11. a) weak
12. b) flood
13. d) billion
14. b) air conditioning

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) bigger
2. a) the cleverest
3. d) better
4. d) worse
5. a) the most
6. c) farthest
7. a) the tallest
8. c) less polluted
9. d) longer
10. c) less

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. the oldest
2. least
3. the nicest
4. more difficult
5. than
6. noisier

Time to Practise

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) the most
2. a) the best
3. b) happier
4. d) the best
5. d) than
6. b) simpler
7. c) most attractive
8. c) farthest
9. d) most amazing

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more expensive
2. worse
3. the most
4. hottest
5. better
6. more popular

Unit 5 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) On a farm.
2. c) Tomato.
3. b) A drought.
4. d) A job.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I did.
2. That is because of climate change.
3. Does it have a bad effect on the environment?
4. It can cause more storms, too.
5. What can we do to help stop climate change?

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. cause
2. than
3. affects
4. crops

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) take
2. d) hygiene
3. a) effect
4. b) scale
5. b) lack
6. a) worrying
7. a) crop
8. d) the youngest
9. c) less
10. b) faster

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. the coldest
2. better
3. the
4. more

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) features
2. b) marbles
3. a) ideal
4. c) recycle
5. c) talk
6. a) energy
7. c) materials
8. b) audience
9. c) result
10. a) feeder
11. c) planet
12. d) consume
13. b) fuels
14. d) resources

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) save
2. a) baskets
3. b) off
4. c) crust
5. a) minerals
6. c) have
7. a) re-use
8. d) eco-friendly
9. b) electricity
10. c) set
11. a) in
12. c) on
13. b) generate
14. b) on

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) an
2. a) no article
3. c) a
4. b) An
5. b) the
6. d) no article
7. a) the piano
8. b) The
9. d) no article
10. c) The dog

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. an engineer
2. football
3. Lions
4. the best
5. an
6. the book

Time to Practise

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) the sun
2. a) an
3. d) a
4. c) an English
5. b) the
6. a) an
7. c) an orange
8. d) the
9. b) the car
10. d) no article

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. a new
2. the sky
3. the radio
4. a young
5. the same
6. The red

Unit 5 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is about ways to be eco-friendly at home.

2. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to paper, plastic, and glass.

3. I think we can save energy by using energy-efficient appliances, reducing the use of air conditioning, and unplugging devices when not in use.

B) 4. b) turn off lights

5. b) clean the air

6. c) nearly

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) statues
2. a) electricity
3. d) consume
4. b) container
5. d) recycling bin
6. a) make
7. a) machine
8. a) the
9. d) no article
10. d) a

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Spain
2. the
3. An
4. an umbrella

4. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) documentary
2. c) recyclable
3. a) poem
4. a) Humans
5. c) make
6. d) for
7. a) line
8. a) poet
9. b) tech
10. d) dive
11. a) tap
12. c) after
13. b) cycling
14. c) worth

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) but
2. a) because
3. d) but
4. b) and
5. c) because
6. b) because
7. c) so
8. d) and
9. a) and
10. b) so

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. because
2. and
3. and
4. because
5. but
6. and

Unit 5 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. didn't
2. How
3. also can
4. do
5. great/right

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) Bees
2. b) take
3. b) stanza
4. d) message
5. c) technology
6. a) to
7. d) recyclable
8. a) and
9. a) because
10. d) but

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. but
2. and
3. because
4. but

4. Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. Adel decided to make some changes in his life.
2. Salma was late, so her parents were worried.
3. Turn off those lights you don't need.

5. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

General Exercises on Unit 5

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) A documentary.
2. b) Last weekend.
3. b) Human activities.
4. c) Eco-friendly.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Where are they?
2. You should visit the temples in Luxor.
3. Yes, there is
4. What is the best place to visit in summer?
5. Thanks a lot, Nagwa.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. making
2. save
3. Recycling
4. and

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is how climate change is affecting people, animals, and the environment.

2. The underlined pronoun **"their"** refers to animals.

3. We can reduce these effects by using renewable energy sources, reducing waste, and planting more trees.

B) 4. a) crops

5. d) all of these

6. b) carefully

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) consume
2. d) eco-friendly
3. d) conditioning
4. c) produce
5. a) generate
6. c) flood
7. d) from
8. a) but
9. b) an
10. c) the fastest

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. and
2. because
3. the shoes
4. highest

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. a) What about you
2. c) Did you go to the Red Sea
3. d) Yes, I did
4. c) I visited Aswan
5. a) I want to visit Hurghada

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) but
2. c) worst
3. a) because
4. a) the
5. d) and

Unit 6

Food for thought

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) dessert
2. a) starters
3. c) course
4. b) at
5. a) healthy
6. c) manager
7. a) fry
8. d) definitely
9. c) celebrate
10. a) serve
11. b) popular
12. c) customers
13. a) oven

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) baked
2. c) boil
3. a) easy to make
4. d) address
5. b) Regards
6. a) ordered
7. d) plate
8. c) bring
9. c) sweet
10. a) added
11. d) service
12. b) snacks
13. a) ingredients

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) arrive
2. b) were you
3. b) did
4. c) did
5. d) How
6. a) did he get
7. b) went
8. b) did
9. c) was
10. a) leave

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. did
2. come
3. get
4. were
5. didn't you
6. did you find

Unit 6 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Maakouda.
2. d) All of these.
3. a) Good.
4. b) Fish.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. No, I haven't.
2. My favorite traditional food is chipsi mayai.
3. Where did you try it?
4. How do they make it?
5. No, it isn't.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. traditional
2. onions
3. delicious
4. try

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) sweet
2. b) menu
3. a) waiter
4. b) tasted
5. b) served
6. d) unfortunately
7. c) on
8. d) have
9. b) did
10. a) was

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. did she study
2. were
3. sleep
4. bought

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) tasty
2. a) dried
3. b) cylinder
4. a) researched
5. a) large-scaled
6. c) poured
7. a) includes
8. d) native
9. b) selected
10. d) on
11. c) made
12. b) website
13. d) picked
14. b) card

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) after
2. a) outside
3. c) there
4. b) now
5. d) during
6. c) yesterday
7. b) on the table
8. a) downstairs
9. d) today

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. inside
2. in the classroom
3. in the afternoon
4. next
5. In the future
6. between

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I did.
2. What did you eat there?
3. Why don't you like sweet foods?
4. I would like to try a meat dish.
5. That sounds good.

Unit 6 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is that paella is a traditional Spanish dish.

2. Some common ingredients used in paella are shrimp and peas.

3. I think paella is cooked outdoors over an open fire to give it a smoky flavor.

B) 4. b) pan
5. b) paella
6. a) taste

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) recipe
2. a) celebration
3. b) syrup
4. d) task
5. a) noodles
6. d) tasty
7. a) origin
8. a) and
9. a) in
10. c) everywhere

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. in the garden
2. this
3. next to
4. every

4. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) crispy
2. a) in
3. d) Recycled
4. c) nearby
5. a) compost
6. b) straw
7. c) summarize
8. a) waste
9. b) everywhere
10. d) used
11. a) local
12. c) reused
13. b) makes
14. a) in

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) hangs
2. c) soft
3. b) make
4. d) creamy
5. a) herbs
6. b) almost
7. c) ceiling
8. d) reusable
9. a) container
10. b) trash
11. d) closely
12. a) set
13. b) successful

Unit 6 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. What
2. favorite
3. like
4. Yes, I do.
5. restaurant

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) Compost
2. b) friendly
3. a) bin
4. d) beans
5. c) pick
6. b) excited
7. a) smell
8. c) was
9. b) didn't
10. b) yesterday

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. did
2. on/under the table
3. cook
4. ago

4. Reorder the following words to form meaningful sentences:

1. Last Monday, we visited our grandparents.
2. I met my old friends at the club.
3. My favorite traditional dish is koshari.

5. Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend Samy to tell him about the food you like. Your name is Reda.

Left to students.

General Exercises on Unit 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) Australian
2. a) On the internet
3. b) Famous dishes
4. d) A recipe card

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. My favorite food is Hawawshi.
2. What ingredients does it have?/ What are its ingredients?
3. I eat it at home.
4. Why do you eat it at home?
5. Yes, I do.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. last
2. starters
3. waiter
4. delicious

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is about the traditional Egyptian food, feseekh.
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to feseekh.
3. I think feseekh has a strong smell because it is dried and salted for many weeks.

B) 4. c) spring
5. d) Some
6. a) many

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) ingredients
2. b) baked
3. a) invited
4. d) picked
5. c) on
6. a) pay for
7. b) lit
8. b) was
9. c) in a few days
10. b) outside

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. buy
2. yesterday
3. did
4. came

6. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. c) I'm fine, thanks
2. d) What is your favorite traditional food
3. a) What are its ingredients
4. b) Yes, I do
5. a) It is very tasty

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) was
2. b) travel
3. d) lived
4. a) in
5. c) Next week

Module (3) Question Bank On Units 5 & 6

1. Complete the following dialog:

A) 1. No, I didn't.
2. Where did you try it?
3. How do they make it?
4. Yes, it is.
5. Ok, I'll try it.

B) 1. Yes, I did.
2. What do you like about it?
3. I go to the park every weekend.
4. What do you like to do there?
5. Yes, there is a small café.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) affect
2. d) storm
3. b) suffered
4. c) console
5. a) celebrates
6. b) syrup
7. d) poured
8. c) do
9. b) more beautiful
10. d) The largest
11. a) a
12. c) because
13. b) did
14. a) was
15. c) later

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more difficult
2. rice
3. better
4. the Red Sea
5. worst
6. go
7. was
8. downstairs
9. next to
10. in the evening

General Exercises

Reading

1. Complete the information with the words from the box.

1. hackers
2. post
3. nasty
4. Cyberbullying
5. hide behind
6. accept

2. Read the article. How can people today get a "taste of the past"?

1. The Ancient Egyptians often added oil, spices, or chopped vegetables to bread to make it tastier.
2. In the past, people baked aish baladi slowly in special clay ovens which they heated with wood fires.
3. An Egyptian recipe for hummus is nearly 1,000 years old.
4. The Ancient Egyptians usually grilled meat over a fire, in the same way that we make kebabs today, or roasted it in ovens.
5. The Ancient Egyptians covered dried meat and fish in salt because they didn't have fridges to preserve meat and fish.

Language

1. Match the sentences halves.

1. d
2. f
3. a
4. b
5. c
6. e

2. Choose the correct options in the dialogs.

1. **A:** Ali's / **B:** his
2. **A:** Can / **B:** can't / 'll help
3. **A:** student's. / **B:** Her
4. **A:** parents' / **B:** it

3. Complete the post with the past simple of the verbs and adverbs of frequency in brackets.

1. always got up
2. often helped out
3. sometimes taught
4. was usually
5. always wrote
6. never went

Writing

Write a blog post about a special family event or celebration.

Left to students.

2. Ongoing Assessment Booklet Answers

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) tries
2. a) workshop
3. d) software
4. c) up
5. a) woke
6. d) visit
7. b) member
8. d) recycling
9. a) volunteered
10. c) went

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. find
2. arrived
3. wrote
4. did
5. wasn't

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. It was great.
2. What was the weather like?
3. Yes, I did.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) did
2. d) talented
3. b) tiring
4. a) visited
5. d) take

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences:

Left to students.

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) pray
2. c) editing
3. b) archaeologist
4. c) look after
5. d) went
6. a) did
7. d) helpful
8. a) presented
9. b) go
10. a) special

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. painted
2. hardly
3. never
4. forgot
5. often helped

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) for
2. b) tunnel
3. a) excited
4. b) always
5. c) How often

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Sam came from London.
2. Many tourists go to Hurghada and Sharm El-Sheikh to enjoy the sea.
3. Sam went to Luxor by plane.

B) 4. b) winter
5. d) Giza

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I'm fine.
2. Yes, I am.
3. Which activities did you do in your vacation?
4. What about you?
5. Let's go to the class.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) achieve
2. c) ranking
3. b) make
4. c) wrote
5. b) go
6. d) work
7. c) opponent
8. b) award
9. a) difficulty
10. c) became

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) This week.
2. a) Great.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) victory
2. c) in
3. a) improve
4. c) never
5. b) ate

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. What are your dreams for the future?
2. Hana was born in December 2007.
3. It's possible to make your dreams come true.
4. How often did your brother study French?

Unit 1 General Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I played football with my friends.
2. No, we didn't.
3. Yes, I did.
4. Which one did you watch?
5. Did you enjoy it?

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. explained
2. never
3. come
4. wasn't

3. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Unit 1 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. No, I didn't.
2. Who cooked it?
3. Yes, it was.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) coach
2. c) catacombs
3. d) public
4. a) always
5. a) did

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I helped my parents at work.
2. I played with my neighbours in the morning.
3. Edfu is on the West Bank of the River Nile.

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) marriage
2. a) network
3. d) photographer
4. b) groom
5. a) its
6. d) Sami and Hani's
7. b) gold
8. d) for
9. d) teachers'
10. a) relatives

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Men's
2. mom's
3. my
4. their
5. Ziad and Amir's

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. When did she get married?
2. It was great.
3. Was your sister happy?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) celebrate
2. d) signed
3. a) guests
4. c) girls'
5. b) his

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences:

Left to students.

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) honest
2. d) requested
3. a) answer
4. d) in
5. d) Our
6. b) dog's
7. b) explore
8. d) public
9. a) in
10. d) carry

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My
2. Her
3. teacher's
4. switch
5. girls'

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) presented
2. b) polite
3. d) apartment
4. b) Their
5. d) Dad's

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The family spends time together in the evenings by coming together for dinner, talking about their day, and sharing funny stories.

2. I enjoy visiting my grandparents at weekends because they live nearby and I love spending time with them.

3. I like to play games with my dad and help my mom in the kitchen.

B) 4. a) Mom

5. c) watching films

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I want to go to the beach.
2. We should go at 10 am.
3. Sure, no problem.
4. How long do you want to stay?
5. What games can we play there?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) difficult
2. a) with
3. b) reply
4. d) policemen's
5. a) my
6. b) challenge
7. a) congratulate
8. d) communicate
9. c) in
10. b) their

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) Football.
2. c) Sixteen.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) did
2. a) face-to-face
3. c) fantastic
4. d) our
5. b) children's

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Happy birthday to my brother.
2. I'm so proud of my family.
3. I sometimes deal with some family problems.
4. Will you fetch me a glass of water?

Unit 2 General Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. How can I help you?
2. Let's start doing it.
3. How can I start doing it?

4. Sure, no problem.
5. You're welcome.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. women's
2. Nelly's and Sally's
3. Teacher's
4. Her

3. Write an email of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Unit 2 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. Yes, of course.
2. Do you need any special pictures?
3. Let's search for them on the internet.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) relatives
2. a) buzzed
3. b) challenge
4. d) mother's
5. c) our

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I'm sending you a photo of me.
2. We all had a lot of fun together.
3. Do you have time to meet up with me?

Monthly Model (1) on Units 1 & 2

General

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) coach
2. d) picked up
3. a) catacombs
4. c) wowed
5. b) outfit
6. a) reminded
7. d) relieved
8. c) my
9. c) grandparents'
10. b) wanted

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. his
2. men's
3. was not happy
4. always looked
5. go

Monthly Model (2) on Units 1 & 2

Al-Azhar

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. It was great.
2. I went with my sister.
3. Yes, we did.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is the writer's sister's wedding was a very special day.
2. She wore a beautiful white dress.
3. The writer will always remember because it was full of love and joy.

B) 4. c) month
5. a) big
6. d) party in the garden

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) spaces
2. a) waited
3. d) made
4. b) go
5. c) is writing
6. a) is learning
7. a) free time
8. b) lovely
9. a) field
10. a) first aid

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. studying
2. aren't playing
3. are doing
4. Are
5. am tidying

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. I like to read books.
2. I like to play computer games.
3. What do you do every day?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) spend
2. d) about
3. b) minutes
4. a) is teaching
5. c) Are

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences:

Left to students

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) jewelry
2. b) ingredients
3. d) stressed
4. a) beads
5. b) us
6. b) them
7. c) calm
8. c) break
9. b) surprised
10. a) I

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They
2. her
3. He
4. it
5. your

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) relaxed
2. a) stall
3. d) bazaar
4. a) her
5. a) You

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. I think because she wants to be alone.

2. First, the writer tried to talk to Sara again. Next, the writer asked the teacher for advice.
3. The teacher advised the writer to keep inviting Sara but also give her space if she needs it.

B) 4. b) said no

5. c) the teacher

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I like to play the guitar.
2. Do you play any sports?
3. I also like watching films.
4. What else do you do?
5. I play video games.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) led
2. c) worked out
3. a) put
4. d) them
5. c) are waiting
6. b) Geocaching
7. a) normal
8. d) classmate
9. c) on
10. c) it

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Oxford
2. d) geocaching

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) rest
2. d) add
3. c) for
4. b) isn't cooking
5. b) us

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Nermin moved to the UK with her family.
2. You need an app to do geocaching.
3. I really enjoy going to art club after school.
4. We can set up a group to draw together.

Unit 3 General Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I am reading a book.
2. Yes, I am.
3. Are you sitting outside?
4. Are you hungry?
5. Let's meet and have a snack together!

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. are painting
2. aren't listening
3. she
4. him

3. Write a blog post of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Unit 3 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. I am watching TV.
2. What about you?
3. No, I am not.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) written
2. b) bazaar
3. c) hungry
4. a) you
5. d) is

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I don't have much free time.
2. We like to go for nature walks.
3. Our students aren't having lessons this afternoon.

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) face
2. b) scientist
3. a) go
4. d) make
5. d) charity
6. b) click
7. c) fitness
8. c) Don't
9. c) write
10. c) leave

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Always
2. Clean
3. stay
4. take
5. Never

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2
Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. I usually go to my grandpa's farm.
2. I play in the fields.
3. Do you enjoy there?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) on
2. a) cool
3. c) sustainable
4. a) read
5. a) Finish

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences:

Left to students.

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4
Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) useful
2. a) hide
3. c) result
4. a) Efficiently
5. b) am
6. c) control
7. b) treat
8. a) freeze
9. d) don't
10. b) do you get

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. cools
2. have
3. happens
4. don't water
5. slows

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) hacker
2. a) messaging
3. d) design
4. b) open
5. c) get

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Computers help us write documents, search the internet, and play games.

2. We use headphones to listen to music, watch videos, and make calls.

3. Tablets are useful for reading books, watching movies, and going online.

B) 4. d) b & c

5. c) search the internet

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I participated in a technology competition.
2. What did you design?
3. I won third place.
4. What was the best part of the competition?
5. Yes, I do.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) embarrassed
2. d) reviews
3. b) advertisement
4. b) don't put
5. c) Close
6. b) realize
7. a) trust
8. d) get
9. c) participate
10. b) have

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) A console.
2. a) Last month.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) careful
2. b) amazed
3. c) messaged
4. b) doesn't
5. d) Don't

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Ali worked hard at the café last month.
2. This platform is great for sharing photos.

3. Many students participated in the competition.
4. Egyptian students won many prizes for their inventions.

Unit 4 General Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I do.
2. What should I do?
3. Yes, you should.
4. Do you want anything else?
5. You're welcome.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. go
2. Speak
3. Don't
4. burns

3. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Unit 4 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. Yes, I do.
2. What do you use it for?
3. What about you?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) for
2. a) behavior
3. d) save up
4. b) forget
5. c) turns

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Our world has many problems.
2. Your password should be very strong.
3. Be careful, your comments on social media stay forever.

Monthly Model (1) on Units 3 & 4

General

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) court
2. b) for
3. a) relaxed
4. c) misses
5. d) engine
6. b) collected
7. a) take
8. c) will be
9. d) is going to fall
10. b) is cooking

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. me
2. We
3. is working
4. will
5. is going to rain

Monthly Model (2) on Units 3 & 4

Al-Azhar

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. What is it?
2. That's a good idea.
3. We could go to the park.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea is that green technology is important for reducing pollution.

2. Two examples of green technology are solar panels and electric cars.

3. Using green technology is important for reducing our impact on the planet, keeping the Earth clean.

B) 4. c) sun

5. d) paper and plastic

6. c) reduce pollution

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) Lack
2. b) caused
3. a) on
4. d) burned

5. b) more
6. a) less
7. a) temperature
8. d) drought
9. b) fight
10. c) more

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. nicer than
2. the most
3. best
4. easier
5. higher

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. No, I don't.
2. What does it mean?
3. Why is it happening?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) affects
2. a) level
3. b) grow
4. d) than
5. a) worst

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences:

Left to students.

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) hanging basket
2. b) consume
3. d) melts
4. c) source
5. a) a cup
6. d) books
7. b) layers
8. d) liquid
9. a) resources
10. c) a type

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. the most
2. pasta
3. Women
4. the latest
5. the

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) lights
2. c) power
3. d) waste
4. a) Cats
5. b) the

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. It is important to save energy for our planet because it helps reduce the use of natural resources and pollution.

2. Some ways to save energy at home include turning off lights and electronic devices when not in use, using less hot water, taking shorter showers, and closing doors and windows in summer to keep cool air inside.

3. We can reduce the use of hot water to save energy by taking shorter showers and washing clothes in cold water instead of hot.

B) 4. b) turn off

5. c) cool air inside

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6
Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I know a few ways.
2. You should turn off devices when you are not using them.
3. Do you close windows in the hot sun?
4. Why should I close them?
5. Thanks, Rana!

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) tech
2. c) documentary
3. d) switch off
4. d) and
5. b) but

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) switch off
2. a) planet

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) take
2. b) for
3. b) dive
4. b) and
5. a) because

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I wanted to be more eco-friendly.
2. I always put my trash in the recycling bins.
3. Saving energy is good for our planet.
4. I always traveled to school by bus.

Unit 5 General Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I'm fine, thank you.
2. What do you think about climate change?
3. Why do you think that?
4. We should save energy.
5. You're welcome!

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. because
2. the
3. happier
4. and

3. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Unit 5 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. Where is it?
2. How did you go?
3. Yes, he does.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) consume
2. b) audience
3. a) in
4. c) because
5. d) shorter

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Water from the river is coming into our house.
2. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources.
3. You could present your poster to the class.

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) warm
2. d) into
3. c) comfortable
4. b) Unfortunately
5. a) was
6. d) read
7. c) oven
8. b) popular
9. a) snack
10. d) put

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. go
2. were
3. did
4. did he arrive
5. did

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

1. What about you?
2. Yes, we do.
3. We eat falafel almost every day.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) reader
2. c) menu
3. d) dessert
4. c) did
5. a) go

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences:

Left to students.

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) tasty
2. d) checks
3. a) famous
4. c) do
5. b) soon
6. d) inside
7. b) native
8. c) grilled
9. d) festival
10. a) last

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. in front of
2. at break
3. in the kitchen
4. tomorrow
5. next to

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) recipe
2. a) do
3. b) with
4. c) in the evening
5. a) near

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Bibimbap is made with a bowl of warm rice topped with vegetables, meat (usually beef), a fried egg, and spicy sauce.

2. People usually eat bibimbap for lunch or dinner.

3. People like bibimbap for its balance of flavors, including the taste of meat, vegetables, and the spicy and sweet sauce.

B) 4. d) All of these 5. b) Korean

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow-up Worksheet

B) Quiz Time

1. Complete the following dialog:

1. I'm fine, thank you.
2. Yes, I do.
3. What about Egypt?
4. What is it made of?
5. We usually eat it in the morning.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) hurt
2. b) brought
3. c) about
4. b) did
5. d) back to

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Salad.
2. d) All over the world.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) in
2. a) make
3. b) moral
4. d) were
5. a) in the evening

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I enjoyed hearing about your new school.
2. My favorite dessert is strawberry cheesecake.
3. What are your favorite dishes?
4. Samy and Magdy were in their local park.

Guiding Models

Model (1)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Great
2. c) In the morning
3. d) The team
4. a) Yes

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. What do you need?
2. Sure, no problem.
3. Can you give me a pen and a notebook?
4. Yes, of course.
5. Thanks for your help.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. hidden
2. hunt
3. explore
4. It's

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is that Ali was scammed by an email that tricked him into sending his personal information.

2. Ali learned the lesson to always be careful online and never share personal information.

3. If I were Ali, I would first check if the email is real by contacting the company not sharing any personal information.

B) 4. b) send his personal information.

5. b) tricked
6. c) excited

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) member
2. b) Cyberbullying
3. a) field
4. c) address
5. c) on
6. a) summarized
7. a) made
8. d) ate
9. c) its
10. d) because

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sarah's
2. kindest
3. get
4. an old man

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (2)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Luxor
2. d) Amira and Ayman
3. c) Fun
4. d) Aunts and uncles

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. It was wonderful.
2. What did you do?
3. Who went with you?
4. It was nice.
5. Yes, we did.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. have
2. waiter
3. meal
4. dessert

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is that saving electricity is important for the environment.

2. It is important to save electricity because it helps reduce pollution.

3. Other habits to change to save electricity include wearing warm clothes in winter instead of using the heater, using fans to help cool down, and using natural light during the day.

B) 4. c) turn off lights

5. c) devices

6. b) natural light

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) in
2. c) talented
3. a) chef
4. d) aim
5. b) recycling
6. b) Reusable
7. b) emoji
8. a) didn't
9. c) riding
10. c) him

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. give
2. more beautiful
3. did
4. in

7. Write an email of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (3)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) Spend time with family.
2. b) For walks.
3. b) Phones.
4. d) b & c.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I did.
2. I tried a dish called sushi.
3. How did it taste?
4. What's it made with?
5. I had it at a Japanese restaurant.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. was
2. won
3. achievements
4. successful

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is that many people eat "food on the go", but it's important to choose healthy food.

2. The underlined pronoun "**These**" refers to sandwiches, wraps, and fruit.

3. It is better to take time to eat slowly instead of eating on the go because eating slowly allows you to enjoy your meal.

B) 4. b) Sandwiches

5. a) are busy 6. d) perfect

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) native
2. c) for
3. d) charity
4. c) decorate
5. b) select
6. d) text
7. a) logbook
8. a) my
9. a) often
10. c) Wash

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. are doing
2. was
3. the rice
4. coldest

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) Be careful of friend requests.
2. b) Think before you post.
3. d) Choose strong passwords.
4. c) Be kind online.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. What should I begin by?
2. How many of them should I eat every day?
3. You can choose nuts instead of chips.
4. You should drink plenty of water.
5. Thanks, Waleed.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. planet
2. off
3. showers
4. the

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is that Farida Osman is a successful Egyptian swimmer.

2. The underlined pronoun "**This**" refers to Farida winning a bronze medal in 2017.

3. Farida Osman became famous because of her achievements in swimming.

B) 4. b) Cairo

5. c) 2000

6. b) Competitions.

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) list
2. b) sustainable
3. d) checked
4. b) outfit
5. a) website
6. a) buzzes
7. a) theme
8. c) is eating
9. b) drank
10. c) doctor's

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. longer
2. join
3. a uniform
4. boils

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (5)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) Bad.
2. c) hot weather
3. b) For a week.
4. d) The friends.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I did.
2. How does the app help you?
3. What about you?
4. I use it every day.
5. I use it every day to practice new words.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. website
2. chat
3. me
4. in

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the email is that Sara is describing her brother Ali, his talents, interests, and how he helps her.

2. Ali helps his sister with her homework by explaining things to her when she doesn't understand something.

3. Sara is lucky to have Ali as her brother because he is helpful and also her best friend.

B) 4. b) playing football

5. d) parents 6. b) the cat

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. c) embarrassed
2. d) classes
3. b) console
4. b) special
5. b) customer
6. c) relaxing
7. c) make
8. a) come
9. c) most interesting
10. b) Don't

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. are cooking
2. our
3. ever
4. girls'

7. Write a blog post of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (6)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) clean water
2. c) Two thirds.
3. b) Lack of water.
4. a) Take shorter showers.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. What about you?
2. I lost my wallet while shopping.
3. Where did you lose it?
4. Yes, I did.
5. Thank you.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. messages
2. miss
3. on
4. my

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Reading Adventures.

2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to reading.

3. The quiet library helps people enjoy reading by a peaceful environment where they can focus.

B) 4. b) adventures

5. c) in a chair

6. b) exciting

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) heatstroke
2. a) out
3. a) go
4. d) relaxed
5. a) dessert
6. b) audience
7. a) experience
8. c) best
9. b) sent
10. a) are playing

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. their
2. rains
3. Don't be
4. usually played

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (7)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) west
2. b) 2,250
3. d) Luxor and Aswan.
4. c) Wonderful.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. Yes, I did.
2. Why do you think there are so many cars now?

3. What could we do to reduce the traffic?
4. That's a good idea!
5. That's right.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. my
2. first aid
3. for
4. relaxing

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the email is about Emma's hiking experience in the mountains.
2. In the forest, they saw tall trees, colorful flowers, and lots of birds singing.
3. Emma likely enjoyed hiking with her family because it was a great way to see nature.

B) 4. c) the morning
5. b) hiking
6. b) took a break

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) journal
2. a) scammers
3. d) taste
4. c) celebration
5. c) obelisk
6. a) treat
7. a) Bullying
8. a) did
9. c) the
10. a) Basmala's

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. fetch
2. watching
3. most difficult
4. and

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (8)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) cold
2. c) A hair.
3. d) The waiter.
4. a) brought a meal

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. I visited my grandparents.
2. My sister came with me.
3. How often did you visit your grandparents?
4. What activities did you do there?
5. Yes, we did.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. password
2. characters
3. share
4. requests

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is about being eco-friendly and help protect the environment.

2. You can save energy at home by turning off lights when you're not using them.

3. Other ways to help reduce pollution include walking, biking, or using public transport instead of driving a car.

B) 4. a) saving energy 5. c) recycle 6. d) good for the planet

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) add
2. c) hygiene
3. b) principal
4. b) ashamed
5. c) fitness
6. d) waste
7. d) Geocaching
8. b) her
9. d) is
10. c) never

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more expensive
2. Was
3. but
4. the

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (9)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) At their grandparents' house.
2. c) Aunt Salwa and her kids.
3. b) Delicious.
4. d) All of these.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. My day was good.
2. I had pasta for lunch.
3. What do you prefer it with?
4. Yes, I do.
5. Where do you usually eat pasta?

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. equipment
2. helpful
3. made
4. excited

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is about inventions that help protect the planet.
2. Solar panels help protect our planet by making sunlight into electricity.
3. Sustainable inventions are important for the future because they help keep the Earth clean, reduce pollution and save resources.

B) 4. b) pollution 5. d) inventions 6. b) turn

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d) won
2. b) catchy title
3. b) focus
4. b) Scarcity
5. c) impact
6. a) traditional
7. a) up
8. a) the most
9. d) are playing
10. c) the

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. always
2. his
3. sets
4. children's

7. Write an email of (80-90) words:

Left to students.

Model (10)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) For a job.
2. c) Her hometown.
3. d) a and b.
4. c) Nice.

2. Complete the following dialog:

1. What is it about?
2. That's a good idea.
3. We should focus on the main subjects.
4. When can we have our first meeting?
5. Let's do it.

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. aged
2. competition
3. entered
4. prizes

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is about the writer's vacation with family.

2. The writer's favorite part of the vacation was spending time with their family and having fun together.
3. The writer enjoyed the vacation because of the sunny weather, fun activities like swimming and building sandcastles, seeing dolphins and trying different foods.

B) 4. b) small hotel 5. c) restaurants 6. a) collected

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) contract
2. c) fetch
3. b) jewelry
4. b) take
5. a) ideal
6. d) improved
7. a) handle
8. b) was
9. b) bigger
10. b) next

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. she
2. the sky
3. Remember
4. were

7. Write a paragraph of (80-90) words:

Left to students.